THE GEOGRAPHY OF STRABO

WITH AN ENGLISH TRANSLATION BY
HORACE LEONARD JONES, Ph.D., LL.D.
CORNELL UNIVERSITY

IN EIGHT VOLUMES
VII

LONDON: WILLIAM HEINEMANN LTD
NEW YORK: G. P. PUTNAM'S SONS
MCMXXX
1917
1.7
Cop. 2

Printed in Great Britain
## CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BOOK XV</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOOK XVI</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAP OF ASIA</td>
<td>374</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A PARTIAL DICTIONARY OF PROPER NAMES</td>
<td>375</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ΣΤΡΑΒΩΝΟΣ ΓΕΩΓΡΑΦΙΚΩΝ

IE'

I

1. Τὰ περιλειπόμενα τῆς Ἀσίας ἐστὶ τὰ ἐκτὸς τοῦ Ταύρου, πλὴν Κιλικίας καὶ Παμφυλίας καὶ Δυσίας, τὰ ἂν ἀπὸ τῆς Ἰνδικῆς μέχρι Νείλου μεταξὺ τοῦ Ταύρου καὶ τῆς ἕξω θαλάττης τῆς νοτίου κείμενα. μετὰ δὲ τὴν Ἀσίαν ἡ Διβύη ἐστὶ, περὶ ἦς ἑρωμὲν ύστερον, νῦν δὲ ἀπὸ τῆς Ἰνδικῆς ἀρκτέον· πρώτῃ γὰρ ἐκκεῖται πρὸς ταῖς ἀνατολαῖς καὶ μεγίστῃ.

2. Δεῖ δὲ εὐγνωμόνως ἀκούειν περὶ αὐτῆς· καὶ γὰρ ἀπωτάτῳ ἐστὶ, καὶ οὐ πολλοὶ τῶν ἡμετέρων κατώπτευσαν αὐτὴν· οἱ δὲ καὶ ἴδοντες μέρη τῶν εἰδον, τὰ δὲ πλεῖω λέγουσιν εἷς ἄκοης· καὶ ἂ εἶδον δὲ, ἐν παρόδῳ στρατιωτικῇ καὶ δρόμῳ κατέμαθον· διόπερ οὐδὲ τὰ αὐτὰ περὶ τῶν αὐτῶν ἔξαγγέλλουσι, καὶ ταῦτα συγγράψαντες ὡς ἂν πεφροντισµένως ἐξητασμένα, τινὲς δὲ αὐτῶν καὶ συστρατεύσαντες ἀλλήλοις καὶ συνεπιδημήσαντες, καθάπερ οἱ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ συγκαταστρεφόμενοι τὴν Ἀσίαν ἀλλ’ ἐκαστὸς ἐκάστῳ τάναντι λέγει πολλάκις.

1 δ’, before ἄπο, the editors omit.

2 i.e. the Indian Ocean.
The parts still left of Asia are those outside the Taurus except Cilicia and Pamphylia and Lycia, I mean the parts extending from India as far as the Nile and lying between the Taurus and the outer sea on the south. After Asia one comes to Libya, which I shall describe later, but I must now begin with India, for it is the first and largest country that lies out towards the east.

2. But it is necessary for us to hear accounts of this country with indulgence, for not only is it farthest away from us, but not many of our people have seen it; and even those who have seen it, have seen only parts of it, and the greater part of what they say is from hearsay; and even what they saw they learned on a hasty passage with an army through the country. Wherefore they do not give out the same accounts of the same things, even though they have written these accounts as though their statements had been carefully confirmed. And some of them were both on the same expedition together and made their sojourns together, like those who helped Alexander to subdue Asia; yet they all frequently contradict one
στου δέ περὶ τῶν ὀραθέντων οὔτω διαφέρονται, τί
dει νομίζειν περὶ τῶν ἡ ἀκοῆς;

3. Καὶ μὴν οὐδ’ οἱ πολλοὶ\(^1\) πολλοῖς χρόνοις
ὑστερον συγγράψαντες τι περὶ τούτων, οὐδ’ οἱ νῦν
πλέοντες ἐκεῖσε, ἀποφαίνονται τι ἀκριβέσει.

C 686 'Απολλόδωρος γοῦν ὃ τὰ Παρθικὰ ποιήσας,
μεμνημένος καὶ τῶν τὴν Βακτριανὴν ἀποστησάν-
των Ἐλλήνων παρὰ τῶν Συριακῶν βασιλέων
tῶν ἀπὸ Σελεύκου τοῦ Νεκάτορος, φησὶ μὲν
αὐτοὺς αὐξηθέντας ἐπιθέσαθα καὶ τῇ Ἰνδικη’
οὐδὲν δὲ προσανακαλύπτει τῶν πρότερον ἐγνωσ-
μένων, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐναντιολογεῖ, πλείω τῆς Ἰνδικῆς
ἐκεῖνος ἡ Μακεδόνας καταστρέψασθαι λέγων.
Εὐκρατίδαν γοῦν πόλεις χιλίας ὑφ’ ἐαυτῷ ἐχεῖν
ἐκεῖνοι δὲ γε αὐτὰ τὰ μεταξὺ ἐθνὴ τοῦ τε
Τδάσπου καὶ τοῦ Ττάνιος τῶν ἄριθμον ἐννέα,
πόλεις τε σχεῖν πεντακισχιλίας, ὅν μυθεμίαν
eἶναι Κῶ τῆς Μεροτίδος ἐλάττω ταύτην δὲ
πᾶσαν τὴν χώραν καταστρεψάμενον Ἀλέξανδρον
παραδούναι Πόρω.

4. Καὶ οἱ νῦν δὲ ἔξι Αἰγύπτου πλέοντες
ἐμπορικοὶ τῷ Νείλῳ καὶ τῷ Ἀραβίῳ κόλπῳ
méχρι τῆς Ἰνδικῆς σπάνιοι μὲν καὶ\(^2\) περιπεπλεύ-
κασι μέχρι τοῦ Γάγγου, καὶ οὕτω δ’ ἰδιώται καὶ
οὔδεν πρὸς ἑστορίαν τῶν τόπων χρήσιμοι.
κάκειθεν δὲ ἀφ’ ἐνὸς τόπου καὶ παρ’ ἐνὸς
βασιλέως, Πανδίωνος, καὶ ἄλλου\(^3\) Πώρου, ἤκεν
ός Καίσαρα τὸν Σεβαστὸν δόρα καὶ πρεσβεία

\(^1\) πολλοὶ, which Corais and the later editors eject, Jones restores.

\(^2\) καὶ, omitted by Στοκκ.\(^\text{a}\)

\(^3\) Before καὶ ἄλλον Groskurd inserts ἦ, at the same time
another. But if they differ thus about what was seen, what must we think of what they report from hearsay?

3. Moreover, most of those who have written anything about this region in much later times, and those who sail there at the present time, do not present any accurate information either. At any rate, Apollodorus, who wrote *The Parthica*, when he mentions the Greeks who caused Bactriana to revolt from the Syrian kings who succeeded Seleucus Nicator, says that when those kings had grown in power they also attacked India, but he reveals nothing further than what was already known, and even contradicts what was known, saying that those kings subdued more of India than the Macedonians; that Eucratidas, at any rate, held a thousand cities as his subjects. Those other writers, however, say that merely the tribes between the Hydaspes and the Hypanis were nine in number, and that they had five thousand cities, no one of which was smaller than the Meropian Cos, and that Alexander subdued the whole of this country and gave it over to Porus.

4. As for the merchants who now sail from Aegypt by the Nile and the Arabian Gulf as far as India, only a small number have sailed as far as the Ganges; and even these are merely private citizens and of no use as regards the history of the places they have seen. But from India, from one place and from one king, I mean Pandion, or another Porus, there came to Caesar Augustus presents and gifts conjecturing *κατ’ ἄλλους*, which latter is followed by Kramer and Meineke; but the ἄλλου seems needed in view of the Porus mentioned in § 3 above.
καὶ ὁ κατακαύσας ἔαυτόν Ἠθήνησι σοφιστής Ἰνδός, καθάτερ καὶ ὁ Κάλανος Ἀλέξανδρῳ τὴν τοιαύτην θέαν ἐπιδειξάμενος.

5. Ἐὰν τούνν ταῦτ' ἀφεῖς τις τήν πρὸ τῆς Ἀλέξανδρον στρατείας ἐπιβλέποι μνήμην, πολὺ ἀν εὑροί τούτων τυφλότερα. Ἀλέξανδρον μὲν σὺν πιστεύει τοῖς τοιούτοις εἰκός, τετυφωμένον ταῖς τοσαύταις εὐτυχίαις. φησὶ γοῦν Νέαρχος φιλονεικήσαι αὐτὸν διὰ τῆς Γεδρωσίας ἀγαγεῖν τὴν στρατιάν, πεπυμένον διότι καὶ Σεμίραμις ἐστράτευσεν ἐπὶ Ἰνδοὺς καὶ Κύρος, ἀλλ' ἢ μὲν ἀνέστρεψε, φεύγουσα μετά εἰκοσι άνθρώπων, ἐκεῖνος δὲ μεθ' ἐπτά' ως σεμνὸν τό,¹ ἐκείνων τοσαύτα παθόντων, αὐτὸν καὶ ² στρατόπεδον διασώσαι μετὰ νίκης διὰ τῶν αὐτῶν ἐθνῶν τε καὶ τόπων· ἐκεῖνος μὲν δὴ ἐπίστευσεν.

6. Ἡμῖν δὲ τὶς ἀν δικαία γένοιτο πίστις περὶ τῶν Ἰνδικῶν ἐκ τῆς τοιαύτης στρατείας τοῦ Κύρου ἢ τῆς Σεμιράμιδος· συναποφαίνεται δὲ πῶς καὶ Μεγασθένης τῷ λόγῳ τούτῳ, κελεύων ἀπιστεύν ταῖς ἄρχαιας περὶ Ἰνδῶν ιστορίας· οὔτε γὰρ παρ' Ἰνδῶν ἔξω σταλῆναι ποτε στρατιάν, οὔτ' ἐπελθεῖν ἐξωθεῖν καὶ κρατῆσαι, πλὴν τῆς μεθ' Ἡρακλέους καὶ Διονύσου καὶ τῆς νῦν μετὰ Μακεδόνων. καὶ οἱ Σέσωστριν μὲν τῶν Ἀγυπτίων καὶ Τεύρκωνα τῶν Αἰθίοπα ἔως Εὐρώπης προελ. Κ 687 θείν· Ναβοκοδρόσοροι δὲ τῶν παρὰ Χαλδαίων

¹ For σεμνὸν τῷ Capps conj. σεμνὸν τι.
² καὶ, omitted by Ἐποζ.

¹ See 15. 1. 73.
² For a similar statement, see 15. 2. 5.
of honour and the Indian sophist who burnt himself up at Athens, as Calanus had done, who made a similar spectacular display of himself before Alexander.

5. If, however, one should dismiss these accounts and observe the records of the country prior to the expedition of Alexander, one would find things still more obscure. Now it is reasonable to suppose that Alexander believed such records because he was blinded by his numerous good fortunes; at any rate, Nearchus says that Alexander conceived an ambition to lead his army through Gedrosia when he learned that both Semiramis and Cyrus had made an expedition against the Indians, and that Semiramis had turned back in flight with only twenty people and Cyrus with seven; and that Alexander thought how grand it would be, when those had met with such reverses, if he himself should lead a whole victorious army safely through the same tribes and regions. Alexander, therefore, believed these accounts.

6. But as for us, what just credence can we place in the accounts of India derived from such an expedition made by Cyrus, or Semiramis? And Megasthenes virtually agrees with this reasoning when he bids us to have no faith in the ancient stories about the Indians; for, he says, neither was an army ever sent outside the country by the Indians nor did any outside army ever invade their country and master them, except that with Heracles and Dionysus and that in our times with the Macedonians. However, Sesostris, the Aegyptian, he adds, and Tearco the Aethiopian advanced as far as Europe; and Nabocodrosor, who enjoyed greater
ευδοκιμήσαντα 'Ηρακλέους μᾶλλον καὶ ἔως Στηλών ἐλάσιν· μέχρι μὲν δὴ δεύρο καὶ Τεάρκωνα ① ἀφικέσθαι· ἐκείνον δὲ καὶ έκ τῆς Ἰβηρίας εἰς τὴν Θρᾴκην καὶ τὸν Πόντον ἀγαγεῖν τὴν στρατιάν· Ἰδάνθυροι δὲ τὸν Σκύθην ἐπιδραμεῖν τῆς Ἀσίας μέχρι Αιγύπτου· τῆς δὲ Ἰνδικῆς μηδένα τούτων ἀγασθαί· καὶ Σεμίραμιν δ’ ἀποθανεῖν πρὸ τῆς ἐπιχειρήσεως. Πέρσας δὲ μισθοφόρους μὲν ἐκ τῆς Ἰνδικῆς μεταπέμψασθαι "Τοῦρακας, εκεῖ δὲ μὴ στρατεύσαι, ἀλλ’ ἐγγὺς ἐλθεῖν μόνον, ὡνίκα Κύρος ἠλαυνεὶ ἐπὶ Μασσαγέτας.

7. Καὶ τὰ περὶ 'Ηρακλέους δὲ καὶ Διονύσου Μεγασθένης μὲν μετ’ ὀλίγων πιστὰ ἤγειται, τῶν δ’ ἄλλων οἱ πλείους, δῶν ἐστὶ καὶ Ἐρατοσθένης, ἀπίστα καὶ μυθώδη, καθάπερ καὶ τὰ παρὰ τοῖς Ἑλλησίων. οὐ μὲν γὰρ ἐν ταῖς Βάκχαις ταῖς Εὐρυπίδου Διονύσου τοιαῦτα νεανιεύεται·

λιπὼν δὲ Λυδῶν τὰς πολυχρύσους γύνας Φρυγῶν τε Περσῶν θ’ ἡλιοβλήτων πλάκας Βάκτρια τε τεῖχη τὴν τε δύσχειμον χθόνα Μῆδων ἐπῆλθον Ἀραβίαν εὐδαίμονα Ἀσίαν τε πᾶσαν.

παρὰ Σοφοκλεῖ δὲ τίς ἐστὶ τῆν Νῦσαν ② καθυμνῶν, ὡς τὸ Διονύσῳ καθιερωμένον ὄρος·

οθεν κατείδου τὴν βεβακχιωμένην βροτοῦσι κλεινὴν Νῦσαν, ③ ἢν ὁ Βούκερως Ἰακχος αὐτῷ μαίαιν ἡδίστην νέμει, ὁποὺ τίς ὥρνις οὐχὶ κλαγγάνει;

καὶ τὰ ἑξῆς. καὶ Μηροτραφῆς δὲ λέγεται· ④ καὶ

1 Τεάρκων, F. ② Νῦσαν, C, Νῦσαν other MSS. ③ Νῦσαν, the editors, for Νῦσαν.
repute among the Chaldaeans than Heracles, led an army even as far as the Pillars. Thus far, he says, also Tearco went; and Sesostris also led his army from Iberia to Thrace and the Pontus; and Idanthyrus the Scythian overran Asia as far as Aegypt; but no one of these touched India, and Semiramis too died before the attempt; and, although the Persians summoned the Hydraces as mercenary troops from India, the latter did not make an expedition to Persia, but only came near it when Cyrus was marching against the Massagetae.

7. As for the stories of Heracles and Dionysus, Megasthenes with a few others considers them trustworthy; but most other writers, among whom is Eratosthenes, consider them untrustworthy and mythical, like the stories current among the Greeks. For instance, in the *Bacchae*¹ of Euripides Dionysus says with youthful bravado as follows: "I have left behind me the gold-bearing glades of Lydia and of Phrygia, and I have visited the sun-stricken plains of Persia, the walled towns of Bactria, the wintry land of the Medes, and Arabia the Blest, and the whole of Asia."² In Sophocles, also, there is someone who hymns the praises of Nysa as the mountain sacred to Dionysus: "Whence I beheld the famous Nysa, ranged in Bacchic frenzy by mortals, which the horned Iacchus roams as his own sweetest nurse, where—what bird exists that singeth not there?" And so forth. And he is also called "Merotraphes." And Homer says of

¹ 13 ff.
² Quoted also in 1. 2. 20.

⁴ καὶ . . . λέγεται, Meineke ejects.
STRABO

ο ποιητής περὶ Λυκούργου τοῦ 'Ηδωνοῦ φησιν οὖτως:

ὅς ποτε μανιμόνευοι Διονύσοιο τιθήνας σεῦ κατ’ ἡγάθεου Νυσάουν.

toiathta mev ta peri Dionysou peri de' Hrakleous ois men epit tanaitia monon mexhi ton espeirion peratwn istorousw, oi de eph ekatera.

8. 'Ek de ton toioytwn Nysaiwn dh tinas ethnos prosoewnmasan kai poliouv par' autoi Nusau,1 Dionysou ktimma, kai oros to uper ths polews Mnorou, aitiasamevoi kai ton autothi kisou kai ampeolon, oude tauthn telaseskarpou aptorei gar o botrus prin perkasai dia tous omibrou touj athen Dionysou dh apogonyous touj Suvrankas,2 apo ths ampeolon ths par' autois kai ton poluteolon exodwh, bakikos tais te ekstrateteias poioumenon tôn basilewv kai tas alla exodous meti tympanismou kai eunvthous stolhws; opep epitopolaie kai pará tois allous 'Indoëis. "Aorvnon de tina petran, ths tas rízas o 'Indos uporeiei plhsioun ton thgwn, 'Alxeándrou kata miai prosobolh enontos, semunontes efasav, ton 'Hrakleia tris mev prosovaliein th petra tauth, tris dh apokrousthna. ton de koinwiv-sautwn autw ths stratetias apogonyous einai touj Síbas, symboila ton genous sáxontas, to te dora ámpexeisbai, kathúper ton 'Hrakleia, kai to skutalithorein kai épikekaishbai Bouoli kai òmíonous rópaloj. Bébainountai de ton müthon

1 Nusau D.
2 Suzrankas, S, 'Oxuótrakas Suzrankas, 8, 'Oxuótrakas other MSS.

688
GEOGRAPHY, 15. i. 7–8

Lycurgus the Edonian as follows: "who once drove the nurses of frenzied Dionysus down over the sacred mount of Nysa."¹ So much for Dionysus. But, regarding Heracles, some tell the story that he went in the opposite direction only, as far as the extreme limits on the west, whereas others say that he went to both extreme limits.

8. From such stories, accordingly, writers have named a certain tribe of people "Nysaeans," and a city among them "Nysa," founded by Dionysus; and they have named a mountain above the city "Merus," alleging as the cause of the name the ivy that grows there, as also the vine, which latter does not reach maturity either; for on account of excessive rains the bunches of grapes fall off before they ripen; and they say that the Sydracae are descendants of Dionysus, judging from the vine in their country and from their costly processions, since the kings not only make their expeditions out of their country in Bacchic fashion, but also accompany all other processions with a beating of drums and with flowered robes, a custom which is also prevalent among the rest of the Indians. When Alexander, at one assault, took Aornus, a rock at the foot of which, near its sources, the Indus River flows, his exalters said that Heracles thrice attacked this rock and thrice was repulsed; and that the Sibae were descendants of those who shared with Heracles in the expedition, and that they retained badges of their descent, in that they wore skins like Heracles, carried clubs, and branded their cattle and mules with the mark of a club. And they further confirm this

¹ Iliad 6. 132.
τούτον καὶ ἐκ τῶν περὶ τὸν Καῦκασον καὶ τὸν Προμηθέα: καὶ γὰρ ταῦτα μετεννυχασιν ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου δεύρο ἀπὸ μικρὰς προφάσεως, ἰδόντες σπῆλαιον ἐν τοῖς Παροπαμισάδαις ἰερῶν τούτῳ γὰρ ἐνεδείξαντο Προμηθέως δεσμωτήριον, καὶ δεύρο ἀφιγμένον τὸν Ἡρακλέα ἑπὶ τὴν ἐλευθέρωσιν τοῦ Προμηθέως, καὶ τούτον εἶναι τὸν Καῦκασον, δὲν Ἐλληνες Προμηθέως δεσμωτήριον ἀπέφηναν.

9. Οτι δ' ἐστὶ πλάσματα ταῦτα τῶν κολα-κευόντων Ἀλέξανδρον, πρῶτον μὲν ἐκ τοῦ μὴ ὀμολογεῖν ἀλλήλους τοὺς συγγραφέας δῆλον, ἀλλὰ τοὺς μὲν λέγειν, τοὺς δὲ μηδ' ἀπλῶς μεμνήσθαι-ού γὰρ εἰκός, τὰ οὐτῶς ἐνδοξα καὶ τύφον πλήρη μὴ πεπύσθαι, ἢ πεπύσθαι μὲν, μὴ ἄξια δὲ μνήμης ὑπολαβεῖν, καὶ ταῦτα τοὺς πιστοτάτους αὐτῶν ἑπείτα ἐκ τοῦ μηδὲ τοὺς μεταξύ, δι' ὅν ἔχρην τὴν ἐς Ἰνδοὺς ἄφιξιν γενέσθαι τοῖς περὶ τὸν Διόνυσον καὶ τὸν Ἡρακλέα, μὴ δὲν ἔχειν τεκμήριον δεικνύ-ναι τῆς ἐκείνων ὅδου διὰ τῆς σφετέρας γῆς. καὶ ἢ τοῦ Ἡρακλέους δὲ στολή ἡ τοιαύτη πολὺ νεωτέρα τῆς Τρωικῆς μνήμης ἐστὶ, πλάσμα τῶν τὴν Ἡράκλεαν ποιησάντων, εἴτε Πείσανδρος ἢν, εἴτ' ἄλλος τίς; τὰ δ' ἀρχαία ξόανα οὐχ οὕτω διεσκεύασται.

10. Ὡς ἐν τοῖς τοιούτοις οὖν ἀποδέχεσθαι δεῖ πάν τὸ ἐγγυτάτω πίστεως. ἐποιησάμεθα δ' ἡμεῖς καὶ ἐν τοῖς πρώτοις λόγοις τοῖς περὶ γεωγραφίας διαταγὰς, ἢν δυνατὸν ἦν, περὶ τούτων καὶ νῦν ἐκείνως τε εἶς ἐτοίμου χρησόμεθα, καὶ ἑτερα

---

1 Adventures of Heracles.
myth by the stories of the Caucasus and Prometheus, for they have transferred all this thither on a slight pretext, I mean because they saw a sacred cave in the country of the Paropamisadae; for they set forth that this cave was the prison of Prometheus and that this was the place whither Heracles came to release Prometheus, and that this was the Caucasus the Greeks declared to be the prison of Prometheus.

9. But that these stories are fabrications of the flatterers of Alexander is obvious; first, not only from the fact that the historians do not agree with one another, and also because, while some relate them, others make no mention whatever of them; for it is unreasonable to believe that exploits so famous and full of romance were unknown to any historian, or, if known, that they were regarded as unworthy of recording, and that too by the most trustworthy of the historians; and, secondly, from the fact that not even the intervening peoples, through whose countries Dionysus and Heracles and their followers would have had to pass in order to reach India, can show any evidence that these made a journey through their country. Further, such accoutrement of Heracles is much later than the records of the Trojan War, being a fabrication of the authors of the Heracleia, whether the author was Peisander or someone else. The ancient statues of Heracles are not thus accoutred.

10. So, in cases like these, one must accept everything that is nearest to credibility. I have already in my first discussion of the subject of geography made decisions, as far as I could, about these matters. And now I shall unhesitatingly use those decisions
προσθήσομεν, ὃς ὄν ὁδίν δόξη πρὸς τὴν σαφήνειαν. μάλιστα δ' ἐκ τῆς διαίτης ἐδόκει τῆς τότε πιστότατα εἶναι τὰ ὑπὸ τοῦ Ερατοσθένους ἐν τῷ τρίτῳ τῶν γεωγραφικῶν ἐκτεθέντα κεφαλαιώδως περὶ τῆς τότε νομιζομένης 'Ἰνδικής, ἡνίκα Ἀλέξανδρος ἐπήλθε· καὶ ἢν ὁ Ἰνδὸς ὁριον ταύτης τε καὶ τῆς Ἀριανῆς, ἢν ἐφεξῆς πρὸς τήν ἐσπέρα 2 κειμένην Πέρσαι κατείχον ὕστερον γὰρ δὴ καὶ τῆς Ἀριανῆς πολλὴν ἔσχον οἱ Ἰνδοὶ λαβόντες παρὰ τῶν Μακεδόνων. ἔστι δὲ τοιαῦτα, ἀ λέγει ο Ἕρατοσθένης.

11. Τὴν Ἰνδικὴν περιώρικεν ἀπὸ μὲν τῶν ἀρκτῶν τοῦ Ταύρου τὰ ἐσχατὰ ἀπὸ τῆς Ἀριανῆς μέχρι τῆς ἐφῶς θαλάττης, ἀπερ ὁ ἐπιχώριοι κατὰ μέρος Παροπάμισον τε καὶ Ἡμωδον καὶ Ἰμαον 3 καὶ ἄλλα ὄνομαζοντι, Μακεδόνες δὲ Καύκασον ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς ἐσπέρας ὁ Ἰνδὸς ποταμός· τὸ δὲ νότιον καὶ τὸ προσεφόν πλευρὸν, πολὺ μείζω τῶν ἐτέρων ὄντα, προπέπτοκεν εἰς τὸ Ἀτλαντικὸν πέλαγος, καὶ γίνεται ῥοβῳδεῖς τὸ τῆς χώρας σχῆμα, τῶν μειζόνων πλευρῶν ἐκατέρου πλεονεκτοῦντος παρὰ τὸ ἀπεναντίον πλευρῶν καὶ τρισχιλίοις στάδιοι, ὅσων 4 ἐστὶ τὸ κοινὸν ἄκρον τῆς τε ἐωθινῆς παραλίας καὶ τῆς μεσημβρινῆς, ἔξω προπεττοκὸς ἐξ ὕσης ἐφ' ἐκάτερου παρὰ τὴν ἄλλην ἡμόνα. τῆς μὲν οὖν ἐσπερίου πλευρᾶς ἀπὸ τῶν Καυκασίων ὀρῶν ἐπὶ τὴν νότιον θάλατταν στάδιοι μάλιστα λέγονται μύριοι

1 δ' ἐκ, Corais, for ἐκ; so Meineke.
2 ἐσπέρα F, ἐσπέρα other MSS.
3 Ἰμαον, E, Μάον CF, Μάον Dhz.
4 ὅσων, F, ὅσων other MSS.
as accepted, and shall also add anything else that seems required for the purpose of clearness. It was particularly apparent from my former discussion that the summary account set forth in the third book of his geography by Eratosthenes of what was in his time regarded as India, that is, when Alexander invaded the country, is the most trustworthy; and the Indus River was the boundary between India and Ariana, which latter was situated next to India on the west and was in the possession of the Persians at that time; for later the Indians also held much of Ariana, having received it from the Macedonians. And the account given by Eratosthenes is as follows:

11. India is bounded on the north, from Ariana to the eastern sea, by the extremities of the Taurus, which by the natives are severally called "Paropamisus" and "Emodus" and "Imäus" and other names, but by the Macedonians "Caucasus"; on the west by the Indus River; but the southern and eastern sides, which are much greater than the other two, extend out into the Atlantic sea, and thus the shape of the country becomes rhomboidal, each of the greater sides exceeding the opposite side by as much as three thousand stadia, which is the same number of stadia by which the cape common to the eastern and southern coast extends equally farther out in either direction than the rest of the shore. Now the length of the western side from the Caucasian Mountains to the southern sea is generally called thirteen thousand stadia,

1 See 11. 8. 1 and footnote 3.
2 i.e. Cape Comorin.
τρισχίλιοι παρὰ τῶν Ἰνδῶν ποταμὸν μέχρι τῶν ἐκβολῶν αὐτοῦ· ὡστ' ἀπεναντίον ἡ ἐωθινὴ προσ-]
λαβοῦσα τους τῆς ἀκρας τρισχίλιοις ἔσται μυρίων καὶ ἐξακισχιλίων σταδίων. τούτο μὲν
οὖν πλάτος τῆς χώρας τó τ' ἐλάχιστον καὶ τó μέγιστον. μῆκος δὲ τοῦ ἀπὸ τῆς ἐστέρας ἐπὶ τὴν
ἐω' τοῦτον δὲ τὸ μέν μέχρι Παλιβόθρων ἔχοι τις ἄν βεβαιοτέρως εἶπεν, καταμεμέτρηται ἃρ
σχοινίοις,1 καὶ ἔστων ὄδος βασιλικὴ σταδίων μυρίων.2 τὰ δ' ἑπέκεινα στοχασμῷ λαμβάνεται
diα τῶν ἀνάπλων τῶν ἐκ θαλάττης διὰ τοῦ Γάγγου ποταμοῦ μέχρι Παλιβόθρων εἶν' δ' ἄν
tι3 σταδίων ἐξακισχιλίων. ἔσται δὲ τὸ πᾶν,
ἡ βραχύτατος, μυρίων ἐξακισχιλίων, ὡς ἐκ τῆς ἀναγραφῆς τῶν σταθμῶν τῆς πεπιστευμένης
μάλιστα λαβεῖν Ἑρατοσθένης φησί· καὶ ἡ Μεγα-
σθένης οὗτω συναποφαινεῖται, Πατροκλῆς δὲ
χιλίων ἔλαττόν φησι. τούτῳ δὴ πάλιν τῷ δια-
στήματι προστεθὲν τὸ τῆς ἀκρας διάστημα τὸ
προπίπτου4 ἐπὶ πλέον πρὸς τὰς ἀνατολάς, οἱ
τρισχίλιοι στάδιοι ποιήσουσι τὸ μέγιστον μῆκος·
ἔστι δὲ τοῦτο ἅπα τῶν ἐκβολῶν τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ
ποταμοῦ παρὰ τῆς ἐξῆς ἡμόνα, μέχρι τῆς λεχθείσης
ἀκρας καὶ τῶν ἀνατολικῶν αὐτῆς τερμῶν· οἰκοῦσι
δ' ἐνταῦθα οἱ Κωνιακοὶ καλούμενοι.

12. Ἐκ δὲ τούτων πάρεστιν ὅραν ὅσον διαφέ-
ρουσιν αἷς τῶν ἄλλων ἀποφάσεις, Κτησίου μὲν
οὐκ ἐλάττω τῆς ἄλλης Ἀσίας τὴν Ἰνδικὴν λέ-

---

1 σχοινίοις, Corais emends to σχοινίοις.
2 μυρίων, Casaubon, for δισμυρίων; so the later editors.
3 δ' ἀντὶ, CDFh; τι omitted by moxx.
4 προπίπτου, Corais, for προσπίπτου; so the later editors.
GEOGRAPHY, 15. I. 11-12

I mean along the Indus River to its outlets, so that the length of the opposite side, the eastern, if one adds the three thousand of the cape, will be sixteen thousand stadia. These, then, are the minimum and maximum breadths of the country. The lengths are reckoned from the west to the east; and, of these, that to Palibothra can be told with more confidence, for it has been measured with measuring-lines,¹ and there is a royal road of ten thousand stadia. The extent of the parts beyond Palibothra is a matter of guess, depending upon the voyages made from the sea on the Ganges to Palibothra; and this would be something like six thousand stadia. The entire length of the country, at its minimum, will be sixteen thousand stadia, as taken from the Register of Days' Journeys that is most commonly accepted, according to Eratosthenes; and, in agreement with him, Megasthenes states the same thing, though Patrocles says a thousand stadia less. If to this distance, however, one adds the distance that the cape extends out into the sea still farther towards the east, the extra three thousand stadia will form the maximum length;² and this constitutes the distance from the outlets of the Indus River along the shore that comes next in order thereafter, to the aforesaid cape, that is, to the eastern limits of India. Here live the Coniaci, as they are called.

12. From this one can see how much the accounts of the other writers differ. Ctesias says that India is not smaller than the rest of Asia; Onesicritus that

¹ Or, by a slight emendation of the text, "in terms of the schoenus" (see critical note and cf. 11. 14. 11).
² i.e. 19,000 stadia.
γοντος, Ὅνησικρῖτον δὲ τρίτον μέρος τῆς οἰκου-
μένης, Νεάρχου δὲ μηνῶν ὁδὸν τεττάρων τὴν δὲ
C 690 αὐτοῦ 1 τοῦ πεδίου, Μεγασθένους δὲ καὶ Δημιάχου
μετριασάντων μᾶλλον, ὑπὲρ γὰρ δισμυρίους
τιθέασι σταδίους τὸ ἀπὸ τῆς νοτίου θαλάττης
ἐπὶ τὸν Καυκάσου, Δημάχου δ' ὑπὲρ τοὺς
τρισμυρίους κατ' ἐνίοις τόπον: πρὸς οὖς ἐν τοῖς
πρώτοις λόγοις εἰρηται. νῦν δὲ τοσοῦτον εἰπεῖν
ἰκανὸν, ὅτι καὶ ταύτα συνηγορεῖ τοῖς αὐτουμένοις
συγγνώμην, ἕαν τι περὶ τῶν Ἰνδικῶν λέγοντες μὴ
dισχυρίζωνται.

13. "Απασα δ' ἐστὶ κατάρρυτος ποταμὸς ἡ
Ἰνδική, τοῖς μὲν εἰς δύο τοὺς μεγίστους συρρηγγυ-
μένους, τὸν τε Ἰνδὸν καὶ τὸν Γάγγην, τοῖς δὲ κατ'
Ἤδια στόματα ἐκδιδοῦσιν εἰς τὴν θάλατταν
ἀπαντες δ' ἀπὸ τοῦ Καυκάσου τὴν ἄρχην ἔχουσι
καὶ φέρονται μὲν ἐπὶ τὴν μεσημβρίαν τὸ πρῶτον,
eἰθ' οἱ μὲν μένουσιν ἐπὶ τῆς αὐτῆς φορᾶς, καὶ
μάλιστα οἱ εἰς τὸν Ἰνδὸν συμβάλλουσες, οἱ δ' ἐπιστρέφονται πρὸς ἑω, καθάπερ καὶ ὁ Γάγγης
ποταμός. οὔτος μὲν οὖν καταβας ἐκ τῆς ὀρεινῆς
ἐπειδὰν ἄγηται τῶν πεδίων, ἐπιστρέψας πρὸς ἑω
καὶ ὑπείς παρὰ τὰ Παλίβοθρα, μεγίστην πόλιν,
πρόεισιν ἐπὶ τὴν ταύτην θάλατταν καὶ μίαν
ἐκβολὴν ποιεῖται, μέγιστος ὄν τῶν κατὰ τῇ
Ἰνδικήν ποταμῶν. ὁ δὲ Ἰνδὸς δυσὶ στόμασιν εἰς
τὴν μεσημβρίαν ἐκπίπτει θάλατταν, ἐμπερι-
λαμβάνων τὴν Παταληνήν καλουμένην χώραν,
παραπλησίαν τῷ κατ' Αἰγυπτοῦ Δέλτα. ἐκ δὲ
τῆς ἀναδυμάσεως τῶν τοσοῦτων ποταμῶν καὶ
ἐκ τῶν ἐτησίων, ὥς Ἔρατοσθένης φησί, βρέχεται

1 αὐτοῦ, Meineke omits.
GEOGRAPHY, 15. 1. 12-13

it is a third part of the inhabited world: Nearchus that the march merely through the plain itself takes four months; but Megasthenes and Deimachus are more moderate in their estimates, for they put the distance from the southern sea to the Caucasus at “above twenty thousand stadia,” although Deimachus says that “at some places the distance is above thirty thousand stadia;” but I have replied to these writers in my first discussion of India. At present it is sufficient to say that this statement of mine agrees with that of those writers who ask our pardon if, in anything they say about India, they do not speak with assurance.

13. The whole of India is traversed by rivers. Some of these flow together into the two largest rivers, the Indus and the Ganges, whereas others empty into the sea by their own mouths. They have their sources, one and all, in the Caucasus; and they all flow first towards the south, and then, though some of them continue to flow in the same direction, in particular those which flow into the Indus, others bend towards the east, as, for example, the Ganges. Now the Ganges, which is the largest of the rivers in India, flows down from the mountainous country, and when it reaches the plains bends towards the east and flows past Palibothra, a very large city, and then flows on towards the sea in that region and emptied by a single outlet. But the Indus empties by two mouths into the southern sea, encompassing the country called Patalene, which is similar to the Delta of Aegypt. It is due to the vapours arising from all these rivers and to the Etesian winds, as Eratosthenes says, that India is

1 2. 1. 4 ff.
τοῖς θερινοῖς ὠμβροῖς ἡ Ἰνδική, καὶ λιμνάζει τὰ πεδία· ἐν μὲν οὖν τούτοις τοῖς ὠμβροῖς λίγον σπείρεται καὶ κέγχρος· πρὸς τούτοις σήσαμον, ὄρυζα, βόσμορον. τοῖς δὲ χειμερινοῖς καιροῖς πυροῖ, κριθαί, ὀστρια καὶ ἄλλοι καρποὶ ἐδώδιμοι, ὄντες ἤμεῖς ἀπειροί. σχεδόν δὲ τι τοῖς ἐν Αἰθιοπίᾳ καὶ κατ' Αἰγυπτίων τὰ αὐτὰ φύσεται καὶ ἐν τῇ Ἰνδικῇ, καὶ τῶν ἐν τοῖς ποταμοῖς, πλὴν ἤππου ποταμών, τὰ ἄλλα φέρουσι καὶ οἱ Ἰνδικοὶ· ὁμοίας γενέσθαι φησι. τῶν δ' ἀνθρώπων οἱ μὲν μεσημβρινοὶ τοῖς Αἰθίοπιν ἐσιν ὄμοιοι κατὰ τὴν χροιάν, κατὰ δὲ τὴν ὀψιν καὶ τὴν τρίχωσιν τοῖς ἄλλοις (οὐδὲ γὰρ οὐλοτριχοῦσι διὰ τὴν ύγρότητα τοῦ ἀέρος), οἱ δὲ βόρειοί τοῖς Αἰγυπτίοις.

14. Τὴν δὲ Ταπρομάνην πελαγίαν εἶναι φασί νῆσον, ἀπέχουσαν τῶν νοτιωτάτων τῆς Ἰνδικῆς τῶν κατὰ τοὺς Κωνιακοὺς πρὸς μεσημβρίαν ἥμερων ἐπτὰ πλοῦν, μῆκος μὲν ὡς ὀκτακισχιλίων \(^1\) σταδίων ἐπὶ τὴν Αἰθιοπίαν· ἔχειν δὲ καὶ ἐλέφαντας. τοιαύτα μὲν αἱ τοῦ Ἑρατοσθένους ἀποφάσεις. προστεθεῖσα δὲ καὶ αἱ τῶν ἄλλων, εἴ πού τι προσακριβοῦσιν, ἰδιοποιήσουσι \(^2\) τὴν γραφήν.

15. Οἷον περὶ τῆς Ταπρομάνης ὁ Οὐνθίκριτος φησι, μέγεθος μὲν εἶναι πεντακισχιλίων σταδίων, οὗ διορίσας μῆκος οὐδὲ πλάτος, διέχειν δὲ τῆς ἥπειρου πλοῦν ἥμερων εἰκοσι· ἄλλα κακοπλοεῖν

\(^1\) ὀκτακισχιλίων, Meineke, following Groskurd, emends to πεντακισχιλίων (see Groskurd, Vol. III, p. 117, note 2).
\(^2\) For ἰδιοποιήσουσι, Corais and Meineke read ἰδιοποιήσουσι.
GEOGRAPHY, 15. 1. 13-15

watered by the summer rains and that the plains become marshes. Now in the rainy seasons flax is sown, and also millet, and, in addition to these, sesame and rice and bosmorum, and in the winter seasons wheat and barley and pulse and other edibles with which we are unacquainted. I might almost say that the same animals are to be found in India as in Aethioplia and Aegypt, and that the Indian rivers have all the other river animals except the hippopotamus, although Onesicritus says that the hippopotamus is also to be found in India. As for the people of India, those in the south are like the Aethiopians in colour, although they are like the rest in respect to countenance and hair (for on account of the humidity of the air their hair does not curl), whereas those in the north are like the Aegyptians.

14. As for Taprobane, it is said to be an island situated in the high sea within a seven days' sail towards the south from the most southerly parts of India, the land of the Coniaci; that it extends in length about eight thousand stadia in the direction of Aethiopia, and that it also has elephants. Such are the statements of Eratosthenes; but my own description will be specially characterised by the addition of the statements of the other writers, wherever they add any accurate information.

15. Onesicritus, for example, says of Taprobane that it is "five thousand stadia in size," without distinguishing its length or breadth; and that it is a twenty days' voyage distant from the mainland, but

1 See § 18 following.
2 On Taprobane (Ceylon), cf. Pliny 24 (22) ff.
3 See 2. 1.14, where Strabo says five thousand (see critical note).
tās ναῦς, φαύλως μὲν ἵστιοπεποιημένας, κατεσκευασμένας δὲ ἀμφότεροθεν ¹ ἐγκοιλίων μητρῶν ² χωρίς: εἶναι δὲ καὶ ἄλλας νῆσους αὐτῆς μεταξὺ καὶ τῆς Ἰνδικῆς, νοτιωτάτην δ’ ἐκείνην. κῆτῃ δ’ ἀμφίβια περὶ αὐτὴν γίνεσθαι, τὰ μὲν βουσὶ, τὰ δ’ ἵπποις, τὰ δ’ ἄλλοις χερσαίοις ἑοικότα.

16. Νέαρχος δὲ περὶ τῆς ἑκ τῶν ποταμῶν ἐπι-χοῆς παραδείγματα φέρει τὰ τοιαῦτα, ὅτι καὶ τὸ Ἕρμου, καὶ Καῦστρου πεδίου καὶ Μαιάνδρου καὶ Καίκου παραπλησίως εἰρήται, διὰ τὸ ³ τὴν ἐπιφο- ρουμένην τοῖς πεδίοις χοῦν αὐξεῖν αὐτά, μᾶλλον δὲ γεννᾶν, ἐκ τῶν ὄρων καταφερουμένην, ὡσε εὐγεως καὶ μαλακῇ· καταφέρειν δὲ τοὺς ποταμοὺς, ὥστε τούτων ὡς ἂν γεννηματα ὑπάρχειν τὰ πεδία, καὶ εὗ λέγεσθαι, ὅτι τούτων ἐστὶ τὰ πεδία. τοῦτο δὲ ταύτων ἐστὶ τῷ ὑπὸ τοῦ Ἡροντοῦ λεχθέντι ἕπὶ τοῦ Νείλου καὶ τῆς ἐπ’ ⁴ αὐτῷ γῆς, ὅτι ἐκεῖνον δῷρον ἐστὶ· διὰ τούτῳ δ’ ὀρθῶς καὶ ὁμοώνυμως τῇ Λαγύπτῳ φησὶ λεχθῆναι τῶν Νείλου ὁ Νέαρχος.

17. Ἀριστόβουλος δὲ μόνα καὶ ἅγιά ταῖς ἐπιφάνειας φησὶ, τὰ πεδία δὲ καὶ ὄμβρον ὑμών ἀπηλλάχθαι καὶ νιφετῶν, ἐπικλύζεσθαι δὲ μῶν κατὰ τὰς ἀναβάσεις τῶν ποταμῶν νίφεσθαι μὲν ὅπως τὰ ὀργα κατὰ χειμῶνα, τοὺ δὲ ζάρος ἀρχομένου καὶ

---

¹ Before ἐγκοιλίων Meineke inserts πρώραις.
² μῆτρων, DFn.
³ τὸ, Corais inserts; so the later editors.
⁴ ἐπ’, Kramer, for ὑπ’; so the later editors.

---

¹ Pliny (6. 24 [22]) says, "navibus utrimque prorae, ne per angustias alvei circumagis sit necessae" ("the ships have prows
that it is a difficult voyage for ships that are poorly furnished with sails and are constructed without belly-ribs on both sides; and that there are also other islands between Taprobanê and India, though Taprobanê is farthest south; and that amphibious monsters are to be found round it, some of which are like kine, others like horses, and others like other land-animals.

16. Nearchus, speaking of the alluvia deposited by the rivers, gives the following examples: that the Plain of the Hermus River, and that of the Cayster, as also those of the Maeander and the Caicus, are so named because they are increased, or rather created, by the silt that is carried down from the mountains over the plains—that is all the silt that is fertile and soft; and that it is carried down by the rivers, so that the plains are, in fact, the offspring, as it were, of these rivers; and that it is well said that they belong to these. This is the same as the statement made by Herodotus in regard to the Nile and the land that borders thereon, that the land is the gift of the Nile; and for this reason Nearchus rightly says that the Nile was also called by the same name as the land Aegyptus.

17. Aristobulus says that only the mountains and their foothills have both rain and snow, but that the plains are free alike from rain and snow, and are inundated only when the rivers rise; that the mountains have snow in the winter-time, and at the at either end, in order that it may not be necessary to tack while navigating the narrow passages of the channel”). Meineke, following the conjecture of Kramer, emends the words of Strabo to make them more in accord with those of Pliny (see critical note).

2 Cp. 1. 2. 29.
τοὺς ὠμβρούς ἐνάρχεσθαι, καὶ ἂεὶ καὶ μᾶλλον λαμβάνειν ἐπίδοσιν, τοῖς δ’ ἐπησίαις καὶ ἀδιαλείπτως νῦκτωρ καὶ μεθ’ ἡμέραν ἐκχείσθαι καὶ λάβρους ἔως ἐπιτολῆς 'Ἀρκτούρον' ἐκ τε δὴ τῶν χιόνων καὶ τῶν ύετῶν πληρομένους ποταμοὺς ποτιζεῖν τὰ πεδία. κατανοηθῆναι δὲ ταύτα καὶ ύφ’ ἐαυτοῦ καὶ ύπὸ τῶν ἄλλων φησίν, ὥρμηκτών μὲν εἰς τὴν Ἰνδικὴν ἀπὸ Παροπαμισάδων μετὰ δυσμᾶς Πληιάδων, καὶ διατριβάντων κατὰ τὴν ὄρειν ἐν τε τῇ 'Τπασίων καὶ τῇ 'Ασσακανοῦ γῇ τῶν χειμῶνα, τοῦ δ’ ἔαρος ἀρχομένου καταβεβηκότων εἰς τὰ πεδία καὶ πόλιν Τάξιλα εὐμεγέθη, ἐντεῦθεν δ’ ἐπὶ 'Τδάσπην καὶ τὴν Πώρου χώρας’ τοῦ μὲν ὄν χειμώνος ὑδώρ οὐκ ἰδεῖν, ἀλλὰ χιόνας μόνον’ ἐν δὲ τοῖς Ταξίλοις πρῶτον ἠσθήναι, καὶ ἐπειδὴ καταβᾶσιν ἐπὶ τὸν 'Τδάσπην καὶ νικήσαςι Πώρου ὄδος ἦν ἐπὶ τὸν 'Τπανιν πρὸς ἐὼ κακεῖθεν ἐπὶ τὸν 'Τδάσπην πάλιν, ὑέσθαι συνεχῶς, καὶ μᾶλλοτά τοῖς ἐτησίαις, ἐπιτείλαντος δὲ 'Ἀρκτούρον, γενέσθαι παύλαν’ διατριβάντας δὲ περὶ τὴν ναυτηγίαν ἐπὶ τῷ 'Τδάσπην καὶ πλεῖν ἄρξαμένους πρὸ δύσεως Πληιάδος οὐ πολλαὶς ἡμέραις, καὶ τὸ φθινόπωρον πᾶν καὶ τὸν χειμώνα καὶ τὸ ἐπὶ έαρ καὶ θέρος C 692 ἐν τῷ κατάπλω πραγματευθέντας ἐλθεῖν εἰς τὴν Παταληνὴν περὶ Κυνὸς ἐπιτολῆν’ δέκα μὲν δὴ τοῦ κατάπλου γενέσθαι μήνας, οὐδαμοῦ δ’ ύετῶν αἰσθέσθαι, οὐδ’ ὅτε ἐπήκμασαν οἱ ἐτησίαι, τῶν δὲ ποταμῶν πληρομένων τὰ πεδία κλύζεσθαι, τὴν

1 τοῖς δ’ ἐτησίαις, Tywhitt, for τοῖς δὲ τῆς ἄσιας; so the later editors.
2 ποταμοῖς, inserted by Groskurd; so the later editors.
3 'Ασσακανοῦ, Corais, for Μουσικανοῦ; so the later editors.
beginning of spring-time the rains also set in and ever increase more and more, and at the time of the Etesian winds the rains pour unceasingly and violently from the clouds, both day and night, until the rising of Arcturus; and that, therefore, the rivers, thus filled from both the snows and the rains, water the plains. He says that both he himself and the others noted this when they had set out for India from Paropamisadae, after the setting of the Pleiades, and when they spent the winter near the mountainous country in the land of the Hypasians and of Assacanus, and that at the beginning of spring they went down into the plains and to Taxila, a large city, and thence to the Hydaspes River and the country of Porus; that in winter, however, no water was to be seen, but only snow; and that it first rained at Taxila; and that when, after they had gone down to the Hydaspes River and had conquered Porus, their journey led to the Hypanis River towards the east and thence back again to the Hydaspes, it rained continually, and especially at the time of the Etesian winds; but that when Arcturus rose, the rain ceased; and that after tarrying while their ships were being built on the Hydaspes River, and after beginning their voyage thence only a few days before the setting of the Pleiades, and, after occupying themselves all autumn and winter and the coming spring and summer with their voyage down to the seacoast, they arrived at Pata-lenê at about the time of the rising of the Dog Star; that the voyage down to the seacoast therefore took ten months, and that they saw rains nowhere, not even when the Etesian winds were at their height, and that the plains were flooded when the rivers
δὲ θάλατταν ἀπλουν εἶναι τῶν ἀνέμων ἀντιπνεύστων, ἀπογαίας 1 δὲ μηδεμίας πυὸς ἐκδέξαμεν.

18. Τοῦτο μὲν οὖν αὐτὸ 2 καὶ ὁ Νέαρχος λέγει, περὶ δὲ τῶν θερινῶν ὀμβρῶν οὐχ ὀμολογεῖ, ἀλλὰ φησιν ὑσθαί τὰ πεδία θέρους, χειμῶνος δὲ ἀνομβρα εἶναι. λέγουσι δὲ ἀμφότεροι καὶ τὰς ἀναβάσεις τῶν ποταμῶν. ὁ μὲν γε Νέαρχος τοῦ Ἀκεσίνου πλησίον στρατοπεδεύοντάς 3 φησιν ἀναγκασθήναι μεταλαμβαίνειν τότον ἄλλον ὑπερδέξιον κατὰ τὴν ἀνάβασιν, γενέσθαι δὲ τοῦτο κατὰ θερινὰς τροπίας· ὁ δὲ 'Αριστόβουλος καὶ μέτρα τῆς ἀναβάσεως ἐκτίθεται τετταράκοντα πήχεις, ὅν τοὺς μὲν εἰκοσιν ὑπὲρ τὸ προϋπάρχον βάθος πληρῶν μέχρι χείλους τὸ βέθρον, τοῖς δὲ 4 εἰκοσιν ὑπέρχυσιν εἶναι εἰς τὰ πεδία. ὀμολογοῦσι δὲ καὶ διότι συμβαίνει νησίζειν τὰς πόλεις ἐπάνω χωμάτων ἰδρυμένας, καθάπερ καὶ ἐν Λιγύπτῳ καὶ Αἰθιοπίᾳ, μετὰ δὲ Ἀρκτούρον παύσθαι τὴν πλῆμμαραν, ἀποβαίνοντος τοῦ ὑδάτος· ἐτὶ ἡμίψυκτου σπείρεσθαι τὴν γῆν, ὑπὸ 5 τοῦ τυχόντος 6 ὀρύκτου χαραχθεῖσαν, καὶ ὦμος φύεσθαι τὸν καρπὸν τέλειον καὶ καλὸν. τὴν δὲ ὄρυζαν φησιν ὁ 'Αριστόβουλος ἐστάναι εἰς ὑδατικείσθαι, πρασίας δὲ εἶναι τὰς ἐχούσας αὐτὴν ὑψὸς δὲ τοῦ φυτοῦ τετράπηχυ, πολύσταχυ τε καὶ πολύκαρπον ἑρέίζεσθαι δὲ περὶ δύσιν Πληιάδος καὶ

1 ἀπογαίας, Corais, for ἀπὸ γαίας; so the later editors.
2 αὐτό, Xylander, for αὐτὸ; so the later editors.
3 στρατοπεδεύοντας, Tzschucke, for στρατεύοντα E, στρατοπεδεύοντος other MSS.; so the later editors.
4 τοὺς δὲ Ἐτῆς Tzschucke and Corais.
26
were filled, and the sea was not navigable when the winds were blowing in the opposite direction, and that no land breezes succeeded them.

18. Now this is precisely what Nearchus says too, but he does not agree with Aristobulus about the summer rains, saying that the plains have rains in summer but are without rains in winter. Both writers, however, speak also of the risings of the rivers. Nearchus says that when they were camping near the Acesines River they were forced at the time of the rising to change to a favourable place higher up, and that this took place at the time of the summer solstice; whereas Aristobulus gives also the measure of the height to which the river rises, forty cubits, of which cubits twenty are filled by the stream above its previous depth to the margin and the other twenty are the measure of the overflow in the plains. They agree also that the cities situated on the top of mounds become islands, as is the case also in Aegypt and Aethiopia, and that the overflows cease after the rising of Arcturus, when the waters recede; and they add that although the soil is sown when only half-dried, after being furrowed by any sort of digging-instrument, \(^1\) yet the plant comes to maturity and yields excellent fruit. The rice, according to Aristobulus, stands in water enclosures and is sown in beds; and the plant is four cubits in height, not only having many ears but also yielding much grain; and the harvest is about the time of the setting of the Pleiades, and

\(^1\) Cf. 7. 4. 6 and footnote on “digging-instrument.”

---

5 \(\upsilon \delta\), Corais, for \(\alpha \pi \delta\); so the later editors.
6 \(\tau \chi \theta \iota \nu \tau \iota \sigma\), \(\psi \chi \o \nu \tau \iota \sigma\) other MSS.
πτίσσεσθαι1 ὡς τὰς ζειάς· φύεσθαι δὲ καὶ ἐν τῇ Βακτριανῇ καὶ Βαβυλώνῃ καὶ Σουσίδι, καὶ ἡ κάτω δὲ Συρία φύει. Μέγιλλος δὲ τὴν ὄρυξαν σπείρεσθαι μὲν πρὸ τῶν ὄμβρων φησίν, ἀρδείας δὲ καὶ φυτείας2 δείσθαι, ἀπὸ τῶν κλειστῶν ποτιζομένην ύδάτων. περὶ δὲ τοῦ βοσμόρου3 φησίν 'Ουνησίκριτος, διότι σῶτος4 ἐστὶ μικρότερος τοῦ πυροῦ· γεννᾶται δὲ ἐν ταῖς μεσοποταμίαις. φρύγαται δ’, ἐπὶ ἀλογηθὴ, προσμυνώντων μὴ ἀποίσευν ἄπυρον ἐκ τῆς ἄλω τοῦ μὴ ἐξάγεσθαι σπέρμα.

19. Τὴν δ’ ὀμοιότητα τῆς χώρας ταύτης πρὸς τε τὴν Ἀἴγυπτον καὶ τὴν Ἀἰθιοπίαν καὶ πάλιν τὴν ἐναντίοτητα παραθείς ὁ 'Αριστόβουλος, διότι τῷ Νεῖλῳ μὲν ἐκ τῶν νυσών ὄμβρων ἔστιν ἡ πλῆρωσις, τοῖς 'Ινδικοῖς δὲ ποταμοῖς ἀπὸ τῶν ἀρκτικῶν, ξητεῖ, πῶς οἱ μεταξὺ τοῦ οὐ κατομβροῦνται· οὔτε γὰρ ἡ Ὁσβαίς μέχρι Συνήνης καὶ τῶν ἐγγύς Μερόης, οὔτε τῆς 'Ινδικῆς τὰ ἀπὸ τῆς Παταληνῆς μέχρι τοῦ Υδάσπου. τὴν δ’ ὑπὲρ ταύτα τὰ μέρη χῶραν, ἐν ἡ καὶ ὄμβροι καὶ νυφετοι, παραπλησίως ἔφη γεωργιεσθαι τῇ ἄλλῃ τῇ ἐξῳ τῆς 'Ινδικῆς χώρᾳ· ποτίζεσθαι γὰρ ἐκ τῶν ὄμβρων καὶ χιόνων. εἰκός δ’ οἶς εἰρήκεν οὕτως καὶ εὑσειστὸν εἶναι τὴν γῆν, χαυνυμένην ὑπὸ τῆς πολλῆς υγρασίας καὶ ἐκρήγματα λαμβάνουσαν, ὥστε καὶ ἰείδρα ποταμών ἀλλάττεσθαι. πεμφθεῖς γοῦν ἐπὶ τὶνα χρείαν ἰδεῖν φησιν ἐρημωθεῖσαι

1 πτίσσεσθαι, sec. man. in D, for πτίζεσθαι CEFxx, πτίζεσθαι sw, βαπτίζεσθαι m.
2 Corais inserts μὴ before δείσθαι; so Meineke.
3 δ’, after βοσμόρου, Corais ejects; so later editors.

28
the grain is winnowed like barley; and rice grows also in Bactriana and Babylonia and Susis, as also in Lower Syria. Megillus says that rice is sown before the rains, but requires irrigation and transplanting,\(^1\) being watered from tanks. Bosmorum, according to Onesicritus, is a smaller grain than wheat; and it grows in lands situated between rivers. It is roasted when it is threshed out, since the people take an oath beforehand that they will not carry it away unroasted from the threshing-floor, to prevent the exportation of seed.

19. Aristobulus, comparing the characteristics of this country that are similar to those of both Aegypt and Aethiopia, and again those that are opposite thereto, I mean the fact that the Nile is flooded from the southern rains, whereas the Indian rivers are flooded from the northern, inquires why the intermediate regions have no rainfall; for neither the Thebaïs as far as Syenê and the region of Meroê nor the region of India from Patalenê as far as the Hydaspes has any rain. But the country above these parts, in which both rain and snow fall, are cultivated, he says, in the same way as in the rest of the country that is outside India; for, he adds, it is watered by the rains and snows. And it is reasonable to suppose from his statements that the land is also quite subject to earthquakes, since it is made porous by reason of its great humidity and is subject to such fissures that even the beds of rivers are changed. At any rate, he says that when he was sent upon a certain mission he saw a country

\(^1\) See critical note.
χώραν πλειόνων ἡ χιλίων πόλεων σὺν κόμαις, ἐκλιπόντος τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ τὸ ὀίκειον ῥεῖθρον, ἐκτραπομένου δὲ εἰς τὸ ἔτερον ἐν ἀριστερῇ κοιλότερον πολύ, καὶ οἷον καταρράξαντος, ὡς τὴν ἀπολειφθείσαν εὖ δεξίᾳ χώραν μηκέτι ποτίζεσθαι ταῖς ύπερχύσεσι, μετεωροτέραν οὖσαν οὐ τοῦ ῥεῖθρου τοῦ καίνοι μόνον, ἀλλὰ καὶ τῶν ύπερχύσεων.

20. Ταὐς δὲ τῶν ποταμῶν πληρώσει καὶ τῷ τούς ἀπογαίους μὴ πνεῖν ὁμολογεῖ καὶ τὸ λεχθέν ὑπὸ τοῦ Ὀνησικρίτου τεναγώδη γὰρ φησιν εἶναι τὴν παραλίαν, καὶ μάλιστα κατὰ τὰ στόματα τῶν ποταμῶν, διά τε τὴν χοῦν καὶ τὰς πλημμυρίδας καὶ τὴν τῶν πελαγίων ἀνέμων ἐπικράτειαν. Μεγασθένης δὲ τὴν εὐδαιμονίαν τῆς Ἰνδικῆς ἐπισημαίνεται τῷ δικαρπόν εἶναι καὶ δίφορον καθάπερ καὶ Ἐρατοσθένης ἐφη, τὸν μὲν εἰπὼν σπόρον χειμερινὸν, τὸν δὲ θερινόν, καὶ ὄμοιως ὁμοίως; οὐδὲν γὰρ ἔτος εὐρίσκεσθαι φησί πρὸς ἀμφοτέρους καιροὺς ἀνομβρῶν ὡστ' εὐετηρίαν ἐκ τούτου συμβαίνειν, ἀφόρον μηδέποτε τῆς γῆς οὕσης τοὺς τε ἐξυλίνους καρποὺς γεννᾶσθαι πολλοὺς καὶ τὰς ῥίζας τῶν φυτῶν, καὶ μάλιστα τῶν μεγάλων καλάμων, γλυκείας καὶ φύσει καὶ ἐψήσει, χλαυμομένου τοῦ ὕδατος τοῖς ἡλίoις τοῦ τ' ἐκπίπτοντος ἐκ Διῶς καὶ τοῦ ποταμοῦ. τρόπον δὴ τινα λέγειν βούλεται, διότι ἡ παρὰ τοῖς ἄλλοις λεγομένη πέψις καὶ καρπῶν καὶ χυμῶν παρ' ἐκείνους ἐψῆς ἐςτι, καὶ κατεργάζεται τοσούτον εἰς εὐστομίαν, ὡσον καὶ ἡ διὰ πυρός. διὸ καὶ τοὺς κλάδους φησὶν εὐκαμπτεῖς εἶναι τῶν δένδρων, ἐξ
GEOGRAPHY, 15. 1. 19–20

of more than a thousand cities, together with villages, that had been deserted because the Indus had abandoned its proper bed, and had turned aside into the other bed on the left that was much deeper, and flowed with precipitous descent like a cataract, so that the Indus no longer watered by its overflows the abandoned country on the right, since that country was now above the level, not only of the new stream, but also of its overflows.

20. The flooding of the rivers and the absence of land breezes is confirmed also by the statement of Onesicritus; for he says that the seashore is covered with shoal-water, and particularly at the mouths of the rivers, on account of the silt, the flood-tides, and the prevalence of the winds from the high seas. Megasthenes indicates the fertility of India by saying that it produces fruit and grain twice a year. And so says Eratosthenes, who speaks of the winter sowing and the summer sowing, and likewise of rain; for he says that he finds that no year is without rain in both seasons; so that, from this fact, the country has good seasons, never failing to produce crops; and that the trees there produce fruits in abundance, and the roots of plants, in particular those of large reeds, which are sweet both by nature and by heating, since the water from the sky as well as that of the rivers is warmed by the rays of the sun. In a sense, therefore, Eratosthenes means to say that what among other peoples is called "the ripening," whether of fruits or of juices, is called among those people a "heating," and that ripening is as effective in producing a good flavour as heating by fire. For this reason also, he adds, the branches of the trees from which the wheels of carriages are
δόν οἱ τροχοῦ ἕκ δὲ τῆς αὐτῆς αἰτίας ἐνίοις καὶ ἐπανθεών ἔρμον. ἥκ τοῦτον δὲ Νέαρχος φησὶ τὰς εὐητρίους υφαίνεσθαι σινδόνας, τοὺς δὲ Μακεδόνας ἀντὶ καναφάλλων τοὺς χρήσθαι καὶ τοῖς σάγμασι σάγης τοιαῦτα δὲ καὶ τὰ Σηρικά, ἥκ τινων φλοιῶν ξαινομένης βύσσου. εἴρηκε δὲ καὶ περὶ τῶν καλάμων, ὅτι ποιοῦσι μέλι, μελισσῶν μὴ οὖσων καὶ γὰρ δένδρον εἶναι καρποφόρον, ἥκ δὲ τοῦ καρποῦ συντίθεσθαι μέλι, τοὺς δὲ φαγόντας ἄμοι τοῦ καρποῦ μεθύειν.

21. Πολλὰ γὰρ δὴ καὶ δένδρα παράδοξα ἢ 'Ἰνδικὴ τρέφει, ὥν ἐστὶ καὶ τὸ κάτω νεύοντας ἔχου τοὺς κλάδους, τὰ δὲ φύλλα ἀστιδὸς οὐκ ἐλάττω. 'Ονησίκριτος δὲ καὶ περιεργότερον τὰ ἐν τῇ Μουσικανῷ διεξόων, ἃ φησὶ νυσιωτάτα εἶναι τῆς 'Ἰνδικῆς, διηγεῖται μεγάλα δένδρα τινά, ὧν τοὺς κλάδους αὐξηθέντας ἐπὶ πῆχει καὶ δώδεκα, ἐπείτα τὴν λοιπὴν αὐξησιν καταφερῆ λαμβάνειν, ὥς ἂν κατακαμπτομένους, ἐως ἃν ἄφωνται τῆς γῆς. ἐπείτα κατὰ γῆς διαδοθέντας ῥίζονθαι ὀμοίως ταῖς κατώρυξιν, εἰτ' ἀναδοθέντας στελεχοῦσθαι ἐξ' οὗ πάλιν ὀμοίως τῇ αὐξησι κατακαμφθέντας ἄλλην κατώρυγα ποιεῖν εἰτ' ἄλλην, καὶ οὔτως ἐφεξῆς, ὥστ' ἀφ' εὖν δένδρον σκιάδιον γίνεσθαι μακρὸν, πολυτύλῳ σκηνῇ.

1 καναφάλλων, CF, καναφάλλων other MSS.
2 σάγης, Tzschucke, for σάγην; so the later editors.
3 καὶ, EFx, or other MSS.
4 γὰρ x omits; so Tzschucke and Corais.
5 συντίθεσθαι . . . καρποῦ omitted by all MSS. except EF, but quoted by Eustathius (note on Dionysius 1125).
6 κατακαμφθέντας, Corais, for κατακαμφθέντα.
7 γίνεσθαι, Corais, for γενέσθαι; so the later editors.
made are flexible; and for the same reason even wool\(^1\) blossoms on some. From this wool, Nearchus says, finely threaded cloths are woven, and the Macedonians use them for pillows and as padding for their saddles. The Serica\(^2\) also are of this kind, Byssus\(^3\) being dried out of certain barks. He states also concerning the reeds,\(^4\) that they produce honey, although there are no bees, and in fact that there is a fruit-bearing tree from the fruit of which honey is compounded, but that those who eat the fruit raw become intoxicated.

21. In truth, India produces numerous strange trees, among which is the one whose branches bend downwards and whose leaves are no smaller than a shield. Onesicritus, who even in rather superfluous detail describes the country of Muscanus, which, he says, is the most southerly part of India, relates that it has some great trees whose branches have first grown to the height of twelve cubits, and then, after such growth, have grown downwards, as though bent down, till they have touched the earth; and that they then, thus distributed, have taken root underground like layers, and then, growing forth, have formed trunks; and that the branches of these trunks again, likewise bent down in their growth, have formed another layer, and then another, and so on successively, so that from only one tree there is formed a vast sunshade, like a tent with many layers.

\(^{1}\) i.e. cotton.

\(^{2}\) i.e. the threads of which the Seres make their garments (see Pausanias 6. 26. 4 and Frazer's note thereon).

\(^{3}\) By “Byssus” Strabo undoubtedly means silk, supposing it to be a kind of cotton (see Miss Richter's article on “Silk in Greece,” Am. Jour. Arch., Jan.–March, 1929, pp. 27–33).

\(^{4}\) i.e. sugar-cane.
όμοιον. λέγει δὲ καὶ μεγέθη δένδρων, ὡστε πέντε ἀνθρώποις δυσπερίληπτα εἶναι τὰ στελέχη. κατὰ δὲ τὸν Ἀκεσίνην καὶ τὴν συμβολὴν τὴν πρὸς Ῥάωτιν καὶ Ἀριστόβουλος εἶρηκε περὶ τῶν κατακαμπτομένους ἔχοντων τοὺς κλάδους καὶ περὶ τοῦ μεγέθους, ὡσθ’ ὅποιοι μεσημ-
βριζένικες σκιαζομένους ἱππέας πεντήκοντα. οὕτως δὲ τετρακοσίους. λέγει δὲ ὁ Ἀριστόβουλος καὶ ἄλλο δένδρον οὐ μέγα, λοποὺς 1 ἔχου, ὡς ὁ κύκλος, δεκαδεκτύλους τὸ μῆκος, πληρεῖς μέλιτος τοὺς δὲ φαγόντας οὐ πάσας σώζεται. ἀπαντάς δὲ ὑπερβέβληται περὶ τοῦ μεγέθους τῶν δένδρων οἱ φήσαντες ἐωράσθαι πέραν τοῦ Ῥάωτιδος δένδρου ποιοῦν σκιὰν ταῖς μεσημβρίαις πεντα-
stάδιον. καὶ τῶν ἐριφόρον τῶν δένδρων φησίν οὕτως τὸ ἄνθος ἔχειν πυρήνα. ἡξαίρεθέντος δὲ τούτου, ξαίνεσθαι τὸ λοιπὸν ὁμοίως ταῖς ἑρέαις.

22. Ἐν δὲ τῇ Μουσικανοῦ καὶ σῖτου αὐτοφυῆς λέγει πυροῦ παραπλήσιον καὶ ἀμπελοῦ, ὡστ’ οὐνοφορεῖν, τῶν ἄλλων ἄιονον λεγόντων τὴν Ἰνδικὴν ὡστε μήδ’ αὐλόν εἶναι κατὰ τὸν Ἀνά-
χαρσιν, μὴ ἄλλο 2 τῶν μουσικῶν ὀργάνων μηδὲν πλὴν κυμβάλων καὶ τυμπάνων καὶ κροτάλων, ἃ τοὺς θαυματοποιούς κεκτῆσαί. καὶ πολυφάρ-
μακον δὲ καὶ πολύρριζον τῶν τε σωτηρίων καὶ τῶν ἑναντίων, ὡσπερ καὶ πολυχρώματο καὶ οὕτως εἰρηκε, καὶ ἄλλοι γε. προστίθησι δ’ αὐτος, ὅτι καὶ νόμος εἰς τὸν ἀνεύροντα τι τῶν ὀλεθρίων, ἐὰν μὴ προσανεύρη καὶ τὸ ἄκος αὐτοῦ, θανα-

C 695 τούσθαι. ἀνεύροντα δὲ τιμῆς τυγχάνειν παρὰ τοῖς

1 οὗ μεγαλολεπισματαπους CDFh.
2 F reads τι after ἄλλο.
supporting columns. He says also of the size of the trees that their trunks could hardly be embraced by five men. Aristobulus also, where he mentions the Acēsines and its confluence with the Hyarotis, speaks of the trees that have their branches bent downwards and of such size that fifty horsemen—according to Onesicritus, four hundred—can pass the noon in shade under one tree. Aristobulus mentions also another tree, not large, with pods, like the bean, ten fingers in length, full of honey, and says that those who eat it cannot easily be saved from death. But the accounts of all writers of the size of the trees have been surpassed by those who say that there has been seen beyond the Hyarotis a tree which casts a shade at noon of five stadia. And as for the wool-bearing trees, Aristobulus says that the flower contains a seed, and that when this is removed the rest is combed like wool.

22. Aristobulus speaks also of a self-grown grain, similar to wheat, in the country of Musicanus, and of a vine from which wine is produced, although the other writers say that India has no wine; and therefore, according to Anacharsis, it also has no flutes, or any other musical instruments except cymbals and drums and castanets, which are possessed by the jugglers. Both he and other writers speak of this country as abounding in herbs and roots both curative and poisonous, and likewise in plants of many colours. And Aristobulus adds that they have a law whereby any person who discovers anything deadly is put to death unless he also discovers a cure for it, but if that person discovers a

1 The banyan tree (Ficus Bengalensis).
βασιλεύσων. ἐχειν δὲ καὶ κιννάμωμον καὶ νάρδον καὶ τὰ ἄλλα ἀρώματα τὴν νότιον γῆν τὴν Ἰνδικήν, ὡμοίως ὡσπερ τὴν Ἀραβίαν καὶ τὴν Αἰθιοπικάν, ἔχουσαν τι ἐμφερεῖς ἐκείναις κατὰ τοὺς ἥλιους· διαφέρειν δὲ τῷ πλεονασμῷ τῶν ὕδατων, ὡστ' ἐνικούν εἶναι τὸν ἄέρα καὶ τροφιμώτερον παρά τοῦτο καὶ γόνιμον μᾶλλον, ὡς δ' ἄυτος καὶ τὴν γῆν καὶ τὸ ὕδωρ. ἢ δὴ 1 καὶ μείζων τὰ τε χερσαία τῶν ξώων καὶ τὰ καθ' ὕδατος τὰ ἐν 'Ἰνδοῖς τῶν παρ' ἄλλως εὐρίσκεσθαι· καὶ τὸν Νείλον δ' εἶναι γόνιμον μᾶλλον ἐτέρων καὶ μεγαλοφυὴ 2 γεννάν καὶ τάλλα καὶ τὰ ἀμφίβια, τάς τε γυναίκας ἐσθ' ὅτε καὶ τετράδυμα τίκτευν τὰς Αἰγυπτίας. Ἀριστοτέλης δὲ τινα καὶ ἐπτάδυμα 3 ἑστορεῖ τετοκέναι, καὶ αὐτὸς πολύγονον καλῶν τὸν Νείλον καὶ τρόφιμον διὰ τὴν ἐκ τῶν ἥλιων μετρίαν ἐψησιν, αὐτὸ καταλειπόντων 4 τὸ τρόφιμον, τὸ δὲ περιττὸν ἐκθυμιώντων.

23. Ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς αὐτῆς αἰτίας καὶ τοῦτο συμβαίνειν εἰκός, ὡσπερ φησὶν οὗτος, ὅτι τῷ ἤμισυ πυρὶ ἐψει τὸ 5 τοῦ Νείλου ὕδωρ ἢ τὰ ἄλλα. ὡσφ' δὲ γέ φησι τὸ μὲν τοῦ Νείλου ὕδωρ δι' εὐθείας ἐπεισὶ πολλὴν χώραν καὶ στενὴν καὶ μεταβάλλει πολλὰ κλίματα καὶ πολλοὺς ἀέρας, τὰ δ' Ἰνδικὰ ἱεῦματα ἐς πεδία ἀναχεῖται μεῖζω καὶ πλατύτερα, ἐνδιατρίβοντα πολὺν χρόνον τοῖς αὐτοῖς κλίμασι,

1 ἢ δὴ, Corais, for ἢ δη; so the later editors.
2 μεγαλοφυὴ, Xylander, for μεγαλοφυεῖν; so the later editors.
3 For ἐπτάδυμα, Corais reads πεντάδυμα, following Gellius 10. 2, and Aristotle's Hist. An. 7. 4 and De Generat. 4. 4.
4 καταλειπόντων, Corais, for καταλιπόντων; so the later editors.
cure he receives a reward from the king. And he says that the southern land of India, like Arabia and Aethiopia, bears cinnamon, nard, and other aromatic products, being similar to those countries in the effect of the rays of sun, although it surpasses them in the copiousness of its waters; and that therefore its air is humid and proportionately more nourishing and more productive; and that this applies both to the land and to the water, and therefore, of course, both land and water animals in India are found to be larger than those in other countries; but that the Nile is more productive than other rivers, and produces huge creatures, among others the amphibious kind; and that the Aegyptian women sometimes actually bear four children. Aristotle reports that one woman actually bore seven; and he, too, calls the Nile highly productive and nourishing because of the moderate heat of the sun's rays, which, he says, leave the nourishing element and evaporate merely the superfluous.

23. It is probably from the same cause, as Aristotle says, that this too takes place—I mean that the water of the Nile boils with one-half the heat required by any other. But in proportion, he says, as the water of the Nile traverses in a straight course a long and narrow tract of country and passes across many "climata" and through many atmospheres, whereas the streams of India spread into greater and wider plains, lingering for a long time in the same "climata," in the same proportion those of India are more nourishing than those of the Nile; and on

---

1 i.e. "belts of latitude" (see Vol. I, p. 22, footnote 2).
τοσφὸς ἕκείνα τούτον τροφιμώτερα, διότι καὶ τὰ κήτη μεῖξο τε καὶ πλεῖως καὶ ἐκ τῶν νεφῶν δὲ ἐφθαν ἦδη χεῖσθαι τὸ ὕδωρ.

24. Τοῦτο δ’ οἱ μὲν περὶ Ἀριστóbουλον οὐκ ἄν συγχωροίεν οἱ φάσκοντες μὴ ύσεθαι τὰ πεδία. Ὀνησικρίτῳ δὲ δοκεῖ τόδε τὸ ὕδωρ αἵτιον εἶναι τῶν ἐν τοῖς ἡφοῖς ἰδιωμάτων, καὶ φέρει σημείον τὸ καὶ τὰς χρόας τῶν πινόντων βοσκημάτων ξεκικῶν ἀλλάττεσθαι πρὸς τὸ ἐπιχώριον. τούτῳ μὲν οὖν εὖ οὐκέτι δὲ καὶ τὸ τοῦ μέλανας εἶναι καὶ οὐλότριχας τοὺς Αἰθίοπας ἐν ψυλοῖς τοῖς ὕδασι τὴν αἵτιαν τιθέναι, μέμφεσθαι δὲ τὸν Θεοδέκτην εἰς αὐτὸν τὸν ἥλιον ἀναφέροντα τὸ αἵτιον, ὁς φησιν οὕτως:

οἷς ἀγχιτέρμων ἥλιος διφρηλατῶν
σκοτεινῶν ἀνθῶς ἔξεχρωσε λιγυῦος
εἰς σώματ’ ἀνδρῶν, καὶ συνέστρεψεν κόμας
μορφαῖς ἀνανεύητοισι συνετήξας πυρός.

ἐχοι δ’ ἄν τινα λόγον φησὶ γὰρ μήτε ἐγγυτέρω
τοῖς Αἰθίοπισιν εἶναι τὸν ἥλιον ἡ τοῖς ἄλλοις, ἀλλὰ
μᾶλλον κατὰ κάθετον εἶναι καὶ διὰ τοῦτο ἐπικαίεσθαι πλέων, ὡστ’ οὖκ εὖ λέγεσθαι ἀγχιτέρμων
αὐτοῖς τὸν ήλίον, ἵσον πάντων διέχοντα,
μήτε τὸ θάλπος εἶναι τοῦ τοιούτου πάθους αἵτιον’

C 696 μηδὲ γὰρ τοῖς ἐν γαστρὶ, ὧν οὐχ ἀπτεται ἦλιος.
βελτίους δὲ οἰ τοῦ ἡλίου αἰτιωμένου καὶ τὴν ἐξ
αὐτοῦ ἐπίκαυσιν, κατ’ ἐπίλειψιν σφοδρὰν τῆς
ἐπιπολῆς ἱκμάδος· καθ’ δ’ καὶ τοὺς Ἰνδοὺς μὴ

1 τὴν ἐξ αὐτοῦ, Casaubon, for τὴν ἐαυτοῦ, CDFhiw, τὴν αὐτοῦ

Emoxz.

38
this account their river animals are also larger and more numerous; and further, he says, the water is already heated when it pours from the clouds.

24. To this statement Aristobulus and his followers, who assert that the plains are not watered by rain, would not agree. But Onesicritus believes that rain-water is the cause of the distinctive differences in the animals; and he adduces as evidence that the colour of foreign cattle which drink it is changed to that of the native animals. Now in this he is correct; but no longer so when he lays the black complexion and woolly hair of the Aethiopians on merely the waters and censures Theodectes,¹ who refers the cause to the sun itself, saying as follows: "Nearing the borders of these people the Sun, driving his chariot, discoloured the bodies of men with a murky dark bloom, and curled their hair, fusing it by unincreasable forms of fire." But Onesicritus might have some argument on his side; for he says that, in the first place, the sun is no nearer to the Aethiopians than to any other people, but is more nearly in a perpendicular line with reference to them and on this account scorches more, and therefore it is incorrect to say, "Nearing the borders . . . the sun," since the sun is equidistant from all peoples; and that, secondly, the heat is not the cause of such a discoloration, for it does not apply to infants in the womb either, since the rays of the sun do not touch them. But better is the opinion of those who lay the cause to the sun and its scorching, which causes a very great deficiency of moisture on the surface of the skin. And I assert that it is in accordance

¹ "Theodectas" is probably the correct spelling (see I. G. II, 977).
οὐλοτριχείν φαμεν, μηδ’ οὕτω ἀπεφεισμένως ἐπικεκαύσθαι τήν χρόαν, ὅτι ύγροῦ κοινωνοῦσιν ἀέρος. ἐν δὲ τῇ γαστρὶ ἡδὴ κατὰ σπερματικὴν διάδοσιν τοιαύτα γίνεται, οὐαὶ τὰ γεννώντα· καὶ γὰρ πάθη συγγενικὰ οὕτω λέγεται καὶ ἄλλαι ὀμοιότητες. καὶ τὸ πάντων δ’ ἵσον ἀπέχειν τὸν ἠλιον πρὸς αἰσθήσιν λέγεται, οὐ πρὸς λόγον· καὶ πρὸς αἰσθήσιν, οὔχ ὡς ἔτυχεν, ἀλλ’ ὡς φαμεν σημεῖον λόγον ἔχειν τήν γῆν πρὸς τήν τοῦ ἠλίου σφαῖραν· ἐπεὶ πρὸς γε τήν τοιαύτην αἰσθήσιν, καθ’ ἣν θάλπους ἀντιλαμβανόμεθα, ἐγγύθεν μὲν μᾶλλον, πόρρωθεν δὲ ἢπτον, οὐκ ἵσον οὕτω δ’ ἀγχιστέρμων ὁ ἠλιος λέγεται τοῖς Αἰθιοψίων, οὔχ ὡς Ἐνθησικρίτω δέδοκται.  

25. Καὶ τούτῳ δὲ τῶν ὁμολογουμένων ἐστὶ καὶ τῶν σωξόντων τήν πρὸς τήν Αὐγυπτίων ὀμοιότητα καὶ τήν Αἰθιοπίαν, ὅτι, τῶν πεδίων ὅσα μὴ ἐπίκλυστα, ἀκαρπὰ ἐστὶ διὰ τήν ἀνυδρίαν. Νέαρχος δὲ τὸ ἔκτομεν τὸ πρότερον ἐπὶ τοῦ Νείλου, πόθεν ἡ πλῆρωσις αὐτοῦ, διδάσκειν ἔφη τοὺς Ἰνδικοὺς ποταμοὺς, ὅτι ἐκ τῶν θεριών ὄμβρων συμβαίνει· Ἀλέξανδρον δ’ ἐν μὲν τῷ Τδάστῃ κροκοδείλους ἱδόντα, ἐν δὲ τῷ Ἀκεσίνη κυάμους Αἰγυπτίους, εὔρηκεν τοῖς τοῦ Νείλου πηγαῖς, καὶ παρασκευάζεσθαι στόλον εἰς τήν Αὐγυπτίων, ὡς τῷ ποταμῷ τοῦτῳ μέχρι ἐκεῖσε

1 ἀπεφεισμένως, Meineke, for πεπισμένος Dh, πεπεισμένος xx, πεπεισμένος other MSS.
2 διάδοσιν, F, διάθεσιν other MSS.
with this fact that the Indians do not have woolly hair, and also that their skin is not so unmercifully scorched, I mean the fact that they share in an atmosphere that is humid. And already in the womb children, by seminal impartation, become like their parents in colour; for congenital affections and other similarities are also thus explained. Further, the statement\(^1\) that the sun is equidistant from all peoples is made in accordance with observation, not reason; and, in accordance with observations that are not casual, but in accordance with the observation, as I put it, that the earth is no larger than a point as compared with the sun's globe; since in accordance with the kind of observation whereby we feel differences in heat—more heat when the heat is near us and less when it is far away—the sun is not equidistant from all; and it is in this sense that the sun is spoken of\(^2\) as "nearing the borders" of the Aethiopians, not in the sense Onesicritus thinks.

25. The following, too, is one of the things agreed upon by all who maintain the resemblance of India to Aegypt and Aethiopia: that all plains which are not inundated are unproductive for want of water. Nearchus says that the question formerly raised in reference to the Nile as to the source of its floodings is answered by the Indian rivers, because it is the result of the summer rains; but that when Alexander saw crocodiles in the Hydaspes and Aegyptian beans in the Acesines, he thought he had found the sources of the Nile and thought of preparing a fleet for an expedition to Aegypt, thinking that he would sail as

\[^1\text{i.e. of Onesicritus.}\]
\[^2\text{i.e. by Theodectes.}\]
\[^3\text{δεδεκταί, CDhigvxx.}\]
πλευσόμενον, μικρὸν δ' ὑστερον γνῶναι διότι οὐ δύναται ὁ ἡλπίσε.

μέσσῳ 1 γὰρ μεγάλοι ποταμοί καὶ δεινὰ ρέθρα,
'Ωκεανὸς μὲν πρῶτον,

ἐὼς ὅσοι ἐκδίδοσιν οἱ Ἰνδικοὶ πάντες ποταμοὶ· ἔπειτα ἡ Ἀριανὴ καὶ ὁ Περσικὸς κόλπος καὶ ὁ Ἀράβιος καὶ αὐτὴ ἡ Ἀραβία καὶ ἡ Τρωγλοδύτική.

Τὰ μὲν οὖν περὶ τῶν ἀνέμων καὶ τῶν ὀμβρῶν τοιαύτα λέγεται καὶ τῆς πληρώσεως τῶν ποταμῶν καὶ τῆς ἑπικλύσεως τῶν πεδίων.

26. Δεί δὲ καὶ τὰ καθ' ἕκαστα περὶ τῶν ποταμῶν εἰπεῖν, ὡς πρὸς τὴν γεωγραφίαν χρὴσιμα καὶ ὅσων ἱστορίαν παρεὶλήφαμεν. ἄλλως τε γὰρ οἱ ποταμοὶ, φυσικοὶ τίνες ὅροι καὶ μεγεθῶν καὶ σχημάτων τῆς χώρας οὕτως, ἑπιτηδειότητα πολλὴν παρέχουσι πρὸς ὅλην τὴν υφήν ύπόθεσιν.

C 697 ὁ δὲ Νεῖλος καὶ οἱ κατὰ τὴν Ἰνδικὴν πλεονέκτημά τι ἔχουσι παρὰ τοὺς ἄλλους διὰ τὸ τὴν χώραν ἀοίκητον εἰναι χωρὶς αὐτῶν, πλωτὴν ἅμα καὶ γεωργῆσιμον ὀσκαὶ καὶ μὴ ἔφθειεσθαι δυναμένην ἄλλως, μὴ ὀικεῖσθαι τὸ παράπαν. τοὺς μὲν οὖν εἰς τὸν Ἰνδον καταφερομένους ἱστοροῦμεν τοὺς ἀξίους μνήμης καὶ τὰς χώρας, δι' ὅν ἡ φορά, τῶν δ' ἄλλων ἐστὶν ἀγνοία πλείων ἡ γνώσις.

'Αλέξανδρος γὰρ ὁ μάλιστα ταῦτ' ἀνακαλύψας κατ' ἀρχὰς μὲν, ἡνίκα οἱ Δαρείοι δολοφονήσαντες οἱ μηταρχεῖς ἐπὶ τὴν τῆς Βακτριανῆς ἀπόστασιν, ἐγὼ προουργιαίτατον ὅν διώκειν καὶ καταλῦειν

42
far as there by this river, but he learned a little later that he could not accomplish what he had hoped; "for between are great rivers and dreadful streams, Oceanus first," 1 into which all the Indian rivers empty; and then intervene Ariana, and the Persian and the Arabian Gulfs and Arabia itself and the Trogloodyte country.

Such, then, are the accounts we have of the winds and the rains, and of the flooding of the rivers, and of the inundation of the plains.

26. But I must tell also the several details concerning the rivers, so far as they are useful for the purposes of geography and so far as I have learned their history. For the rivers in particular, being a kind of natural boundary for both the size and the shape of countries, are very convenient for the purposes of the whole of our present subject; but the Nile and the Indian rivers offer a certain advantage as compared with the rest because of the fact that apart from them the countries are uninhabitable, being at the same time navigable and tillable, and that they can neither be travelled over otherwise nor inhabited at all. Now as for the rivers worthy of mention that flow down into the Indus, I shall tell their history, as also that of the countries traversed by them; but as for the rest there is more ignorance than knowledge. For Alexander, who more than any other uncovered these regions, at the outset, when those who had treacherously slain Dareius set out to cause the revolt of Bactriana, resolved that it would be most desirable to pursue and overthrow them.

1 Odyssey 11. 157.

1 μίσσα, Corais, for μίσου μοξι, μίσα other MSS.
εκείνους. ἦκε μὲν οὖν τῆς Ἰνδικῆς πλησίον δι᾽ Ἀριανῶν, ἀφείς δ᾽ αὐτὴν ἐν δεξιᾷ ὑπερέβη τὸν Παροπάμιον εἰς τὰ προσάρκτια μέρη καὶ τὴν Βακτριανῆν καταστρεφάμενος δὲ τάκει πάντα, ὡσα ἦν υπὸ Πέρσαις, καὶ ἐτὶ πλεῖω, τὸτ᾽ ἦδη καὶ τῆς Ἰνδικῆς ὁρέχθη, λεγόντων μὲν περὶ αὐτῆς πολλῶν, οὐ σαφῶς δέ. ἀνέστρεψε δ᾽ οὖν ὑπερθείς τὰ αὐτὰ ὄρη κατ᾽ ἄλλας ὀδοὺς ἐπιτομωτέρας, ἐν ἀριστερὰ ἔχων τὴν Ἰνδικήν, εἰτ᾽ ἐπέστρεψεν εὐθὺς ἐτ᾽ αὐτὴν καὶ τοὺς ὅρους τοὺς ἐσπερίους αὐτῆς καὶ 1 τὸν Κώφην ποταμὸν καὶ τὸν Χώαστην, δι᾽ εἰς τὸν Κώφην ἐμβάλλει ποταμὸν κατὰ Πλημύριον 2 πόλιν, ρυεὶς παρὰ Γόρυδα, 3 ἀλλὰν πόλιν, καὶ διεξίων τὴν τε Βαυδοβηνὴν καὶ τὴν Γανδαρίν. ἐπυθάνετο δ᾽ οἰκήσιον εἶναι μάλιστα καὶ εὐκαρπὸν τὴν ὅρειν καὶ προσάρκτιν τὴν δὲ νότιον τῆς μὲν ἀνυδρον, τὴν δὲ ποταμόκλυστον καὶ τελέως ἐκπυρον, θηρίοις τε μάλλον ἦ ἀνθρώποις σύμμετρον. ὃρμησεν οὖν τὴν ἐπανουμενὴν κατακτᾶσθαι πρότερον, ἀμα καὶ τοὺς ποταμοὺς εὐπερατοτέρους νομίσας τῶν πηγῶν πλησίον, οὐς ἀναγκαῖον ἦν διαβάινειν, ἐπικαρσίους ὅντας καὶ τέμυσαν ὑπ᾽ ἐπηγεί γῆν. ἀμα δὲ καὶ ἦκουσεν εἰς ἐν πλείους συνίστασας ῥεῖν, καὶ τοῦτ᾽ ἄει καὶ μάλλον συμβαῖνον, ὅσον πλεῖον εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν πρόσθεν 4 ὅστ᾽ εἰναι δυσπερατοτέραν, καὶ ταῦτα ἐν πλοίων ἀπορία. δεδώς οὖν τοῦτο διέβη τὸν Κώφην, καὶ κατεστρέφετο τὴν ὅρειν, ὅση ἐτέτραπτο πρὸς ἐω.

1 κατά, after καὶ, Corais ejects; so the later editors.
2 Πλημύριον s and on margin of CF, Πληχήριον μεζξ.
3 Γόρυδα ἢ, Γόρυδῆ other MSS.; so Corais and later editors
4 πρόσθεν, Corais, for προτὴ Ε, προιδεῖν other MSS.
GEOGRAPHY, 15. 1. 26

He therefore approached India through Ariana, and, leaving India on the right, crossed over Mt. Paropamisus to the northerly parts and Bactriana; and, having subdued everything there that was subject to the Persians and still more, he then forthwith reached out for India too, since many men had been describing it to him, though not clearly. Accordingly he returned, passing over the same mountains by other and shorter roads, keeping India on the left, and then turned immediately towards India and its western boundaries and the Cophes River and the Choaspes, which latter empties into the Cophes River near a city Plenyrium, after flowing past Gorys, another city, and flowing forth through both Bandobenë and Gandaritis. He learned by inquiry that the mountainous and northerly part was the most habitable and fruitful, but that the southerly part was partly without water and partly washed by rivers and utterly hot, more suitable for wild beasts than for human beings. Accordingly, he set out to acquire first the part that was commended to him, at the same time considering that the rivers which it was necessary to cross, since they flow transversely and cut through the country which he meant to traverse, could more easily be crossed near their sources. At the same time he also heard that several rivers flowed together into one stream, and that this was always still more the case the farther forward they advanced, so that the country was more difficult to cross, especially in the event of lack of boats. Afraid of this, therefore, he crossed the Cophes and began to subdue all the mountainous country that faced towards the east.

1 Historians and geographers who accompanied him.
27. Ἡν δὲ μετὰ τὸν Κώφην ὁ Ἰνδός, εἰδ' ὁ Ὁδάστης, εἰδ' ὁ Ἀκεσίνης καὶ ὁ Ἱαρωτις, ύστατος δ' ὁ Ἐπανις. περαιτέρω γὰρ προελθεῖν ἐκωλύθη, τούτῳ μὲν μαντείοις τισὶ προσέχων, τούτῳ δ' ὑπὸ τῆς στρατιᾶς ἀπηγορευκυνίας ἤδη πρὸς τοὺς πόνους ἀναγκασθεὶς μάλιστα δ' ἐκ τῶν ὑδάτων ἐκαμνυν, συνεχῶς ὑμἐνεὶ. ταῦτ' οὖν ἐγένετο γνώριμα ἠμῖν τῶν ἐωθινῶν τῆς Ἰνδικῆς μερῶν, ὅσα ἐντὸς τοῦ Ἐπανίους, καὶ εἰ τινα προσιστόρησαν οἱ μετ' ἐκεῖνον περαιτέρῳ τῷ Ἐπανίους προελθόντες μέχρι τοῦ Γάγγου καὶ Παλιβόθρων. μετὰ μὲν οὖν τὸν Κώφην ὁ Ἰνδός ῥεῖ· τὰ δὲ μεταξὺ τούτων τῶν δυεῖν ποταμῶν ἔχουσιν Ἀστακηνοὶ τε καὶ Μασιανοὶ καὶ Νυσαιοὶ καὶ Ἐπανιοί· εἰδ' ἡ Ἀσσακανοῦ, ὅπου Μασόγα πόλις, τὸ βασίλειον τῆς χώρας. ἦδη δὲ πρὸς τῷ Ἰνδῷ πάλιν ἀλλή πόλις Πενκολαῖτις, πρὸς ᾗ ζεύγμα γενηθεὶς ἐπεραίωσε τὴν στρατιὰν.

28. Μεταξὺ δὲ τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ καὶ τοῦ Ὁδάστουν Τάξιλα ἔστι, πόλις μεγάλη καὶ εὐνομωτάτη, καὶ ἡ περικειμένη χώρα συχνὴ καὶ σφόδρα εὐδαιμων, ἦδη συνυπτυσσα καὶ τοῖς πεδίοις. ἐδέξαντο τε δὴ φιλανθρώπῳς τῶν Ἀλέξανδρον οἱ ἀνθρωποὶ καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς αὐτῶν Τάξιλης· ἔτυχον τε πλεῖόνων ἡ αὐτοῦ παρέχον, ὡστὲ φθονεῖν τοὺς Μακεδόνας καὶ λέγειν ὡς οὔκ ἐίχειν, ὡς ἐοικεν, Ἀλέξανδρος, οὔτε εὐεργετήσει πρὶν ἡ διέβη τὸν Ἰνδόν. φασὶ δ' εἶναι τινες τὴν χώραν ταύτην Αἰγύπτου μείζονα.

1 Basianov Dhi.
2 Ἐπανίου, Tzschucke emends to Ἐπανίου, Corais to Ἐπανίου.
3 Μασόγα, Tzschucke and Corais emend to Μάσσαγα; the MSS. of Arrian (Indica 8) read Μάσσαγα.

C 698

46
27. After the Cophes he went to the Indus, then to the Hydaspes, then to the Acesines and the Hyarotis, and last to the Hypanis; for he was prevented from advancing farther, partly through observance of certain oracles and partly because he was forced by his army, which had already been worn out by its labours, though they suffered most of all from the waters, being continually drenched with rain. Of the eastern parts of India, then, there have become known to us all those parts which lie this side the Hypanis, and also any parts beyond the Hypanis of which an account has been added by those who, after Alexander, advanced beyond the Hypanis, as far as the Ganges and Palibothra. Now after the Cophes follows the Indus; and the region between these rivers is occupied by Astaceni, Masiani, Nysaei, and Hypasii; and then one comes to the country of Assacanus, where is a city Mesoga, the royal seat of the country; and now near the Indus again, one comes to another city, Peucolaïtis, near which a bridge that had already been built afforded a passage for the army.

28. Between the Indus and the Hydaspes lies Taxila, a city which is large and has most excellent laws; and the country that lies round it is spacious and very fertile, immediately bordering also on the plains. Both the inhabitants and their king, Taxiles, received Alexander in a kindly way; and they obtained from Alexander more gifts than they themselves presented, so that the Macedonians were envious and said that Alexander did not have anyone, as it seemed, on whom to bestow his benefactions until he crossed the Indus. Some say that this country is larger than Aegypt. Above this country
υπὲρ δὲ ταύτης εν τοῖς ὀρεσιν ἡ τοῦ Ἀβισσάρου χώρα, παρ’ ἕν δύο δράκοντας ἀπτήγγελλον οἱ παρ’ αὐτοῦ πρέσβεις τρέφεσθαι, τὸν μὲν ὅγδοηκοντα πηχῶν, τὸν δὲ τεττάρηκονα πρὸς τοῖς ἐκατόν, ὡς εἰρήκεν Ὁνησίκριτος. ὃν οὐκ Ἀλέξανδρον μᾶλλον ἢ τῶν παραδόξων ἀρχικυβερνήτην προσεῖτο τις ἄν. πάντες μὲν γὰρ οἱ περὶ Ἀλέξανδρον τὸ θαυμαστὸν ἀντὶ ταληθοῦσα ἀπεδέχοντο μᾶλλον, ὑπερβάλλεσθαι δὲ δοκεῖ τοὺς τοσοῦτος ἐκείνος τῇ τερατολογίᾳ. λέγει τ' οὖν τίνα καὶ πιθανὰ καὶ μνήμης ἁξία, ὡστε καὶ ἀπιστοῦντα μὴ παρελθεῖν αὐτά. περὶ δ’ οὖν τῶν δρακόντων καὶ ἄλλοι λέγουσιν, ὅτι ἐν τοῖς Ἰμωδοῖς ὀρεσι θηρεύουσι καὶ τρέφουσιν ἐν σπηλαίοις.

29. Μεταξὺ δὲ τοῦ ὶδάσπου καὶ τοῦ Ἀκεσίνου ἢ τε τοῦ Πόρου ἔστιν, πολλὴ καὶ ἀγαθὴ, σχεδὸν τι καὶ τριακοσίων πόλεων, καὶ ἡ πρὸς τοῖς Ἰμωδοῖς ὀρεσιν ὡλη, εξ ἢς Ἀλέξανδρος κατήγαγε τῷ ὶδάσπῃ κόψας ἑλάτην την πολλὴν καὶ πεύκην καὶ κέδρον καὶ ἄλλα παντοῖα στελέχη ναυπηγήσιμα, εξ ὄν στόλου κατεσκευάσατο ἐπὶ τῷ ὶδάσπῃ πρὸς ταῖς ἐκτισμέναις ὑπ’ αὐτοῦ πόλεσιν ἐφ’ ἐκάτερα τοῦ ποταμοῦ ὅπου τὸν Πώρον ἐνίκα διαβάσῃ ὅν τὴν μὲν Βουκεφάλαν ὄνομασεν ἀπὸ τοῦ πεσόντος ὑπ’ ποταμῶν κατὰ τὴν μάχην τὴν πρὸς τὸν Πώρον (ἐκαλεῖτο δὲ Βουκεφάλας ἀπὸ τοῦ πλάτους τοῦ μετώπου πολεμιστὴς δ’ ἦν ἀγαθός, καὶ ἄει τούτω ἐκέχοντο κατὰ τοὺς ἀγῶνας), τὴν δὲ Νίκαιαν ἀπὸ τῆς νίκης ἐκάλεσεν. ἐν δὲ τῇ λεχθείσῃ ὡλῇ καὶ τὸ τῶν κερκοπιθήκων διηγοῦν-

1 λέγει, Corais, for λέγειν; so the later editors.

C 699
GEOGRAPHY, 15. 1. 28–29

in the mountains lies the country of Abisarus, who, according to the ambassadors that came from him, kept two serpents, one eighty cubits in length and another one hundred and forty, according to Onesi-critus, who cannot so properly be called arch-pilot of Alexander as of things that are incredible; for though all the followers of Alexander preferred to accept the marvellous rather than the true, Onesi-critus seems to surpass all those followers of his in the telling of prodigies. However, he tells some things that are both plausible and worthy of mention, and therefore they are not passed by in silence even by one who disbelieves them. At any rate, others too speak of the serpents, saying that they are caught in the Emodi mountains and kept in caves.

29. Between the Hydaspes and the Acesines is, first, the country of Porus, extensive and fertile, containing about three hundred cities; and, secondly, the forest near the Emodi mountains, from which Alexander cut, and brought down on the Hydaspes, a large quantity of fir, pine, cedar, and other logs of all kinds fit for shipbuilding, from which he built a fleet on the Hydaspes near the cities founded by him on either side of the river where he crossed and conquered Porus. Of these cities, he named one Bucephalia, after Bucephalas, the horse which fell during the battle with Porus (the horse was called Bucephalas \(^1\) from the width of his forehead; he was an excellent war-horse and was always used by Alexander in his fights); and he called the other Nicaea, after his victory. In the forest above-mentioned both the number and the size of the long

\(^1\) i.e. Oxhead.


30. Καὶ τὴν Κάθαιαν 3 δέ τινες καὶ 4 τὴν Σωπείθους, τῶν νομαρχῶν τινος, κατὰ τὴν μεσοποταμίας τιθέασιν ἄλλοι δὲ καὶ τοῦ Ἀκεσίνου πέραν καὶ τοῦ 'Ταρώτιδος, ὄμορον τῇ Πώρου τοῦ ἐτέρου, δὲ ἦν ἄνεψιος τοῦ ὕπ' Αλεξάνδρου ἀλόντος· καλύσα ἄλλοι τοῦ Γανδαρίδα τὴν ὑπὸ

1 Instead of ἀποληφθῆ, CDhizw read ἀπολειφθῇ (corrected to ἀπολήφθῃ in Dh); ἀλειφθῇ mo, Casaubon and Tzschucke; έπαλειφθῇ, Corais.

2 οὐν omitted by all MSS. except Dhí.

3 Κάθαιαν, Tzschucke, for Καθαίαν; so the later editors.

4 καὶ, Corais inserts (citing Diodorus 17. 91).
tailed apes\(^1\) are alike described as so extraordinary that once the Macedonians, seeing many of these standing as in front-line array on some bare hills (for this animal is very human-like in mentality, no less so than the elephant), got the impression that they were an army of men; and they actually set out to attack them as human enemies, but on learning the truth from Taxiles, who was then with the king, desisted. The capture of the animal is effected in two ways. It is an imitative animal and takes to flight up in the trees. Now the hunters, when they see an ape seated on a tree, place in sight a bowl containing water and rub their own eyes with it; and then they put down a bowl of bird-lime instead of the water, go away, and lie in wait at a distance; and when the animal leaps down and besmears itself with the bird-lime, and when, upon winking, its eyelids are shut together, the hunters approach and take it alive. Now this is one way, but there is another. They put on baggy breeches like trousers and then go away, leaving behind them others that are shaggy and smeared inside with bird-lime; and when the animals put these on, they are easily captured.

30. Some put both Cathaea and the country of Sopeithes, one of the provincial chiefs, between these two rivers,\(^2\) but others on the far side of the Acesines and the Hyarotis, as bordering on the country of the second Porus, who was a cousin\(^3\) of the Porus captured by Alexander. The country that was subject

---

\(^1\) The species *cercopithecus* (for a fuller description see 15. 1. 37).

\(^2\) The Hydaspes and Acesines.

\(^3\) Or “nephew.”
τοῦτο φώραν. ἐν δὲ τῇ Καθαίᾳ ἱστορεῖται τὸ περὶ τοῦ κάλλους, ὡς τιμᾶται διαφερόντως, ὡς ἵππων καὶ κυνῶν βασιλέα τε γὰρ τὸν κάλλιστον αἱρεῖσθαι φησιν Ὄνησίκριτος, γενόμενον τε παιδίον μετὰ δίμηνον κρίνεσθαι δημοσία, πότερον ἔχοι τὴν ἐνυμομον μορφὴν καὶ τοῦ ἄξιαιν, ἢ οὖ̄ κριθέντα δ' ὑπὸ τοῦ ἀπο- δειχθέντος ἁρχοντος ζήν ἢ θανατοῦσθαι βάπτεσθαι τε πολλοῖς εὐναθεστάτοις χρώμασι τοὺς πώγωνας αὐτοῦ τοῦτον χάριν, καλλωπιζομένους τούτῳ δὲ καὶ ἄλλους 2 ποιεῖν ἐπιμελῶς συχνῶς τῶν Ἰνδῶν (καὶ γὰρ δὴ φέρειν τὴν χώραν χρόας θαυμαστάς) καὶ θρίῷ καὶ ἔσθησίν τοὺς δ' ἀνθρώ- πους τὰ ἄλλα μὲν εὐτελεῖς εἶναι, φιλοκόσμους δὲ, ἰδιὸν δὲ τῶν Καθαίων 3 καὶ τοῦτο ἱστορεῖται, τὸ αἱρεῖσθαι νυμφίον καὶ νυμφήν ἀλλήλους καὶ τὸ συγκατακαίεσθαι τεθνεώσι τοῖς ἀνδράσι τὰς γυναῖκας κατὰ τοιαύτῃν αἰτίαν, ὅτι ἐρώσαι ποτὲ τῶν νέων ἀφισταντο 4 τῶν ἄνδρῶν ἡ φαρμακεύσεων αὐτοῦς· νόμον οὖν θέσθαι τούτου, ὡς παυσομένης τῆς φαρμακείας. οὐ πιθανῶς μὲν οὖν ὁ νόμος, οὐδ' ἡ αἰτία λέγεται. φασὶ δ' ἐν τῇ Σωπείθους χώρᾳ ὅρυκτῶν ἄλων ὄρος εἶναι, ἀρκεῖν δυνάμενον ὅλη τῇ Ἰνδικῇ καὶ χρυσεῖα δὲ καὶ ἀργυρεῖα οὐ πολὺ ἀπωθεῖν ἐν ἄλλοις ὀρεσίν ἱστορεῖται καλά, ὡς ἐδήλωσε Γόργος ὁ μεταλλευτής. οἱ δ' Ἰνδοὶ μεταλλεῖας καὶ χονείας ἀπέρως ἔχοντες, οὐδ' ὧν

1 Καθαία, Τζσέχουκε καὶ λατερ ανόητοι, τοῦτον Καθαίᾳ.
2 ἄλλους, ἡσ, ἄλλοι οἱ άλλοι ΜΣ.
3 Καθαίαν, Τζσέχουκε καὶ λατερ ανόητοι, τοῦτον Καθαίᾳ.
4 ἀφισταντο, Κοράις καὶ λατερ ανόητοι, τοῦτον.
GEOGRAPHY, 15. 1. 30

to him is called Gandaris. As for Cathaea, a most novel regard for beauty there is reported; I mean that it is prized in an exceptional manner, as, for example, for the beauty of its horses and dogs; and, in fact, Onesicritus says that they choose the handsomest person as king, and that a child is judged in public after it is two months old as to whether it has the beauty of form required by law and is worthy to live or not; and that when it is judged by the appointed magistrate it is allowed to live or is put to death; and that the men dye their beards with many most florid colours for the sole reason that they wish to beautify themselves; and that this practice is carefully followed by numerous other Indian peoples also (for the country produces marvellous colours, he says), who dye both their hair and their garments; and that the people, though shabby in every other way, are fond of adornment. The following too is reported as a custom peculiar to the Cathaeans: the groom and bride choose one another themselves, and wives are burned up with their deceased husbands for a reason of this kind— that they sometimes fell in love with young men and deserted their husbands or poisoned them; and therefore the Cathaeans established this as a law, thinking that they would put a stop to the poisoning. However, the law is not stated in a plausible manner, nor the cause of it either. It is said that in the country of Sopeithes there is a mountain of mineral salt sufficient for the whole of India. And gold and silver mines are reported in other mountains not far away, excellent mines, as has been plainly shown by Gorgus the mining expert. But since the Indians are inexperienced in mining and
STRABO

eυπορούσιν ἵσασιν, ἀλλ' ἀπλοῦστερον μεταχειριζόμενοι τὸ πράγμα.

31. Ἐν δὲ τῇ Σωπείθους καὶ τὰς τῶν κυνῶν ἀρετὰς διηγούνται θαυμαστάς: λαβεὶν γοῦν τὸν Ἀλέξανδρον παρὰ τοῦ Σωπείθους κύνας πεντήκοντα καὶ ἐκατὸν· διαπείρας δὲ χάριν λέοντες προσαφέντας 1 δύο, κρατουμένων 2 αὐτῶν, δύο ἄλλους ἐπαφείναι· τότε δ' ἦδη καθεστώτων εἰς ἀντίπαλα, τὸν μὲν Σωπείθη κελεύσαι τῶν κυνῶν ἐνα ἀποστάν τοῦ σκέλους τινὰ λαβόμενον, εὰν δὲ μὴ ὑπάκουῃ, ἀποτεμεῖν· τὸν Ἀλέξανδρον δὲ κατ' ἄρχας μὲν οὐ συγχωρεῖν ἀποτεμεῖν, φειδόμενον τοῦ κυνός, εἰπόντος δ', ὅτι Τέτταρας ἀντιδώσω σοι, συγχωρήσαι, καὶ τὸν κύνα περιδείπν ἀποτμήθεντα τὸ σκέλος βραδεία τομῆ, πρὶν ἀνεῖναι τὸ δήγμα.

32. Ἡ μὲν οὖν μέχρι τοῦ Ὠδιάσπον ὅδος τὸ πλέον ἦν ἐπὶ μεσημβρίαν, ἢ δ' ἐνθέντε πρὸς ἐω μᾶλλον μέχρι τοῦ Ὠπάνιος, ἀπασά δὲ τῆς ὑπωρείας μᾶλλον ἢ τῶν πεδίων ἐχομένην. ὁ δ' οὖν Ἀλέξανδρος ἀπὸ τοῦ Ὠπάνιος ἀναστρέψας ἐπὶ τὸν Ὠδιάσπην καὶ τὸν ναυσταθμὸν, ἱρτικρότει 3 τὸν στόλον, εἰτ' ἐπλεῖ τῷ Ὠδιάσπη, πάντες δ' οἱ λεχθέντες ποταμοῖ συμβάλλουσιν εἰς ἐνα τῶν Ἰνδῶν ὑστατος δ' ὦ "Ὡπανις· πεντεκαίδεκα δὲ τοὺς σύμπαντας συγγείν φασι, τοὺς γε ἀξιολόγους· πληρωθεῖς δ' ἐκ πάντων ὦστε καὶ ἐφ' ἐκατὸν σταδίους, ὡς οἱ μὴ μετριάζοντες φασίν, εὐρύνεσθαι κατά τινάς τόπους,

1 προσαφέντος CFεξ, προσαφέντα moz.
2 δ', before αὐτῶν, Corais and later editors omit.
3 Instead of ἱρτικρότει, F reads ἱρτικροτι (sic), C ἱρτικότι
smelting, they also do not know what their resources are, and handle the business in a rather simple manner.

31. Writers narrate also the excellent qualities of the dogs in the country of Sopeithes. They say, at any rate, that Alexander received one hundred and fifty dogs from Sopeithes; and that, to prove them, two were let loose to attack a lion, and, when they were being overpowered, two others were let loose upon him, and that then, the match having now become equal, Sopeithes bade someone to take one of the dogs by the leg and pull him away, and if the dog did not yield to cut off his leg; and that Alexander would not consent to cutting off the dog's leg at first, wishing to spare the dog, but consented when Sopeithes said that he would give him four instead; and that the dog suffered the cutting off of his leg by slow amputation before he let go his grip.

32. Now the march to the Hydaspes was for the most part towards the south, but from there to the Hypanis it was more towards the east, and as a whole it kept to the foothills more than to the plains. At all events, Alexander, when he returned from the Hypanis to the Hydaspes and the naval station, proceeded to make ready his fleet and then to set sail on the Hydaspes. All the above-mentioned rivers, last of all the Hypanis, unite in one river, the Indus; and it is said that the Indus is joined by fifteen noteworthy rivers all told, and that after being filled so full by all that it is widened in some places, according to writers who are immoderate, even to the extent of one hundred stadia, but, according to the more

(corrected to συνεκρότει), ἄριστηρ, ἡ ἄριστη, ἡ ἄριστη, and other MSS. and editors before Kramer συνεκρότει.
STRABO

ώς δ’ οἱ μετριώτεροι, πεντήκοντα τὸ πλεῖστον, ἐλάχιστον δὲ ἐπτά (καὶ πολλὰ ἔθυμη καὶ πόλεις εἰσὶ ¹ πέριξ ²), ἐπείτα δυσὶ στόμασιν εἰς τὴν νοτίαν ἐκδίδοσι θάλατται καὶ τὴν Παταληνήν προσαγορευμένην ποιεῖ νῆσον. ταύτην δ’ ἐσχε τὴν διάνοιαν Ἀλέξανδρος, ἀφεὶς τὰ πρὸς ἐω μέρη πρῶτον μὲν διὰ τὸ κωλυθῆναι διαβήναι τὸν Ἰππανιν, ἐπείτα καὶ ψευδῆ καταμαθῶν τῇ πείρᾳ τῶν προκατέχοντα λόγον, ὡς ἐκτυρα εἶχη καὶ θηρίους μᾶλλον οἰκήσιμα τὰ ἐν τοῖς πεδίοις ἢ ἀνθρωπεῖω γένει· διόπερ ὄρμησεν ἐπὶ ταῦτα, ἀφεῖς ἐκείνα, ὡστε καὶ εὐνόωσθη ταῦτα ἀντ’ ἐκείνων ἐπὶ πλέον.

33. Ἡ μὲν οὖν μεταξὺ τοῦ Ἰππανιοῦ καὶ τοῦ Σ 701 Ἰδασποῦ λέγεται ἐννέα ἔχειν ἔθυμη, πόλεις δὲ εἰς πεντακισχίλιας όυκ ἐλάττους Κῶ τῆς Μεροπίδου· δοκεῖ δὲ πρός ύπερβολὴν εἰρήσθαι τὸ πλῆθος. ἡ δὲ μεταξὺ τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ καὶ τοῦ Ἰδασποῦ, εἰρηται σχεδὸν τι, ὑφ’ ὅν οἰκεῖται τῶν ἄξιων μνήμης· κατ’ ὅ ἐξῆς εἰσίν οἱ τε Σίβαι λεγόμενοι, περὶ ὅν καὶ πρότερον ἐμνήσθημεν, καὶ Μαλλοῖ καὶ Σιδράκαι, ³ μεγάλα ἔθυμη. καὶ Μαλλοὶ μὲν, παρ’ οίς ἀποθανεῖν ἐκινδύνευσεν Ἀλέξανδρος, τρωθεῖς ἐν ἁλώσει πολίχνης τινός, Σιδράκαι ⁴ δέ, οὐς τοῦ Διονύσου συγγενεῖς ἐξαμεν μεμυθεύσθαι. πρὸς αὐτῇ δ’ ἥδη τῇ Παταληνῇ τῆς τε τοῦ Μουσικανοῦ λέγουσι καὶ τῆν Σάβου, οὐ

¹ εἰσὶ DF, εἶναι other MSS.
² καὶ πολλὰ . . . πέριξ, Meineke ejects, following conj. of Kramer.
³ Σιδράκαι Dhi, 'Οξιδράκαι E.
⁴ Σιδράκαι F (corrected in margin to 'Οξιδράκαι), 'Οξιδράκαι other MSS.
moderate, fifty at the most and seven at the least (and there are many tribes and cities all about it),¹ it then empties into the southern sea by two mouths and forms the island called Patalenê. Alexander conceived this purpose ² after dismissing from his mind the parts towards the east; first, because he had been prevented from crossing the Hypanis, and, secondly, because he had learned by experience the falsity of the report which had preoccupied his mind, that the parts in the plains were burning hot and more habitable for wild beasts than for a human race; ³ and therefore he set out for these parts, dismissing those others, so that the former became better known than those others.

33. Now the country between the Hypanis and the Hydaspes is said to contain nine tribes, and also cities to the number of five thousand—cities no smaller than Cos Meropis,⁴ though the number stated seems to be excessive. And as for the country between the Indus and the Hydaspes, I have stated approximately the peoples worthy of mention by which it is inhabited; ⁵ and below them, next in order, are the people called Sibae, whom I have mentioned before,⁶ and the Malli and the Sydracae, large tribes. It was in the country of the Malli that Alexander was in peril of death, being wounded in the capture of some small city; and as for the Sydracae, I have already spoken of them as mythically akin to Dionysus.⁷ Near Patalenê, they say, one comes at once to the country of Musicanus, and to that of Sabus, where is Sindo-

¹ The words in parenthesis are probably a gloss.
² i.e. to turn back from the Hypanis.
³ See § 26.
⁴ See 14. 2. 19.
⁵ § 28 above.
⁶ § 8 above.
⁷ § 8 above.
τὰ Σινδόμανα, καὶ έτι τὴν Πορτικανοῦ καὶ ἄλλων, ὃν ἐκράτησεν ἀπάντων Ἀλέξανδρος, τὴν τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ παροικοῦντων ποταμίαν, ὑστάτης δὲ τῆς Παταληνῆς, ἦν ὁ Ἰνδὸς ποιεῖ, σχισθεὶς εἰς δύο προχοάς. Ἀριστάβοους μὲν οὖν εἰς χιλίους σταδίους διέχειν ἄλληλων φησίν αὐτάς, Νέαρχος δ' ὀκτακοσίων προστίθησιν. Ὁνησίκρητος δὲ τὴν πλευρὰν ἐκάστην τῆς ἀπολαμβανομένης νῆσου τριγώνου τὸ σχῆμα δισχιλίων, τοῦ δὲ ποταμοῦ τὸ πλάτος, καθ' ὃ σχίζεται εἰς τὰ στόματα, ὅσον διακοσίων καλεῖ δὲ τὴν νῆσον Δέλτα, καὶ φησίν ἵστην εἰναὶ τοῦ κατ' Αὐγυπτον Δέλτα, οὐκ ἀληθές τούτῳ λέγων. τὸ γὰρ κατ' Αὐγυπτον Δέλτα χιλίων καὶ τριακοσίων λέγεται σταδίων ἔχειν τήν βάσιν, τὰς δὲ πλευράς ἐκατέραυ ἐλάττω τῆς βάσεως. ἐν δὲ τῇ Παταληνῇ πόλις ἐστὶν ἄξιό- λογος τὰ Πάταλα, ἀφ' ἃς καὶ ἡ νῆσος καλεῖται.

34. Φησὶ δ' Ὁνησίκρητος τὴν πλείστην παρα- λίαν τὴν ταὐτή πολὺ τὸ τεναχώδες ἔχειν, καὶ μάλιστα κατὰ τὰ στόματα τῶν ποταμῶν, διά τε τήν χών καὶ τάς πλημμυρίδας καὶ τὸ μὴ πτεῖν ἀπογαίοις, ἄλλῳ ύπὸ τῶν πελαγίων ἄνεμων κατέχεσθαι τούτους τοὺς τόπους τὸ πλέον. λέγει δὲ καὶ περὶ τῆς Μουσικανοῦ χώρας ἐπὶ πλέον ἐγκωμιάζων αὐτήν, ὃν τινα κοινά καὶ ἄλλοις Ἰνδόις ἰστόρηται, ὡς τὸ μακρόβιον, ὥστε καὶ τριάκοντα ἐπὶ τοῖς ἑκατὸν προσλαμβάνειν (καὶ

1 σαβοῦτα σινδονιαν μος; σαβοῦτα σινδολιαν συ.; σάβου τα σινδονάλια CDFH, Tzschucke and Corais; Σάβου, τα Σινδόμανα Meineke, and so Kramer, who, however, inserts ὃν after Σάβου.
2 For διακοσίων Groskurd conj. εἰκοσί, Kramer (citing Arrian 5. 20) ἑκατῶν.

58
GEOGRAPHY, 15. i. 33-34

mana, and also to the country of Porticanus and others, who, one and all, were conquered by Alexander, these peoples dwelling along the river-lands of the Indus; but last of all to Patalene, a country formed by the Indus, which branches into two mouths. Now Aristobulus says that these mouths are one thousand stadia distant from one another, but Nearchus adds eight hundred; and Onesicritus reckons each of the two sides of the included island, which is triangular in shape, at two thousand, and the width of the river, where it branches into the mouths, at about two hundred; and he calls the island Delta, and says that it is equal in size to the Aegyptian Delta, a statement which is not true. For it is said that the Aegyptian Delta has a base of one thousand three hundred stadia, though each of the two sides is shorter than the base. In Patalene there is a noteworthy city, Patala, after which the island is named.

34. Onesicritus says that most of the seaboard in this part of the world abounds in shoals, particularly at the mouths of the rivers, on account of the silt and the overflows and also of the fact that no breezes blow from the land, and that this region is subject for the most part to winds that blow from the high sea. He describes also the country of Musicanus, lauding it rather at length for things of which some are reported as common also to other Indians, as, for example, their length of life, thirty years beyond one hundred (and indeed some say

3 àνογαλος, Casaubon, for àνδ γεας CFmoz, àνδ γαλας D̑, ἰνογαλας i, àνογαλας sx.
γάρ τοὺς Σήρας ἐτὶ τούτων μακροβιωτέρους τινές
φασί) καὶ τὸ λυτόβιον καὶ τὸ ύγιεῖνον, καὶ περ
τῆς χώρας ἀφθονίαν ἀπάντων ἐχοῦσης. ἵδιον δὲ
tὸ συσσετία τινα Δακωνικὰ αὐτοῖς εἶναι δημοσία
σιτουμένων, ὥνα δ' ἐκ θήρας ἔχοντων καὶ τὸ
χρυσὸν μὴ χρῆσθαι, μηδ' ἀργύρῳ, μετάλλων
ὀντων· καὶ τὸ ἀντὶ δούλων τοῖς ἐν ἀκμῇ χρῆσθαι
νέως, ὡς Κρήτες μὲν τοῖς Ἀφαμώταις, Δάκωνες
dὲ τοῖς Εἶλωσι· μὴ ἀκριβοῦν δὲ τὰς ἐπιστήμας
πλὴν ἱατρικῆς· ἐπὶ τινῶν γὰρ κακουργίαν εἶναι
C 702 τὴν ἑπὶ πλέον ἄσκησιν, οἷον ἑπὶ τῆς πολεμικῆς
καὶ τῶν ὁμοίων· δίκην δὲ μὴ εἶναι πλὴν φόνου
cαι ὑβρεῖς· οὔκ ἐπὶ αὐτῷ γὰρ τὸ μὴ παθεῖν
ταῦτα, τὰ δ' ἐν τοῖς συμβολαῖοις ἐπ' αὐτῷ
ἐκαστῶ, ὡστε ἄνεχεσθαι δει, εάν τις παραβῆ
tὴν πίστιν, ἄλλα καὶ προσέχειν, ὅτι πιστεύειν,
cαι μὴ δικῶν πληροῦν τὴν πόλιν. ταῦτα μὲν οἱ
μετ' Ἀλεξάνδρου στρατεύσαντες λέγουσιν.
35. Ἐκδέδοται δὲ τις καὶ Κρατεροῦ πρὸς τὴν
μητέρα Ἀριστοπάτραν ἐπιστολή, πολλά τε ἄλλα
παράδοξα φράζουσα καὶ οὕχ ὁμολογοῦσα οὐδενί,
cαι δὴ καὶ τὸ μέχρι τοῦ Γάγγου προελθεῖν τῶν
Ἀλεξάνδρου. αὐτὸς τέ φησιν ἰδεῖν τὸν ποταμὸν
cαι κύτη τὰ ἐπ' αὐτῶ καὶ μεγέθος καὶ πλάτους
cαι βάθους πόρρω πίστεως μᾶλλον ἢ ἐγγύς. ὅτι
μὲν γὰρ μέγιστος τῶν μημονευομένων κατὰ τὰς
tρεῖς ἡπείρους, καὶ μετ' αὐτὸν ὁ Ἰνδός, τρίτος
dὲ καὶ τέταρτος ὁ Ἰστρος καὶ ὁ Νεῖλος, ἰκανῶς

1 τῆς πολεμικῆς EF, τοῖς πολεμικοῖς other MSS.

1 See 10. 4. 16, 20.
that the Seres live still longer than this), and their healthfulness, and simple diet, even though their country has an abundance of everything. Peculiar to them is the fact that they have a kind of Laconian common mess,\(^1\) where they eat in public and use as food the meat of animals taken in the chase; and that they do not use gold or silver, although they have mines; and that instead of slaves they use young men in the vigour of life, as the Cretans use the Aphamiotae and the Laconians the Helots;\(^2\) and that they make no accurate study of the sciences except that of medicine, for they regard too much training in some of them as wickedness; for example, military science and the like; and that they have no process at law except for murder and outrage, for it is not in one’s power to avoid suffering these, whereas the content of contracts is in the power of each man himself, so that he is required to endure it if anyone breaks faith with him, and also to consider carefully who should be trusted and not to fill the city with lawsuits. This is the account of those who made the expedition with Alexander.

35. But there has also been published a letter of Craterus to his mother Aristopatra, which alleges many other strange things and agrees with no one else, particularly in saying that Alexander advanced as far as the Ganges. And he says that he himself saw the river and monsters on its banks, and a magnitude both of width and of depth which is remote from credibility rather than near it. Indeed, it is sufficiently agreed that the Ganges is the largest of known rivers on the three continents, and after it the Indus, and third and fourth the Ister and the

\(^2\) See 8. 5. 4 and 12. 3. 4.
After ροταμοῦ Meineke inserts Ἐραννοβᾶ, following Arrian, Indica 10.

2 δεῖν F, δεῖ other MSS.

3 Ἰρώθης τοιῷ.

1 More than twelve miles.

2 About 120 feet. "According to the latest calculations, the length of the main stream of the Ganges is 1540 m., or with its longest affluent, 1680; breadth at true entrance into
Nile; but the several details concerning it are stated differently by different writers, some putting its minimum breadth at thirty stadia and others even at three, whereas Megasthenes says that when its breadth is medium it widens even to one hundred stadia and that its least depth is twenty fathoms.

36. It is said that Palibothra lies at the confluence of the Ganges and the other river, a city eighty stadia in length and fifteen in breadth, in the shape of a parallelogram, and surrounded by a wooden wall that is perforated so that arrows can be shot through the holes; and that in front of the wall lies a trench used both for defence and as a receptacle of the sewage that flows from the city; and that the tribe of people amongst whom this city is situated is called the Prasii and is far superior to all the rest; and that the reigning king must be surnamed after the city, being called Palibothrus in addition to his own family name, as, for example, King Sandrocottus to whom Megasthenes was sent on an embassy. Such is also the custom among the Parthians; for all are called Arsaces, although personally one king is called Orodes, another Phraates, and another something else.

37. Writers are agreed that the country as a whole on the far side of the Hypanis is best; but they do not describe it accurately, and because of their ignorance and of its remoteness magnify all things

the sea, 20 m.; breadth of channel in dry season, 1 1/4 to 2 1/4 m.; depth in dry season, 30 ft.” (Holdich, in Encyc. Britannica.)

3 The Erannoboas (now the Sone), according to Groskurd (who cites Arrian, Indica 10) and the later editors (see critical note).

4 See 2. 1. 9.
Strabo

ή τὸ τερατοδέστερον, οῖα τά τῶν χρυσωρύχων μυρμήκων καὶ ἄλλων θηρίων τε καὶ ἀνθρώπων ἰδιομόρφων καὶ δυνάμεις τισιν ἔξηλαμαγμένων, ὡς τοὺς Ζήρας μακροβίους φασί, πέρα καὶ διακοσίων ἔτων παρατείνοντας. λέγουσι δὲ καὶ ἀριστοκρατίαν τινα σύνταξιν πολιτείας αὐτόθι εκ πεντακισχιλίων βουλευτῶν συνεστώσαν, ὥν ἔκαστον παρέχεσθαι τῷ κοινῷ ἑλέφαντα. καὶ τίγρεις δ' ἐν τοῖς Πρασίοις φησὶν ὁ Μεγασθένης μεγίστους γίνεσθαι, σχεδόν δὲ τι καὶ διπλασίους λεόντων, δυνατοὺς δὲ, ὡστε τῶν ἡμέρων τινά, ἀγόμενον ὑπὸ τεττάρων, τῷ ὁπισθίῳ σκέλει δρακά-μενον ἡμιόνου, βιάσασθαι καὶ ἐλκύσαι πρὸς ἔαντόν· κερκοπιθήκους δὲ μείζους τῶν μεγίστων κυνῶν, λευκοὺς πλῆν τοῦ προσώπου· τούτῳ δ' εἶναι μέλαν (παρ' ἀλλοις δ' ἀνάπαλιν), τὰς δὲ κέρκους μείζους δυεῖν πῆχεων, ἡμερωτάτους δὲ καὶ οὐ κακοήθεις περὶ ἐπιθέσεις καὶ κλοπάς· λίθους δ' ὅρύττεσθαι λιβανόχρους, γλυκυτέρους σύκων ἡ μέλιτος· ἀλλαχοῦ δὲ διπήχεις ὁφεις ὑμενοπέτρους, ὁστερ αἱ νυκτερίδες, καὶ τούτους δὲ νύκτωρ πέτεσθαι, σταλαγμοὺς ἀφίεντας οὐρων, τοὺς δὲ ἱδρώτων, διασύποντας τὸν χρῶτα τοῦ μη φυλαξαμένου· καὶ σκορπίους εἶναι πτηνοὺς, ὑπερβάλλοντας μεγέθεσιν· φύεσθαι δὲ καὶ ἐβενοῦ· εἶναι δὲ καὶ κύνας ἀλκίμους, οὐ πρότερον μεθίεν- τας τὸ δηχθέν, πρὶν εἰς τοὺς ρώδονας ὑδωρ κατα-
or make them more marvellous. For example, the stories of the ants that mine gold and of other creatures, both beasts and human beings, which are of peculiar form and in respect to certain natural powers have undergone complete changes, as, for example, the Seres, who, they say, are long-lived, and prolong their lives even beyond two hundred years. They tell also of a kind of aristocratic order of government that was composed outright of five thousand counsellors, each of whom furnishes the new commonwealth with an elephant. Megasthenes says that the largest tigers are found among the Prasii, even nearly twice as large as lions, and so powerful that a tame one, though being led by four men, seized a mule by the hind leg and by force drew the mule to itself; and that the long-tailed apes are larger than the largest dogs, are white except their faces, which are black (the contrary is the case elsewhere), that their tails are more than two cubits long, and that they are very tame and not malicious as regards attacks and thefts; and that stones are dug up of the colour of frankincense and sweeter than figs or honey; and that in other places there are reptiles two cubits long with membranous wings like bats, and that they too fly by night, discharging drops of urine, or also of sweat, which putrefy the skin of anyone who is not on his guard; and that there are winged scorpions of surpassing size; and that ebony is also produced; and that there are also brave dogs, which do not let go the object bitten till water is poured down into their nostrils; but larger than a fox.” Strabo elsewhere (16. 4. 15) refers to “lions called ants.”

3 The Greek word suggests seizing with the claws, not with the teeth.
χυθήναι· ενίους δ' ὑπὸ προθυμίας εὖ τῷ δήγματι διαστρέφεσθαι τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς, τοῖς δὲ καὶ ἐκπίπτειν· κατασχεθήναι δὲ καὶ λέοντα ὑπὸ κυνὸς καὶ ταύρον, τὸν δὲ ταύρον καὶ ἀποθανεῖν, κρατοῦμεν τοῦ ῥύγχους, πρῶτερον ἡ ἀφεθήναι.

38. Ἐν δὲ τῇ ὀρεινῇ Σίλαντοταμὸν εἶναι, ὁ μηδέν ἐπιπλεῖν. Δημόκριτον μὲν ὁυν ἀπιστεῖν, ἀτε πολλὴν τῆς Ἀσίας πεπλανημένων καὶ Ἄριστοτέλης δὲ ἀπιστεῖ, καίπερ ἄροιν ὄντων λεπτῶν, οἷς οὐδὲν ἐποχεῖται πτηνῶν· ἐτὶ δὲ τῶν ἀναφερομένων ἄμων ἐπισταστικὸν τινὲς εἰσὶν πρὸς ἑαυτοὺς καὶ οἷον ῥοβητικὸν τοῦ ὑπερπετοῦς, ὡς τὸ ἠλεκτρὸν τοῦ ἀχύρου καὶ η ἑιδηρίτις τοῦ σιδήρου τάχα δέ καὶ καθ' ὕδατος τοιαύτα τινὲς εἶναι ἀν δυνάμεις. ταῦτα μὲν ὁυν φυσιολογίας ἱσχεί τινος καὶ τῆς περὶ τῶν ὁχυμένων πραγματείας, ὡστε ἐν ἑκέννοις ἐπισκεπτέον υνύν δ' ἐτε καὶ ταῦτα προσληπτέον καὶ ὁσα ἄλλα τῆς γεωγραφίας ἐγγυτέρω.

39. Φησὶ δὴ τὸ τῶν Ἰουδῶν πλῆθος εἰς ἑπτὰ μέρη διηρήσθαι, καὶ πρῶτους μὲν τοὺς φιλοσόφους εἶναι κατὰ τιμὴν ἐλαχίστους δὲ κατ' ἄριθμον χρὴσθαι δ' αὐτοῖς, ἱδία μὲν ἐκάστῳ τοὺς θύουτας ἡ τοὺς ἐναγίζοντας, κοινή δὲ τοὺς βασιλέας κατὰ τὴν μεγάλην λεγομένην σύνοδον, καθ' ἂν τὸ νέον ἐτοὺς ἀπαντεῖ οἱ φιλόσοφοι τὸ βασιλεῖ συνελθόντες ἐπὶ θύρας, ὡ τι ἂν αὐτῶν

1 Σίλαν Ἐπιτόμε, Σίλαν other MSS.
2 DFw omit καὶ before ἄροιν.

1 This clause is obviously ironical, unless, as others suggest, the text is corrupt.
and that some bite so vehemently that their eyes become distorted and sometimes actually fall out; and that even a lion was held fast by a dog, and also a bull, and that the bull was actually killed, being overpowered through the dog's hold on his nose before he could be released.

38. Megasthenes goes on to say that in the mountainous country there is a River Silas on which nothing floats; that Democritus, however, disbelieves this, inasmuch as he had wandered over much of Asia. But Aristotle also disbelieves it, although there are atmospheres so thin that no winged creature can fly in them. Besides, certain rising vapours tend to attract to themselves and "gulp down," as it were, whatever flies over them, as amber does with chaff and the magnet with iron; and perhaps there might also be natural powers of this kind in water. Now these things border, in a way, on natural philosophy and on the science of floating bodies, and therefore should be investigated there; but in this treatise I must add still the following, and whatever else is closer to the province of geography.

39. He says, then, that the population of India is divided into seven castes: the one first in honour, but the fewest in number, consists of the philosophers; and these philosophers are used, each individually, by people making sacrifice to the gods or making offerings to the dead, but jointly by the kings at the Great Synod, as it is called, at which, at the beginning of the new year, the philosophers, one and all, come together at the gates of the king; and whatever each man has drawn up in writing or

2 On the caste system in India see "Caste" in Encyc. Britannica.
STRABO

εκαστος συντάξη των χρησιμων η τηρήση προς ευετηρίαν καρπῶν τε καὶ ζιων καὶ περὶ πολιτειας,¹ προφέρει² τούτο εἰς τὸ μέσον δις δ' ἀν τρὶς ἐφευσμένος ἥλου, νόμος ἐστὶ σιγάν διὰ βίου. C 704 τὸν δὲ κατορθώσαντα ἀφορου καὶ ἀτελῆ κρίνουσι.

40. Δεύτερον δὲ μέρος εἶναι τὸ τῶν γεωργῶν, οἳ πλεῖστοι τέ εἰσι καὶ ἐπιεικέστατοι, ἀστρατεία καὶ ἀδεία τοῦ ἐργάζεσθαι, πόλει μὴ προσισώμετε μηδ' ἄλλη χρεία μηδ' ὁχλήσας κοινῆ· πολλάκις γοῦν ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ χρόνῳ καὶ τόπῳ τοῖς μὲν παρατετάχθαι συμβαίνει καὶ διακινδυνεύειν πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους, οἳ δ' ἀροῦσιν ἦς σκάπτουσιν ἀκινδύνως, προμάχους ἔχοντες ἐκείνους. ἔστι δ' ἡ χώρα βασιλικῆ πᾶσα: μισθοῦ δ' αὐτὴν ἐπὶ τετάρταις ἐργάζονται τῶν καρπῶν.

41. Τρίτον τὸ τῶν ποιμένων καὶ θηρευτῶν, οἰς μόνοις ἔξεστι θηρεύειν καὶ θρεμματοτροφεῖν, ὁμία τε παρέχειν καὶ μισθοῦ ξεύγη. ἀντὶ δὲ τοῦ τῆς γῆς ἐλευθεροῦν θηρίων καὶ τῶν σπερμολόγων ὀρνέων μετροῦνται παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως σῖτον, πλάνητα καὶ σκηνίτην νεμόμενοι βίον. Ἰππον δὲ καὶ ἐλέφαντα τρέφειν οὐκ ἔξεστιν ἰδιώτη· βασιλικόν δ' ἐκάτερον νενόμισται τὸ κτήμα, καὶ εἰσιν αὐτῶν ἐπιμεληταί.

¹ καὶ ζιων καὶ περὶ πολιτειας, Corais and the later editors, for καὶ ζιων καὶ πολιτειαι.
² προφέρει, Corais and later editors, for προσφέρει.
³ Instead of ἦ, ὃ and Corais read καί.

¹ Perhaps the more natural interpretation of the Greek would be, "the farmers cultivate it for wages, on condition of receiving a fourth part of the produce," whether "wages" and "fourth part" are appositional, or "on condition of" means, as it might, "in addition to." But Diodorus Siculus 68
observed as useful with reference to the prosperity of either fruits or living beings or concerning the government, he brings forward in public; and he who is thrice found false is required by law to keep silence for life, whereas he who has proved correct is adjudged exempt from tribute and taxes.

40. The second caste, he says, is that of the farmers, who are not only the most numerous, but also the most highly respected, because of their exemption from military service and right of freedom in their farming; and they do not approach a city, either because of a public disturbance or on any other business; at any rate, he says, it often happens that at the same time and place some are in battle array and are in peril of their lives against the enemy, while the farmers are ploughing or digging without peril, the latter having the former as defenders. The whole of the country is of royal ownership; and the farmers cultivate it for a rental in addition to paying a fourth part of the produce.1

41. The third caste is that of the shepherds and hunters, who alone are permitted to hunt, to breed cattle, and to sell or hire out beasts of burden; and in return for freeing the land from wild beasts and seed-picking birds, they receive proportionate allowances of grain from the king, leading, as they do, a wandering and tent-dwelling life. No private person is permitted to keep a horse or elephant. The possession of either is a royal privilege, and there are men to take care of them.

(2. 40. 5) says, ("the rentals of the country they pay to the king . . . but apart from the rental they pay a fourth part into the royal treasury"). Hence the translator agrees with Tozer (Selections from Strabo, p. 317), who quotes Lassen (Indische Alterthumskunde II, p. 721).
42. Θήρα δὲ τῶν θηρίων τούτων τοιάδε. χωρίον ψιλὸν ὅσον τεττάρων ἢ πέντε σταδίων τάφρος περιχαράξαντες βαθεία γεφυροῦσι τὴν εἴσοδον στενωτάτη γεφύρας εἰς εἰσαφιάσι θηλείας τὰς ἡμερωτάτας τρεῖς ἢ τέτταρας, αὐτοὶ δὲ ἐν καλυβίοις κρυπτοῖς υποκάθηται λοχώντες. ἡμέρας μὲν οὖν οὐ προσίασιν οἱ ἀγριοὶ, νύκτωρ δὲ ἐφ’ ἕνα ποιοῦνται τὴν εἴσοδον εἰσιόντων δὲ, κλείουσι τὴν εἴσοδον λάθρα, εἰτὰ τῶν ἡμέρων ἀδητῶν τοὺς ἀλκιμωτάτους εἰσάγοντες διαμάχονται πρὸς αὐτοὺς, ἀμα καὶ λιμφ καταπονοῦντες. ήδη δὲ καμάροις, οἱ εὐθαρσεῖστατοι τῶν ἡμιόχων λάθρα καταβαίνοντες ὑποδύνουσιν ἕκαστος τῇ γαστρὶ τοῦ οἰκείου όχυρον ὁμοιῶν δ’ ἐνθεύτε ὑποδυνεὶ τῷ ἀγρῷ καὶ σύμποδα δεσμεῖ γενομένου δὲ τοῦτο, κελεύουσι τοῖς τιθασοῖς τύπτειν τοὺς συμποδισθέντας, ἐς ἄν πέσωσιν εἰς τὴν γῆν, πεσόντων δ’ ὁμοβοῖνας ἰμαίσε προσλαμβάνονται τοὺς αὐχένας αὐτῶν πρὸς τοὺς τῶν τιθασῶν ἵνα δὲ μή σειόμενοι τοὺς ἀναβάινειν ἐπ’ αὐτοὺς ἐπιχειροῦντας ἀποσειόντο, τοῖς τραχύλοις αὐτῶν ἐμβάλλονται κύκλῳ τομάς, καὶ κατ’ αὐτὰς τοὺς ἰμάντας περτιθέασιν, ὥσθ’ ὑπ’ ἀλχηδόνων εἴκειν τοῖς δεσμοῖς καὶ ἰσιχάξειν. τῶν δ’ ἄλοντων ἀπολέξαντες τοὺς προσβυτέρους ἡ νεωτέρους τῆς χρείας τοὺς λοιποὺς ἀπάγουσιν εἰς τοὺς σταθμοὺς, δῆσαντες δὲ τοὺς μὲν πόδας πρὸς ἀλλήλους, τοὺς δὲ αὐχένας πρὸς κίονα εἴπεπηγώτα, δαμάξουσι λιμφ’ ἐπείτα χλόῃ καλάμιον καὶ πόσα ἀναλαμβάνουσι: μετὰ δὲ ταύτα πειθαρχεῖν δι-
42. The chase of the elephant is conducted as follows: they dig a deep ditch round a treeless tract about four or five stadia in circuit and bridge the entrance with a very narrow bridge; and then, letting loose into the enclosure three or four of their tamest females, they themselves lie in wait under cover in hidden huts. Now the wild elephants do not approach by day, but they make the entrance one by one at night; and when they have entered, the men close the entrance secretly; and then, leading the most courageous of their tame combatants into the enclosure, they fight it out with the wild elephants, at the same time wearing them down also by starvation; and, once the animals are worn out, the boldest of the riders secretly dismount and each creeps under the belly of his own riding-elephant, and then, starting from here, creeps under the wild elephant and binds his feet together; and when this is done, they command the tamed elephants to beat those whose feet have been bound until they fall to the ground; and when they fall, the men fasten their necks to those of the tamed elephants with thongs of raw ox-hide; and in order that the wild elephants, when they shake those who are attempting to mount them, may not shake them off, the men make incisions round their necks and put the thongs round at these incisions, so that through pain they yield to their bonds and keep quiet. Of the elephants captured, they reject those that are too old or too young for service and lead away the rest to the stalls; and then, having tied their feet to one another and their necks to a firmly planted pillar, they subdue them by hunger; and then they restore them with green cane and grass. After this the elephants are
Instead of oí dé, moz and Corais read tivès γάρ.
2 Instead of tòvs, moz and Tzschucke read oi.
3 Before ὑποδύντας Dhimoz insert kal.
4 Instead of ἔχει, F and Meineke read ἵσχει.

1 The so-called "must" (frenzied male) elephant discharges an abundance of dark oily matter from two pores in the forehead (see "Elephant" in Encyc. Britannica). "True,
taught to obey commands, some through words of command and others through being charmed by tunes and drum-beating. Those that are hard to tame are rare; for by nature the elephant is of a mild and gentle disposition, so that it is close to a rational animal; and some elephants have even taken up their riders who had fallen from loss of blood in the fight and carried them safely out of the battle, while others have fought for, and rescued, those who had crept between their fore-legs. And if in anger they have killed one of their feeders or masters, they yearn after him so strongly that through grief they abstain from food and sometimes even starve themselves to death.

43. They copulate and bear young like horses, mostly in the spring. It is breeding-time for the male when he is seized with frenzy and becomes ferocious; at that time he discharges a kind of fatty matter through the breathing-hole which he has beside his temples. And it is breeding-time for the females when this same passage is open. They are pregnant eighteen months at the most and sixteen at the least; and the mother nurses her young six years. Most of them live as long as very long-lived human beings, and some continue to live even to two hundred years, although they are subject to many diseases and are hard to cure. A remedy for eye diseases is to bathe the eyes with cow’s milk; but for most diseases they are given dark wine to drink; and, in the case of wounds, melted butter on occasion male elephants get into the stage called musth, the symptoms of which, and possibly the cause, are certain head glands. Musth has no connection with sex, although this is commonly thought to be the case” (Major A. W. Smith, Atlantic Monthly, November 1928, p. 632).
STRABO

(ἔξάγει γὰρ τὰ σιδήρια), τὰ δὲ ἔλκη σαρξίν ὑείαις πυριῶσιν. Ὀνησίκριτος δὲ καὶ ἔως τριακοσίων ἐτῶν ξὴν φησὶ, σπάνιον δὲ καὶ ἔως πεντακοσίων, κρατίστοις δ’ εἶναι περὶ τὰ διακόσια ἔτη, κυν-σκεσθαί δὲ δεκαετίαν. μείζουσι δὲ τῶν Διβυκῶν καὶ ἐρρωμενεστέρους ἐκείνους τε ἐἱρήκε καὶ ἄλλοι ταῖς οὖν προβοσκίσιν ἐπάλξεις καθαρεῖν καὶ δένδρα ἀναστάν πρόρριζα, διανισταμένους εἰς τοὺς ὀπισθίους πόδας. Νέαρχος δὲ καὶ ποδάγρας ἐν ταῖς θήραις τίθεσθαι κατὰ τινας συνδρομοὺς φησί, συνελαύνεσθαι δ’ ὕπ’ τῶν τιθασών τοὺς ἄγριους εἰς ταῦτας, κρειττόνων ὄντων καὶ ἡμι-χουμένων. οὕτως δ’ εὐτιθασεύτους εἶναι, ὡστε καὶ λιθάζειν ἐπὶ σκοτόν μανθάνειν καὶ ὀπλοῖς χρῆσθαι· νεῖν τε κάλλιστα· μέγιστὸν τε νομι-ξεσθαι κτῆμα ἐλεφάντων ἄρμα· ἀγεσθαι δ’ ὕπ’ ξυγοῦ 1 ὡς 2 καὶ καμήλους· γυναῖκα δ’ εὐδοκιμέειν, εἰ λάβοι παρὰ ἐραστοῦ δώρον ἐλέφαντα. οὕτος ὁ λόγος οὐχ ὀμολογεῖ τῷ φήσαντι μόνων 3 βασι-λέων εἶναι κτῆμα ἵππου καὶ ἐλέφαντα. 4

44. Τῶν δὲ μυρμήκων τῶν χρυσοφόρων δέρματα ἰδεῖν φησίν οὕτως παρδαλέας ὀμοίων. Μεγασθένης Σ 706 δὲ περὶ τῶν μυρμήκων οὕτω φησίν, ὅτι ἐν Δέρδαις, ἐθνεὶ μεγάλῳ τῶν προσεφών καὶ ὄρεων Ἰνδῶν, ὀροπέδιον εἰς τρισχιλίων πῶς τὸν κύκλον στα-

1 ξυγόν CDFh, ξυγών other MSS.
2 ὡς, Jones inserts from conj. of Tszchucke and Groskurd; Corais emends καὶ καμήλους to ἀχαλίνους (“without bridles”); Kramer and Meineke merely place an asterisk before the two words.
3 μόνων F, μόνον other MSS.
4 οὕτως . . . . . . ἐλέφαντα, omitted by moz, is probably a gloss.

74
is applied to them (for it draws out the bits of iron), while ulcers are poulticed with swine's flesh. Onesicritus says that they live as long as three hundred years and in rare cases even as long as five hundred; but that they are most powerful when about two hundred years of age, and that females are pregnant for a period of ten years. And both he and others state that they are larger and stronger than the Libyan elephants; at any rate, standing up on their hind feet, they tear down battlements and pull up trees by the roots by means of the proboscis. Nearchus says that in the hunt for them foot-traps also are put at places where tracks meet, and that the wild elephants are driven together into these by the tamed ones, which latter are stronger and guided by riders; and that they are so easy to tame that they learn to throw stones at a mark and to use weapons; and that they are excellent swimmers; and that a chariot drawn by elephants is considered a very great possession, and that they are driven under yoke like camels;¹ and that a woman is highly honoured if she receives an elephant as a gift from a lover. But this statement is not in agreement with that of the man who said that horse and elephant were possessed by kings alone.²

44. Nearchus says that the skins of gold-mining ants are like those of leopards. But Megasthenes speaks of these ants as follows: that among the Derdae, a large tribe of Indians living towards the east and in the mountains, there is a plateau approximately three thousand stadia in circuit, and that

¹ On this clause see critical note
² § 41 above.
διῶν ὑποκειμένων δὲ τοῦτο χρυσωρυχείων, οἱ μεταλλεύοντες εἶνεν μύρικες, θηρία 1 ἀλωπέκων οὐκ ἐλάττω, τάχος ὑπερφυὲς ἔχοντα καὶ ζῶντα 2 ἀπὸ θῆρας· ὀρύττει 3 δὲ χειμῶν τὴν γῆν, σωρεύει 4 τε πρὸς τοὺς στομίους, καθάπερ οἱ ἀσφάλακες· ψήγμα δὲ ἐστὶ χρυσοῦ μικρᾶς ἐψήσεως δεόμενον τοῦθ᾽ ὑποξύγιοις μετίασιν οἱ πλησίοχοροι λάθρα· φανερῶς γὰρ διαμάχονται καὶ διώκοντες, καταλαβόντες δὲ διαχρωνταὶ καὶ αὐτοῦς καὶ τὰ ὑποξύγια· πρὸς δὲ τὸ λαθεῖν κρέα θῆρεα προτιθέσι κατὰ μέρη, περισπασθέντων δὲ ἀναροῦνται τὸ ψήγμα καὶ τοῦ τυχόντος τοῦ ἐμπόροις ἄργον διατίθενται, χωνεύειν οὐκ εἴδοτες.

45. 'Επεὶ δὲ ἐν τῷ περὶ τῶν θηρευτῶν λόγῳ καὶ περὶ τῶν θηρίων ἐμνήσθημεν, ὄν τε Μεγασθένης ἐπεὶ καὶ ἄλλοι, προσθέτεσθω καὶ ταῦτα. οἱ μὲν γὰρ Νέαρχος τὸ τῶν ἔρπετῶν θανμάζει πλῆθος καὶ τὴν κακίαν ἀναφεύγει γὰρ ἐκ τῶν πεδίων εἰς τὰς κατοικίας τὰς διαλανθανούσας ἐν ταῖς ἐπικλύσεσι καὶ πληροῦν τοὺς οἰκοὺς· διὰ δὴ τοῦτο καὶ ὕψηλας ποιεῖσθαι τὰς χλῖνας, ἔστι δὲ ὅτε καὶ ἐξοικίζεσθαι πλεονασάντων εἰ δὲ μὴ τὸ πολὺ τοῦ πλῆθους ὑπὸ τῶν ὑδάτων διεφθείρετο, κἀν ἐρημωθῆναι τὴν χώραν. καὶ τὴν μικρότητα δὲ αὐτῶν εἶναι χαλεπὴν καὶ τὴν ὑπερβολὴν τοῦ μεγέθους, τὴν μὲν διὰ τὸ δυσφύλακτον, τὴν δὲ δι'

1 θηρία, Kramer and later editors, for θηρίων.
2 ἔχοντα καὶ ζῶντα, Kramer and later editors, for ἔχοντες ζῶντες.
3 ὀρύττουσι Εἰ. ὑπὲρθετηκαί ποιεῖται τὰς χλῖνας.
4 σωρεύουσι Ει, ἀσφάλακες Xylander and other editors before Kramer.
GEOGRAPHY, 15. 1. 44-45

below it are gold mines, of which the miners are ants, animals that are no smaller than foxes, are surpassingly swift, and live on the prey they catch. They dig holes in winter and heap up the earth at the mouths of the holes, like moles; and the gold-dust requires but little smelting. The neighbouring peoples go after it on beasts of burden by stealth, for if they go openly the ants fight it out with them and pursue them when they flee, and then, having overtaken them, exterminate both them and their beasts; but to escape being seen by the ants, the people lay out pieces of flesh of wild beasts at different places, and when the ants are drawn away from around the holes, the people take up the gold-dust and, not knowing how to smelt it, dispose of it unwrought to traders at any price it will fetch.

45. But since, in my account of the hunters and of the wild beasts, I have mentioned what both Megasthenes and others have said, I must go on to add the following. Nearchus wonders at the number of the reptiles and their viciousness, for he says that at the time of the inundations they flee up from the plains into the settlements that escape the inundations, and fill the houses; and that on this account, accordingly, the inhabitants not only make their beds high, but sometimes even move out of their houses when infested by too many of them; and that if the greater part of the multitude of reptiles were not destroyed by the waters, the country would be depopulated; and that the smallness of some of them is troublesome as well as the huge size of others, the small ones because it is difficult to guard against them, and the huge ones because of their strength,

1 A species of the Spalacidae.
σχῆν, ὅπου καὶ ἐκκαὶ δικαπήχεις ἔχιδνας ὀρᾶσθαι· ἐπῳδοὺς δὲ περιφοιτῶν ἱᾶσθαι πεπιστευμένους, καὶ εἴναι σχεδὸν τὶ μόνην ταύτην ἰατρικήν' μηδὲ γὰρ νόσους εἶναι πολλὰς διὰ τὴν λιτότητα τῆς διαίτης καὶ τὴν ἀοιδίαν· εἶ δὲ γένοιτο, ἱᾶσθαι τοὺς σοφιστάς. Ἄριστόβουλος δὲ τῶν θρυλουμένων μεγεθῶν οὐδὲν ἰδεῖν φησίν, ἔχοναν δὲ μόνον ἐννέα πηχῶν καὶ σπιθαμῆς. καὶ ἡμεῖς δ' ἐν Διγύπτῳ κομμεθείσαν ἐκείθεν τηλικαύτην πως εἴδομεν. ἔχεις δὲ πολλοὺς φησὶ πολὺ ἐλάττους καὶ ἀσπίδας, σκορπίους δὲ μεγάλους, οὐδὲν δὲ τούτων οὔτως ὀχλεῖν ως τὰ λεπτά ὀφείδια, οὐ μεῖζον σπιθαμιαίων· εὐρίσκεσθαι γὰρ ἐν σκηναῖς, ἐν σκεύεσιν, ἐν θρυγγοῖς 1 ἐγκεκριμένα, τοὺς δὲ πληγέντας αἰμορροεῖν ἐκ παντὸς πόρου μετὰ ἐπωδυνίας, ἐπείτα ἀποθνῄσκειν, εἰ μὴ βοηθήσει τις εὐθὺς· τὴν δὲ βοηθειν πρᾶξιν εἶναι διὰ τὴν C 707 ἀρετὴν τῶν Ἰνδικῶν ριζῶν καὶ φαρμάκων. κροκοδείλους τε οὖτε πολλοὺς οὔτε βλαττικοὺς ἀνθρώπων εὐ τῷ Ἰνδῷ φησίν εὐρίσκεσθαι, καὶ τὰ ἄλλα δὲ ξώα τὰ πλείστα τὰ αὐτὰ ἀπερ εὐ τῷ Νεῖλῳ γεννᾶσθαι πλὴν ἰπποῦ ποταμίου. Ὁνησίκριτος δὲ καὶ τούτων φησὶ γεννᾶσθαι. τῶν δ' ἐκ θαλάττης φησίν ὁ Ἀριστόβουλος εἰς μὲν τὸν Νεῖλον ἀνατρέχειν μηδὲν ἔξω θρίσσῃς καὶ κεστρέως καὶ δελφῖνος διὰ τοὺς κροκοδείλους, ἐν

1 Instead of θρυγγοῖς, CDEFhisw read θρύσσοι ("rushes"); x reads θρυγγοῖς, and Corais θριγκοῖς.

1 Or "baggage." 2 See critical note.

78
inasmuch as vipers even sixteen cubits long are to be seen; and that charmers go around who are believed to cure the wounds; and that this is almost the only art of medicine, for the people do not have many diseases on account of the simplicity of their diet and their abstinence from wine; but that if diseases arise, they are cured by the Wise Men. But Aristobulus says that he saw none of the animals of the huge size that are everywhere talked about, except a viper nine cubits and one span long. And I myself saw one of about the same size in Aegypt that had been brought from India. He says that you have many much smaller vipers, and asps, and large scorpions, but that none of these is so troublesome as the slender little snakes that are no more than a span long, for they are found hidden in tents, in vessels,¹ and in hedges²; and that persons bitten by them bleed from every pore with anguish, and then die unless they receive aid immediately; but that aid is easy because of the virtue of the Indian roots and drugs. He says further that crocodiles, neither numerous nor harmful to man, are to be found in the Indus, and also that most of the other animals are the same as those which are found in the Nile except the hippopotamus. Onesicritus, however, says that this animal too is found in India. And Aristobulus says that on account of the crocodiles no sea-fish swim up into the Nile except the thrissa,³ the cestreus,⁴ and the dolphin,⁵ but that there is a

³ Apparently of the genus Trichiuridae (cutlass fish), or else Engraulidae (small herring-like fish used for pickling and sauces).
⁴ Apparently of the genus Mugilidae (grey mullets).
⁵ The dolphin, however, is a mammal, not a fish.
δὲ τῷ Ἰνδῷ πλῆθος· τῶν δὲ καριδῶν τὰς μὲν μικρὰς μέχρι ὄρους ¹ ἀναθείν, τὰς δὲ μεγάλας μέχρι τῶν συμβολῶν τοῦ τε Ἰνδοῦ καὶ τοῦ Ἀκεσίνου. περὶ μὲν οὖν τῶν θηρίων τοσάτα λέγεται ἐπανίστητε δ’ ἐπὶ τὸν Μεγασθένη λέγωμεν τὰ ἐξῆς, ὃν ἀπελπίσαμεν.

46. Μετὰ γὰρ τοὺς θηρευτὰς καὶ τοὺς ποιμένας τέταρτόν φησιν εἰναι μέρος τοὺς ἐργαζόμενους τὰς τέχνας καὶ τοὺς κατηλικοὺς καὶ οἷς ἀπὸ τοῦ σώματος ἡ ἐργασία· ὃν οἱ μὲν φόρον τελοῦσι καὶ λειτουργίας παρέχονται τακτάς, τοῖς δ’ ὀπλοποιοῖς καὶ ναυτηγοῖς μισθοῖ καὶ τροφαὶ παρὰ βασιλέως ἐκκενταί· μόνῳ γὰρ ἐργάζονται· παρέχει δὲ τὰ μὲν ὅπλα τοῖς στρατιώταις ὁ στρατοφύλαξ, τὰς δὲ ναύς μισθοῦ τοῖς πλέονσιν ὁ ναύαρχος καὶ τοῖς ἐμπόροις.

47. Πέμπτον δ’ ² ἐστὶ τὸ τῶν πολεμιστῶν, οἷς τὸν ἄλλον χρόνον ἐν σχολῇ καὶ πότοις ὁ βίος ἐστίν, ἐκ τοῦ βασιλικοῦ διαιτωμένου, ὡστε τὰς ἐξόδους, ὅταν ἡ ³ χρεία, ταχέως ποιεῖσθαι, πλὴν τῶν σωμάτων μηδὲν ἄλλο κομίζοντας παρ’ ἑαυτῶν.

48. "Εκτοι δ’ εἰσὶν οἱ ἐφοροι· τούτοις δ’ ἐποπευέων δέδοται τὰ πραττόμενα καὶ ἀναγγέλλειν λάθρα τῷ βασιλεῖ, συνεργοὺς ποιομένους τὰς ἑταῖρας, τοῖς μὲν ἐν τῇ πόλει τὰς ἐν τῇ πόλει, τοῖς δὲ ἐν στρατοπέδῳ τὰς αὐτόθι καθίστανται δ’ οἱ ἀριστοὶ καὶ πιστότατοι.

---

¹ For ὄρους, Groskurd conj. τῶν ὄρων, Corais Οὐρων.
² δ’, before ἐστί, Meineke inserts. ³ ἡ z, εἰν other MSS.

---

¹ Of the genus Caridea (shrimp, prawns, and the like).

80
large number of different fish in the Indus. Of the carides,¹ the small ones swim up the Indus only as far as a mountain,² but the large ones as far as the confluence of the Indus and the Acesines. So much, then, is reported about the wild animals. Let me now return to Megasthenes and continue his account from the point where I left off.

46. After the hunters and the shepherds, he says, follows the fourth caste—the artisans, the tradesmen, and the day-labourers; and of these, some pay tribute to the state and render services prescribed by the state, whereas the armour-makers and ship-builders receive wages and provisions, at a published scale, from the king, for these work for him alone; and arms are furnished the soldiers by the commander-in-chief, whereas the ships are let out for hire to sailors and merchants by the admiral.

47. The fifth caste is that of the warriors, who, when they are not in service, spend their lives in idleness and at drinking-bouts, being maintained at the expense of the royal treasury; so that they make their expeditions quickly when need arises, since they bring nothing else of their own but their bodies.

48. The sixth is that of the inspectors,³ to whom it is given to inspect what is being done and report secretly to the king, using the courtesans as colleagues, the city inspectors using the city courtesans and the camp inspectors the camp courtesans; but the best and most trustworthy men are appointed to this office.

² "A mountain" is unintelligible. The only plausible emendations yield "the mountains" or "the Uri" (a people mentioned by Pliny 6. 20, 23). See critical note.
³ i.e. of political and military officials.
49. "Eβδομοι δ' οἱ σύμβουλοι καὶ σύνεδροι τοῦ βασιλέως, ἦν τὰ ἀρχεῖα καὶ δικαστήρια καὶ ἡ διοίκησις τῶν ὄλων. οὐκ ἕστι δ' οὕτε γαμεῖν ἦν ἄλλου γένους οὕτε ἐπιτήδευμα οὕτε ἐργασίαν μεταλαμβάνειν ἄλλην ἦν ἄλλης, οὔτε πλέον μεταχειρίζεσθαι τὸν αὐτόν, πλὴν εἰ τῶν φιλοσόφων τις εἰς ἐάσθαι γὰρ τούτον δι᾽ ἀρετήν.

50. Τῶν δ' ἀρχόντων οἱ μὲν εἰςιν ἀγορανόμοι, οἱ δ' ἀστυνόμοι, οἱ δ' ἐπὶ τῶν στρατιωτῶν δὸν οἱ μὲν ποταμοὺς ἐξεργάζονται καὶ ἀναμετροῦσι τὴν γῆν, ὡς ἐν Ἀιγυπτῷ, καὶ τὰς κλειστὰς διώρυγας, ἀφ' ὧν εἰς τὰς ὀχετεῖς ταμιευόμενοι τὸ χέωρ, ἐπισκοποῦσιν, ὅποις ἦν ἤσθην πᾶσιν οἱ τῶν ὑδάτων παρείη χρήσις. οἱ δ' αὐτοὶ καὶ τῶν θηρευτῶν ἐπιμελοῦνται καὶ τιμῆς καὶ κολάσεως εἰςιν κύριοι τοῖς ἐπαξίοις καὶ φορολογοῦσι δὲ καὶ τὰς τέχνας τὰς περὶ τὴν γῆν ἐπιβλέπουσιν, ὕλοτόμων, τεκτόνων, χαλκέων; μεταλλευτῶν ὀδοποιοῦσι δὲ καὶ κατὰ δέκα στάδια στήλην τιθέασι, τὰς ἐκτροπὰς καὶ τὰ διαστήματα δηλοῦσαν.

51. Οἱ δ' ἀστυνόμοι εἰς ἦν πεντάδας διήρηται καὶ οἱ μὲν τὰ δημιουργικὰ σκοποῦσιν, οἱ δὲ ξενοδοχοῦσιν καὶ γὰρ καταγωγὰς νέμουσι καὶ τοῖς βίοις παρακολουθοῦσι, παρέδρους δόντες, καὶ προπέμπουσιν η ἄντον η τὰ χρήματα τῶν

---

1 The "city commissioners" (ἀστυνόμοι) at Athens (ten in number) had charge of the police, the streets, and the public works.
2 i.e. the market commissioners.
3 i.e. when the inundations destroyed the landmarks.
4 See § 40 above.
49. The seventh is that of the advisers and councillors of the king, who hold the chief offices of state, the judgesships, and the administration of everything. It is not legal for a man either to marry a wife from another caste or to change one's pursuit or work from one to another; nor yet for the same man to engage in several, except in case he should be one of the philosophers, for, Megasthenes says, the philosopher is permitted to do so on account of his superiority.

50. Of the officials, some are market commissioners, others are city commissioners, and others are in charge of the soldiers. Among these, the first keep the rivers improved and the land remeasured, as in Aegypt, and inspect the closed canals from which the water is distributed into the conduits, in order that all may have an equal use of it. The same men also have charge of the hunters and are authorized to reward or punish those who deserve either. They also collect the taxes and superintend the crafts connected with the land—those of wood-cutters, carpenters, workers in brass, and miners. And they make roads, and at every ten stadia place pillars showing the by-roads and the distances.

51. The city commissioners are divided into six groups of five each. One group looks after the arts of the handicraftsmen. Another group entertains strangers, for they assign them lodgings, follow closely their behaviour, giving them attendants, and either escort them forth or forward the property of those who die; and they take care of

\[5 \text{ i.e. partly as advisers, partly as spies (Tozer, op. cit., p. 320).}\
\[6 \text{ i.e. to their relatives.} \]
ἀποθανόντων, νοσούντων τε ἐπιμελοῦνται καὶ ἀποθανόντας θάπτουσι. τρίτοι δ' εἰσίν, οἱ τὰς γενέσεις καὶ θανάτους ἐξετάζουσι, πότε καὶ πῶς, τῶν τε φόρων χάριν καὶ ὅπως μὴ ἀφανεῖς εἶναι κρείττονς καὶ χείρους γοναὶ καὶ θάνατοι. τέταρτοι δ' 1 οἱ περὶ τὰς καπηλείας καὶ μεταβολὰς· οῖς μέτρων μέλει καὶ τῶν ὁραίων, ὅπως ὑπὸ συσσήμου πωλοῖτο. οὐκ ἔστι δὲ πλεῖω τὸν αὐτὸν μεταβάλλεσθαι, πλὴν εἰ δίπτοις ὑποτελοῖ φόρους. πέμπτοι δ' οἱ προεστῶτες τῶν δημουργουμένων καὶ πωλοῦντες ταῦτ' ὑπὸ συσσήμου, χωρίς μὲν τὰ καινά, χωρίς δὲ τὰ παλαιά· τῷ μυγνύντι δὲ ξημία. ἐκτοι δὲ καὶ ύστατοι οἱ τὰς δεκάτας ἐκλέγοντες τῶν πωλουμένων θάνατος δὲ τῷ κλέψαντι τὸ τέλος. ἰδία μὲν ἐκαστοὶ ταῦτα, κοινῇ δ' ἐπιμελοῦνται τῶν τε ἱδίων καὶ τῶν πολιτικῶν καὶ τῆς τῶν δημοσίων ἐπισκευής, τιμῶν 2 τε καὶ ἀγορᾶς καὶ λιμένων καὶ ἱερῶν.

52. Μετὰ δὲ τοὺς ἀστυνόμους τρίτη ἔστι συναρχία ἢ περὶ τὰ στρατιωτικά, καὶ αὕτη ταῖς πεντάσις ἐξαχῆ διωρισμένη· ὅν τὴν μὲν μετὰ τοῦ ναυαρχοῦ τάπτουσι, τὴν δὲ μετὰ τοῦ ἐπὶ τῶν βοίκων ξενών, δὴ ὅν ὅργανα κομίζεται καὶ τροφῆ αὐτοῖς τε καὶ κτήνεσι καὶ τὰ ἄλλα τὰ χρήσιμα τῆς στρατιᾶς. οὗτοι δὲ καὶ τοὺς δια-

1 δ', before οἱ, Meineke inserts.
2 τιμῶν, Meineke (following conj. of Kramer), emends to τειχῶν.

1 i.e. “the stamp impressed on weights and measures,” which were “tested every six months” (Tozer, op. cit., p. 320, quoting Lassen, op. cit., II. p. 572).
them when they are sick and bury them when they die. The third group is that of those who scrutinize births and deaths, when and how they take place, both for the sake of taxes and in order that births and deaths, whether better or worse, may not be unknown. The fourth group is that which has to do with sales and barter; and these look after measures and the fruits of the season, that the latter may be sold by stamp. But the same man cannot barter more than one thing without paying double taxes. The fifth group is that of those who have charge of the works made by artisans and sell these by stamp, the new apart from the old; and the man who mixes them is fined. The sixth and last group is that of those who collect a tenth part of the price of the things sold; and death is the penalty for the man who steals. These are the special duties performed by each group, but they all take care jointly of matters both private and public, and of the repairs of public works, of prices, market-places, harbours, and temples.

After the city commissioners there is a third joint administration, in charge of military affairs, which is also divided into six groups of five each. Of these groups, one is stationed with the admiral; another with the man in charge of the ox-teams, by which are transported instruments of war and food for both man and beast and all other requisites of the army. These also furnish the menials, I mean

---

2 *i.e.* the taxpayer who cheats the government.

3 Meineke emends the Greek word for “prices” to that for “walls” (see critical note), thus making “walls, market-places, harbours, and temples” in apposition with “public works.”
κόνον παρέχουσι, τυμπανιστάς, κωδωνοφόρους, ἔτι δὲ καὶ ἰπποκόμους καὶ μηχανοποιούς καὶ τοὺς 
τούτων ὑπηρέτας· ἐκπέμπουσι τε πρὸς κωδωνας 
τοὺς χορτολόγους, τιμὴ καὶ κολάσει τὸ τάχος 
κατασκευαζόμενοι καὶ τὴν ἀσφάλειαν. τρίτοι δὲ 
eἰσιν οἱ τῶν πεζῶν ἔπιμελουμένοι· τέταρτοι δ' οἱ 
tῶν ἰππῶν πέμπτοι δ' ἄρματων ἱκτοί δὲ ἐλε-
φάντων. βασιλικοί τε σταθμοὶ καὶ ἰπποῖς καὶ 
C 709 θηρίοις, βασιλικὸν δὲ καὶ ὀπλοφυλάκιον· παρα-
edωσι γὰρ ὁ στρατιωτὴς τὴν τε σκεῦν εἰς τὸ 
ὀπλοφυλάκιον καὶ τὸν ἰππὸν εἰς τὸν ἰππῶνα καὶ 
tὸ θηρίον ὁμοίως· χρῶνται δ' ἀχαλινώτοις. τὰ 
δ' ἄρματα ἐν ταῖς ὁδοῖς βοές ἔλκουσιν, οἱ δὲ 
ἰπποί ἀπὸ φορβείας ἁγοῦνται τοῦ μὴ παρεμπϊ-
πρασθαί τὰ σκέλη, μηδὲ τὸ πρόθυμον αὐτῶν 
tὸ ὑπὸ τοῖς ἄρμασιν ἀμβλύνεσθαι. δύο δ' εἰσίν 
ἐπὶ τὸ ἄρματι παραβάται πρὸς τῷ ἴμιόχῳ· ο δὲ 
tοῦ ἐλέφαντος ἴμιόχος τέταρτος, τρεῖς δ' οἱ ἀπ' 
αὐτοῦ τοξεύοντες.

53. Εὐτελείς δὲ κατὰ τὴν διαίταν Ἰνδὸι πάντες, 
μᾶλλον δ' ἐν ταῖς στρατεύσις· οὐδ' ἤχλω περίπτῳ 
χαίροντι· διότερ εὐκοσμοῦσι. πλείστη δ' ἐκεχει-
ρία περὶ τὰς κλωτάς· γενόμενος 1 γοῦν ἐν τῷ 
Σανδροκόττου στρατοπέδῳ φησιν ὁ Μεγασθένης, 
tετταράκοντα μυριάδων πλήθους ἱδρυμένουν, μηδε-
μιαν ἡμέραν ἰδεῖν ἀνυπεγμένα κλέμματα πλείονων 
ἡ διακοσίων δραχμῶν ἄξια, ἀγράφοις καὶ ταῦτα 
νόμοις χρωμένοις. οὐδὲ γὰρ γράμματα εἰδέναι

1 γενόμενος, Tzschucke and later editors, for γενομένου.

1 i.e. the elephants. 2 i.e. of royal ownership. 3 i.e. before they are used in battle.

86
drum-beaters, gong-carriers, as also grooms and machinists and their assistants; and they send forth the foragers to the sound of bells, and effect speed and safety by means of reward and punishment. The third group consists of those in charge of the infantry; the fourth, of those in charge of the horses; the fifth, of those in charge of the chariots; and the sixth, of those in charge of the elephants. The stalls for both horses and beasts\(^1\) are royal,\(^2\) and the armoury is also royal; for the soldier returns the equipment to the armoury, the horse to the royal horse-stable, and likewise the beast; and they use them without bridles. The chariots are drawn on the march by oxen; but the horses are led by halter, in order that their legs may not be chafed by harness, and also that the spirit they have when drawing chariots may not be dulled.\(^3\) There are two combatants in each chariot in addition to the charioteer; but the elephant carries four persons, the driver and three bowmen, and these three shoot arrows from the elephant's back.

53. All Indians live a simple life, and especially when they are on expeditions; and neither do they enjoy useless disturbances; and on this account they behave in an orderly manner. But their greatest self-restraint pertains to theft; at any rate, Megasthenes says that when he was in the camp of Sandrocottus, although the number in camp was forty thousand, he on no day saw reports of stolen articles that were worth more than two hundred drachmae; and that too among a people who use unwritten laws only. For, he continues, they have no knowledge of written letters,\(^4\) and regulate every

\(^{4}\) But cf. § 67 (below).
αὐτοὺς, ἀλλ' ἀπὸ μνήμης ἐκαστα διοικεῖσθαι· εὑρπαγεῖν¹ δ' ὁμοι διὰ τὴν ἀπλότητα καὶ τὴν εὐτέλειαν· οἰνὸν τε γὰρ οὗ πίνειν, ἀλλ' ἐν θυσίας μόνον, πίνειν δ' ἀπ' ὀρύζης ἀντὶ κριθίνων συντιθέντας· καὶ σιτία δὲ τὸ πλέον ὄρυζαν εἶναι ῥόφητην. καὶ ἐν τοῖς νόμοις δὲ καὶ συμβολαίοις τὴν ἀπλότητα ἔλεγχεσθαι ἐκ τοῦ μὴ πολυδύκους εἶναι· οὔτε γὰρ ὑποθήκης ² οὔτε παρακαταθήκης εἶναι δίκας, οὔδὲ μαρτύρων οὔτε σφραγίδων αὐτοῖς δεῖν, ἀλλὰ πιστεύειν παραβαλλομένους· καὶ τὰ ὁίκοι δὲ τὸ πλέον ἄφρουρεῖν. ταῦτα μὲν δὴ σωφρονικά, τάλλα δ' οὔδ' ³ ἀν τις ἀποδέξαιτο· τὸ μόνον διαιτάσθαι ἕκα ἐκ τὸ μὴ μίαν εἶναι πάσιν ὡραν κοινὴν δείπνον τε καὶ ἀρίστον, ἀλλ' ὅπως ἐκάστῳ φιλον. πρὸς γὰρ τὸν κοινωνικὸν καὶ τὸν πολιτικὸν βίον ἐκείνος κρεῖττον.

54. Γυμνασίων ⁴ δὲ μάλιστα τρίψιν δοκιμάζουσι καὶ ἄλλως καὶ διὰ σκυταλίδων ἐβεβείνων λεῖων ἐξομαλύσονται τὰ σώματα. λυταὶ δὲ καὶ αἱ ταφαὶ καὶ μικρὰ χῶματα. ὑπεναντίως δὲ τῇ ἀλλῇ λιτότητι κοσμοῦνται. χρυσοφοροῦσι γὰρ καὶ διαλίθῳ κόσμῳ χρωταί σινδόνας τε φοροῦσιν εὐανθεῖς καὶ σκιάδια αὐτοῖς ἔπεται· τὸ γὰρ κάλλος τιμῶντες ἁσκοῦσιν ὡσα καλλωπίζει τὴν ὄψιν. ἀλήθειαν τε ὅμωθες καὶ ἀρετὴν ἀποδέχονται· διότερ οὐδὲ τῇ ἡλικίᾳ τῶν γερόντων προνομίαν διδόσασιν, ἀν μὴ καὶ τῷ φρονεῖν πλεο-

---

¹ εὑρπαγεῖν F, ἑδ πράττειν other MSS.
² ὑποθήκης, Tyrwhitt and later editors, for ἐπιθήκης.
³ Instead of οὔδ', mezz and Corais and Meineke read οὐκ.
⁴ Γυμνασίων E, Γυμνάσιον other MSS.; so Corais and Meineke.
GEOGRAPHY, 15. I. 53-54

single thing from memory; but still they fare happily, because of their simplicity and their frugality; and indeed they do not drink wine, except at sacrifices, but drink a beverage which they make from rice instead of barley; and also that their food consists for the most part of rice porridge; and their simplicity is also proven in their laws and contracts, which arises from the fact that they are not litigious; for they do not have lawsuits over either pledges or deposits, or have need of witnesses or seals, but trust persons with whom they stake their interests; and further, they generally leave unguarded what they have at their homes. Now these things tend to sobriety; but no man could approve those other habits of theirs—of always eating alone and of not having one common hour for all for dinner and breakfast instead of eating as each one likes; for eating in the other way is more conducive to a social and civic life.

54. For exercise they approve most of all of rubbing; and, among other ways, they smooth out their bodies through means of smooth sticks of ebony. Their funerals are simple and their mounds small. But, contrary to their simplicity in general, they like to adorn themselves; for they wear apparel embroidered with gold, and use ornaments set with precious stones, and wear gay-coloured linen garments, and are accompanied with sun-shades; for, since they esteem beauty, they practise everything that can beautify their appearance. Further, they respect alike virtue and truth; and therefore they give no precedence even to the age of old men, unless these are also superior in wisdom. They

1 “Arrack” is the name of this beverage.
νεκτώσι. πολλάς δὲ γαμούσιν ὄντας παρὰ τῶν γονέων, λαμβάνουσι τε ἀντιδίδοντες ζεύγος βωών, ὅν τὰς μὲν εὐπειθείας ἵσχυν, τὰς δὲ ἄλλας ἡδονῆς καὶ πολυτεκνίας: εἰ δὲ μὴ σωφρονεῖν ἀναγκάσατεν, πορνεύειν ἔξεστι. θύει δὲ ούδεις ἐστεφανωμένος οὐδὲ θυμιᾶ οὐδὲ σπένδει, οὐδὲ σφάττουσι τὸ ἱερεῖον, ἀλλὰ πνύγουσι, ἵνα μὴ λελωβημένων, ἀλλ' ὀλόκληρον διδώται τῷ θεῷ. ψευδομαρτυρίας δ' ὁ ἄλοις ἀκρωτηριάζεται, ὡς τε πηρώσας οὐ τὰ αὐτὰ μόνον ἀντιπάσχει, ἀλλὰ καὶ χειροκοπεῖται· ἔαν δὲ καὶ τεχνίτον χεῖρα ἡ ὀφθαλμόν ἀφέληται, θανατοῦται. δούλοις δὲ οὖτοι μὲν φησι μηδένα Ἰνδών χρήσθαι, 'Ουν- σίκριτος δὲ τῶν ἐν τῇ Μουσικανοῦ τούτ' ἴδιον ἀποφαίνει, καὶ ως κατόρθωμα γε καθάπερ καὶ ἀλλα πολλὰ λέγει τῆς χώρας ταύτης κατορθώ- ματα, ὅς εὐνομωτάτης.

55. Τῷ βασιλεῖ δ' ἡ μὲν τοῦ σώματος θεραπεία διὰ γυναικῶν ἐστιν, ὄντων καὶ αὐτῶν παρὰ τῶν πατέρων ἔξω δὲ τῶν θυρῶν οἱ σωματοφύλακες καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν στρατιωτικῶν μεθύουτα δὲ κτείνασα γυνὴ βασιλέα γέρας ἔχει συνεῖναι τῷ ἐκείνου διαδεξαμένῳ· διαδέχονται δ' οἱ παῖδες. οὐδ' ὕπνοι μεθ' ἡμέραν ὁ βασιλεὺς, καὶ νύκτωρ δὲ καθ' ὕραν ἀναγκάζεται τὴν κοίτην ἀλλάττειν διὰ τὰς ἐπιβουλάς. τῶν τε μὴ ² κατὰ πόλεμον ἔξοδων μία μὲν ἐστὶν ἡ ἐπὶ τὰς κρίσεις, ἐν αἷς

---

1 εὐπειθείας ἢ.
2 τῶν τε μὴ, Corais and later editors, for τῶν γε μὴν.
marry many wives, whom they purchase from their parents, and they get them in exchange for a yoke of oxen, marrying some of them for the sake of prompt obedience and the others for the sake of pleasure and numerous offspring; but if the husband does not force them to be chaste, they are permitted to prostitute themselves. No one wears a garland when he makes sacrifice or burns incense or pours out a libation; neither do they cut the throat of the victim, but strangle it, in order that it may be given to the god in its entirety and not mutilated. Anyone caught guilty of false-witness has his hands and feet cut off, and anyone who maims a person not only suffers in return the same thing, but also has his hands cut off; and if he causes the loss of a hand or an eye of a craftsman, he is put to death. But although Megasthenes says that no Indian uses slaves, Onesicritus declares that slavery is peculiar to the Indians in the country of Musicanus, and tells what a success it is there, just as he mentions many other successes of this country, speaking of it as a country excellently governed.

55. Now the care of the king's person is committed to women, who also are purchased from their parents; and the body-guards and the rest of the military force are stationed outside the gates. And a woman who kills a king when he is drunk receives as her reward the privilege of consorting with his successor; and their children succeed to the throne. Again, the king does not sleep in daytime; and even at night he is forced to change his bed from time to time because of the plots against him. Among the non-military departures he makes from his palace, one is that to the courts, where he spends
διημερεύει διακούων οὐδὲν ἦττον κἂν ὁρὰ γένηται τῆς τοῦ σῶματος θεραπείας ἀυτῇ δ' ἐστὶν ἡ διὰ τῶν σκυταλίδων τρίψις (ἅμα γὰρ καὶ διακούει καὶ τρίβεται τεττάρων περιστάντων τριβέων), ἔτέρα δ' ἐστὶν ἡ ἐπὶ τὰς θυσίας ἔξοδος. τρίτη δ' ἐπὶ θήραν βακχική τις, κύκλω γυναικῶν περικεχυμένων, ἐξώθεν δὲ τῶν δορυφόρων· παρεσχούσιται δ' ἡ ὁδὸς, τῷ δὲ παρελθόντι ἐντὸς 1 μέχρι γυναικῶν θάνατος· προηγοῦνται δὲ τυμπανισταὶ καὶ κωδωνοφόροι. κυνηγεῖ τε δ' ἐν μὲν τοῖς περιφράγμασιν ἀπὸ βῆματος τοξεύων (παρεστάσις δ' ἐνοπλοί δύο ἡ τρεῖς γυναίκες), ἐν δὲ ταῖς ἀφράκτοις θήραις ἀπ' ἐλέφαντος· αἱ δὲ γυναίκες αἱ μὲν ἐφ' ἀρμάτων, αἱ δ' ἐφ' ἵππων, αἱ δὲ καὶ ἐπ' ἐλέφαντῶν, ὡς καὶ συστρατεύουσιν, ἥσκημέναι παντὶ ὀπλῷ.

56. Ἐχει μὲν οὖν καὶ ταῦτα πολλὴν ἀνήθειαν πρὸς τὰ παρ' ἡμῖν, ἐτι μέντοι μᾶλλον τὰ τιοάδε. φησὶ γὰρ τοὺς Καύκασον οἴκοντας ἐν τῷ φανερῷ γυναιξὶ μῦσγεσθαι καὶ σαρκοφαγεῖν τὰ τῶν συγγενῶν σῶματα· πετροκυλιστᾶς δ' εἶναι κερκοπιθήκους, οἱ λίθους κατακυλίσουσι κρημνοβατοῦντες ἐπὶ τοὺς διόκοντας· τὰ τε παρ' ἡμῖν ἡμερὰ ζωὰ τὰ πλείστα παρ' ἐκείνοις ἀγρία εἶναι· ἵππους τε λέγει μονοκέρωτας ἐλαφοκράνους· καλάμους δὲ, μῆκος μὲν τριάκοντα ὄργινων τοὺς C 711 ὀρθίους, τοὺς δὲ χαμαικλινεῖς πεντήκοντα, πάχος δὲ, ὡστε τὴν διάμετρον τοῖς μὲν εἶναι τρίπτηχυν, τοῖς δὲ διπλασίαν.

1 ἐκτὸς CDFmosw.
the whole day hearing cases to the end, none the less even if the hour comes for the care of his person. This care of his person consists of his being rubbed with sticks of wood, for while he is hearing the cases through, he is also rubbed by four men who stand around him and rub him. A second departure is that to the sacrifices. A third is that to a kind of Bacchic chase wherein he is surrounded by women, and, outside them, by the spear-bearers. The road is lined with ropes; and death is the penalty for anyone who passes inside the ropes to the women; and they are preceded by drum-beaters and gong-carriers. The king hunts in the fenced enclosures, shooting arrows from a platform in his chariot (two or three armed women stand beside him), and also in the unfenced hunting-grounds from an elephant; and the women ride partly in chariots, partly on horses, and partly on elephants, and they are equipped with all kinds of weapons, as they are when they go on military expeditions with the men.

56. Now these customs are very novel as compared with our own, but the following are still more so. For example, Megasthenes says that the men who inhabit the Caucasus have intercourse with the women in the open and that they eat the bodies of their kinsmen; and that the monkeys are stone-rollers, and, haunting precipices, roll stones down upon their pursuers; and that most of the animals which are tame in our country are wild in theirs. And he mentions horses with one horn and the head of a deer; and reeds, some straight up thirty fathoms in length, and others lying flat on the ground fifty fathoms, and so large that some are three cubits and others six in diameter.
STRABO

57. 'Τπερεκπιττων δ' ἐπὶ τὸ μυθώδες πεντα-
σπιθάμους ἀνθρώπους λέγει καὶ τρισπιθάμους,
ὅν τινα ἀμύκτηρας, ἀναπνοὰς ἔχοντας μόνον δύο
ὑπὲρ τοῦ στόματος· πρὸς δὲ τοὺς τρισπιθάμους
πόλεμον εἶναι ταῖς γεράνοις (ὅν καὶ Ὁμηρὸν
dηλοῦν) καὶ τοῖς πέρδιξιν, ὡς χρημομεγέθεις εἶναι
tούτοις δ' ἐκλέγειν αὐτῶν τὰ ὅλα καὶ φθείρειν,
ἐκεῖ γὰρ ὄστοκεῖν τὰς γεράνους· διόπερ μηδαμοῦ
μήτ' 1 ὀὰ εὐρίσκεσθαι γεράνως, μήτ' οὖν νεόττια·
πλειστάκις δ' ἐκπίπτειν γέρανοι χαλκῆν ἔχουσαι
ἀκίδα ἀπὸ τῶν ἐκείθεν πληγμάτων. ὅμως δὲ
καὶ τὰ περὶ τῶν Ἐνωτοκοιτῶν καὶ τῶν ἀγρίων
ἀνθρώπων καὶ ἄλλων τερατώδων. τοὺς μὲν οὖν
ἀγρίους μὴ κομισθῆναι παρὰ Σανδρόκοττον,
ἀποκαρτερεῖν γάρ· ἔχειν δὲ τὰς μὲν πτέρνας
πρόσθεν, τοὺς δὲ ταρσοὺς ὀπίσθεν καὶ τοὺς δακ-
τύλους. ἀστόμους δὲ τινας ἀχθῆναι, ἡμέρους
ἀνθρώπους, οἰκεῖν δὲ περὶ τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ Γάγγου,
τρέφεσθαι δ' ἅτμωις ὀπτῶν κρεών καὶ καρπῶν
καὶ ἀνθέων ὀσμαῖς, ἀντὶ τῶν στομάτων ἔχοντας
ἀναπνοάς, χαλεπαίνειν δὲ τοῖς δυσώδεσι, καὶ διὰ
tοῦτο περιγύνεσθαι μόλις, καὶ μάλιστα ἐν στρα-
tοπέδῳ. περὶ τῶν ἄλλων διηγεῖσθαι τοὺς
φιλοσόφους, 'Ωκύποδας τε 2 ἱστοροῦντας, ὑπ' ὅπων
μᾶλλον ἀπίόντας, Ἐνωτοκοίτας τε 3 ποδήρη τὰ
ὠτα ἔχοντας, ὡς ἐγκαθεύδειν, ἰσχυροὺς δ', ὅστ' ἀναπτάν
dένδρα καὶ ῥήττειν νευράν, Μονομμάτουν

1 μήτ', Corais and later editors, for μηδ'.
2 τε, Kramer, for δέ.
3 τε, Kramer, for δέ.

1 About 22½ inches.
2 Iliad 3. 6.
3 Cf. 2. 1. 9.
4 Swift-footed.
5 i.e. men that sleep in their ears.
94
57. But Megasthenes, going beyond all bounds to the realm of myth, speaks of people five spans long and three spans long, some without nostrils, having instead merely two breathing orifices above their mouths; and he says that it is the people three spans long that carry on war with the cranes (the war to which Homer refers) and with the partridges, which are as large as geese; and that these people pick out and destroy the eggs of the cranes, which, he adds, lay eggs there; and that it is on this account that neither eggs nor, of course, young cranes are anywhere to be found; and that very often a crane escapes from the fights there with a bronze arrow-point in its body. Like this, also, are the stories of the people that sleep in their ears, and the wild people, and other monstrosities. Now the wild people, he continues, could not be brought to Sandrocottus, for they would starve themselves to death; and they have their heels in front, with toes and flat of the foot behind; but certain mouthless people were brought to him, a gentle folk; and they live round the sources of the Ganges; and they sustain themselves by means of vapours from roasted meats and odours from fruits and flowers, since instead of mouths they have only breathing orifices; and they suffer pain when they breathe bad odours, and on this account can hardly survive, particularly in a camp. He says that the other peoples were described to him by the philosophers, who reported the Ocyopes, a people who run away faster than horses; and Enotocoetae, who have ears that extend to their feet, so that they can sleep in them, and are strong enough to pluck up trees and to break bowstrings; and another people,
τε ἄλλους, ὡτα μὲν ἔχοντας κυνός, ἐν μέσῳ δὲ τῷ μετώπῳ τὸν ὀφθαλμόν, ὀρθοχαίτας, λασίους τὰ στήθη· τοὺς δὲ Ἀμύκτηρας εἶναι παμφάγους, ἀμοφάγους, ὀλιγοχροιῶν, πρὸ γῆρως θυσικοντας· τοῦ δὲ στόματος τὸ ἄνω προχειλότερον εἶναι πολύ· περὶ δὲ τῶν χιλιετῶν Ἑπερβορέων τὰ αὐτὰ λέγει Σιμωνίδη καὶ Πινδάρω καὶ ἄλλοις μυθολόγοις. μῦθος δὲ καὶ τὸ ύπὸ Τιμαγένους λεγθέν, ὃ τι χαλκὸς ὑοῖο σταλαγμοῖς χαλκοῖς καὶ σύροιτο. ἐγγυτέρω δὲ πίστεώς φησιν ὁ Μεγασθένης, ὃ τι οἱ ποταμοὶ καταφέροιεν ψῆγμα χρυσῷ καὶ ἅπ' αὐτῶν φόρος ἀπάγοιτο τῷ βασιλεῖ· τούτῳ γὰρ καὶ ἐν Ἰβηρίᾳ συμβαίνει.

58. Περὶ δὲ τῶν φιλοσοφῶν λέγων τοὺς μὲν ὀρεινοὺς αὐτῶν φησιν ύμηττὰς εἶναι τοῦ Διονύσου, δεικνύντας τεκμήρια τὴν ἀγρίαν ἀμπελοῦ, παρὰ μόνοις ἐνομένην, καὶ κιττὸν καὶ δάφνην καὶ μυρόλην καὶ πύξον καὶ ἀλλὰ τῶν ἁειθαλῶν, ὅπ' ἐμιδέν εἶναι πέραν Ἐυφράτου, πλὴν ἐν παραδείσοις σπάνια καὶ μετὰ πολλὴς ἐπιμελείας σωζόντων. C 712 μενα· Διονυσιακοὶ δὲ καὶ τὸ σινδονοφορεῖν καὶ τὸ μιτροῦσχαι καὶ μυροῦσχαι καὶ βαύτεσθαι ἄνθινα καὶ τοὺς βασιλεῖς κωδωνοφορεῖσθαι καὶ τυπανίζεσθαι κατὰ τὰς ἐξόδους τοὺς δὲ πεδιασίους τὸν Ἦρακλέα τιμᾶν. ταῦτα μὲν οὖν μυθώδη καὶ ὑπὸ πολλῶν ἠλεγχόμενα, καὶ μάλιστα τὰ περὶ τῆς ἀμπέλου καὶ τοῦ ὀίνου πέραν γὰρ τοῦ Ἐυφράτου καὶ τῆς Ἀρμενίας ἑστὶ πολλὴ καὶ η Μεσοποταμία

1 ὡς, before ὅτι, omitted by με and the editors.
2 After μόνοις F reads αὐτοῖς.

1 i.e. one-eyed. 2 “People without noses.”
Monommati, with dog's ears, with the eye in the middle of the forehead, with hair standing erect, and with shaggy breasts; and that the Amycteres eat everything, including raw meat, and live but a short time, dying before old age; and the upper lip protrudes much more than the lower. Concerning the Hyperboreans who live a thousand years he says the same things as Simonides and Pindar and other myth-tellers. The statement of Timagenes is also a myth, that brass rained from the sky in brazen drops and was swept down. But Megasthenes is nearer the truth when he says that the rivers carry down gold-dust and that part of it is paid as a tax to the king; for this is also the case in Iberia.

58. Speaking of the philosophers, Megasthenes says that those who inhabit the mountains hymn the praises of Dionysus and point out as evidences the wild grape-vine, which grows in their country alone, and the ivy, laurel, myrtle, box-tree, and other evergreens, no one of which is found on the far side of the Euphrates except a few in parks, which can be kept alive only with great care; and that the custom of wearing linen garments, mitres, and gay-coloured garments, and for the king to be attended by gong-carriers and drum-beaters on his departures from the palace, are also Dionysiac; but the philosophers in the plains worship Heracles. Now these statements of Megasthenes are mythical and refuted by many writers, and particularly those about the vine and wine; for much of Armenia, and the whole of Mesopotamia, and the part of Media

3 i.e. by rivers. 4 See 3. 2. 8. 5 i.e. evidences of his former presence there (see 11. 5. 5).
ολη καὶ η ὜δηνα ἐξῆς μέχρι καὶ Περσίδος καὶ Καρμανίας τούτων δὲ τῶν ἑθνῶν ἐκάστου πολὺ μέρος εὐάμπελον καὶ εὐοινών λέγεται.

59. Ἀλλην δὲ διαίρεσιν ποιεῖται περὶ τῶν φιλοσόφων, δύο γένη φάσκων, δόν τούς μὲν Βραχμάνας καλεί, τούς δὲ Γαρμάνας. τούς μὲν οὖν Βραχμάνας εὐδοκιμεῖν μᾶλλον,1 μᾶλλον γὰρ καὶ ὁμολογεῖν ἐν τοῖς δόγμασιν ἦδη δ’ εὐθὺς καὶ κυριεύονσι ἔχειν ἐπιμελητάς, λογίους ἀνδρας, οὓς προσιόντας λόγῳ 2 μὲν ἑπάδειν δοκεῖν καὶ τὴν μητέρα καὶ τὸν κυόμενον εἰς ευτεκνίαν, τὸ δ’ ἀληθές σωφρονίκας τινας παραινέσεις καὶ ὑποθήκας διδόναι τὰς δ’ ἤδιστα ἀκρωμένας μάλιστα εὐτέκνους εἶναι νομίζεσθαι μετὰ δὲ τὴν γένεσιν ἄλλους καὶ ἄλλους διαδέχεσθαι τὴν ἐπιμέλειαν, ἀεὶ τῆς μείζονος ἠλικίας χαριστικῶν τυγχανοῦσης διδασκάλων διατρίβειν δὲ τοὺς φιλοσόφους ἐν ἄλσει πρὸ τῆς πόλεως ὑπὸ περιβόλῳ συμμέτρῳ, λιτῶς ζῶντας ἐν στιβάσι καὶ δοραίς, ἀπεχομένου ἐμψύχων καὶ ἀφροδισίων, ἀκρωμένους λόγον σπουδαίων, μεταδιόντας καὶ τοῖς ἐθέλουσι τοῦ δ’ ἀκρωμένου οὔτε λαλῆσαι θέμις οὔτε χρέμψασθαι, ἀλλ’ οὔδε πτύσαι ἢ ἐκβάλλεσθαι τῆς συνουσίας τῆς ἡμέραν ἑκείνην, ὡς ἀκολασταίνοντα: ἐτῆ δ’ ἐπτὰ καὶ τριάκοντα οὖτως ἐξαναταντα ἀναχωρεῖν εἰς τὴν ἐαυτοῦ κτῆσιν ἐκαστον, καὶ ἥν ἀδεῶς καὶ ἀνειμένως μᾶλλον,

1 μᾶλλον, Corais aud later editors insert.
2 λόγῳ, Tyrwhitt and later editors, for λόγων CDFh, λόγον other MSS.

1 Brahmans.
2 Sramans.
next thereafter, extending as far as Persis and Carmania, are on the far side of the Euphrates; and a large part of the country of each of these tribes is said to have good vines and good wine.

59. Megasthenes makes another division in his discussion of the philosophers, asserting that there are two kinds of them, one kind called Brachmanes and the other Garmanes; that the Brachmanes, however, enjoy fairer repute, for they are more in agreement in their dogmas; and that from conception, while in the womb, the children are under the care of learned men, who are reputed to go to the mother and the unborn child, and, ostensibly, to enchant them to a happy birth, but in truth to give prudent suggestions and advice; and that the women who hear them with the greatest pleasure are believed to be the most fortunate in their offspring; and that after the birth of children different persons, one after another, succeed to the care of them, the children always getting more accomplished teachers as they advance in years; and that the philosophers tarry in a grove in front of the city in an enclosure merely commensurate with their needs, leading a frugal life, lying on straw mattresses and skins, abstaining from animal food and the delights of love, and hearkening only to earnest words, and communicating also with anyone who wishes to hear them; and that the hearer is forbidden either to talk or to cough or even to spit; and if he does, he is banished from association with them for that day as a man who has no control over himself; and that, after having lived in this way for thirty-seven years, they retire, each man to his own possessions, where they live more freely and under less restraint,
Strabo

σινδονοφοροῦντα καὶ χρυσοφοροῦντα μετρίως ἐν τοῖς ὁσί καὶ ταῖς χερσί, προσφερόμενον σάρκας τῶν μὴ πρὸς τὴν χρείαν συνεργῶν ξών, δριμέων καὶ ἀρτυτῶν ἀπεχόμενον γαμεῖν δ’ ὅτι πλείστας εἰς πολυτεκνίαν, ἐκ πολλῶν γὰρ καὶ τὰ σπουδαῖα πλείω γίνεσθαι ἂν ἄδουλοσι τε τὴν ἐκ τέκνων υπηρεσίαν, ἐγγυτάτω οὖσαι, πλείω δεῖν παρασκευάζεσθαι. ¹ ταῖς δὲ γυναιξὶ ταῖς γαμεταῖς μὴ συμφιλοσοφεῖν τοὺς Βραχμάνας· εἰ μὲν μοχθηραὶ γένουτο, ἵνα μὴ τί τῶν οὐ θεμιτῶν ἐκφέροιει εἰς τοὺς βεβήλους· εἰ δὲ σπουδαίαι, μὴ καταλείποιειν αὐτοὺς· οὐδένα γὰρ ἡδονῆς καὶ πόνου καταφοροῦντα, ὡς δ’ αὐτῶς ξώης καὶ θανάτου, ἐθέλειν ύφ’ ἐτέρῳ εἶναι· τοιούτοις δ’ εἶναι τὸν σπουδαίον καὶ τὴν σπουδαίαν. πλείστους δ’ αὐτοῖς εἶναι λόγους περὶ τοῦ θανάτου· νομίζειν γὰρ δὴ τὸν μὲν ἐνθάδε βίον ὡς ἀν ἀκμὴν κυμίδενων εἶναι, τὸν δὲ θάνατον γένεσιν εἰς τὸν ὄντως βίον καὶ τὸν εὐδαίμονα τοὺς φιλοσοφήσασι· διὸ τῇ ἀσκησεὶ πλείστη χρήσθαι πρὸς τὸ ἐτοιμοθάνατον· ἀγαθὸν δὲ ἢ κακὸν μηδὲν εἶναι τῶν συμβαινόντων ἀνθρώπως, οὐ γὰρ ἀν τοῖς αὐτοῖς τοὺς μὲν ἄχθεσθαι, τοὺς δὲ χαίρειν, ἐνυπνώδεις ὑπολήψεις ἔχουτας, καὶ τοὺς αὐτοὺς τοῖς αὐτοῖς τοτὲ μὲν ἄχθεσθαι. τοτὲ δ’ αὐτές χαίρειν μεταβαλλομένους τὰ δὲ περὶ φύσιν, τὰ μὲν εὐθείαν ἐμφαίνειν

C 713

The words ἀν ... παρασκευάζεσθαι are omitted by tozer; the other MSS. read ἀναδυόμενον τε τὴν ἐκ τέκνων μὴ ἔχουσι δούλους υπηρεσίαν (μὴ ἔχουσι δούλουs obviously being a gloss). The above reading is that of Kramer and later editors.

¹ Tozer (Selections, note ad loc.) interprets τὰ σπουδαία to mean the number of “their comforts.”
wearing linen garments, ornaments of gold in moderation in their ears and on their hands, and partake of meats of animals that are of no help to man in his work, but abstain from pungent and seasoned food; and that they marry as many wives as possible, in order to have numerous children, for from many wives the number of earnest children would be greater; and, since they have no servants, it is necessary for them to provide for more service from children—the service that is nearest at hand; but that the Brachmanes do not share their philosophy with their wedded wives, for fear, in the first place, that they might tell some forbidden secret to the profane if they became corrupt, and, secondly, that they might desert them if they became earnest, for no person who has contempt for pleasure and toil, and likewise for life and death, is willing to be subject to another; and that the earnest man and the earnest woman are such persons; and that they converse more about death than anything else, for they believe that the life here is, as it were, that of a babe still in the womb, and that death, to those who have devoted themselves to philosophy, is birth into the true life, that is, the happy life; and that they therefore discipline themselves most of all to be ready for death; and that they believe that nothing that happens to mankind is good or bad, for otherwise some would not be grieved and others delighted by the same things, both having dream-like notions, and that the same persons cannot at one time be grieved and then in turn change and be delighted by the same things. As for the opinions of the Brachmanes about the natural world, Megasthenes says that some of their opinions indicate mental
φησίν, ἐν ἑργοις γὰρ αὐτούς κρείττους ὡς λόγους εἶναι, διὰ μῦθων τὰ πολλὰ πιστουμένους· περὶ πολλῶν δὲ τοῖς "Ελλησίων ὁμοδοξεῖν· ὥστι γὰρ γενητὸς ὁ κόσμος καὶ φθαρτός, λέγειν κάκεινος, καὶ ὅτι σφαιροειδῆς, ὁ τε διοικῶν αὐτὸν καὶ ποιῶν θεός δι’ ὅλου διαπεφοίτηκεν 1 αὐτοῦ· ἀρχαὶ δὲ τῶν μὲν συμπάντων ἑτεραι, τῆς δὲ κοσμοποίας τὸ ὑδωρ· πρὸς δὲ τοῖς τέτταρσι στοιχείοις πέμπτη τίς ἔστι φύσις, ἐξ ὡς ὁ οὐρανὸς καὶ τὰ ἀστρα· γῆ δὲ ἐν μέσῳ ἱδρυται τοῦ παντοῦ. καὶ περὶ σπέρματος δὲ καὶ ψυχῆς ὁμοία λέγεται καὶ ἄλλα πλείο· παραπλέκουσι δὲ καὶ μῦθους, ὡσπερ καὶ Πλάτων περὶ τε ἀφθαρσίας ψυχῆς καὶ τῶν καθ’ ἄδου κρίσεων καὶ ἄλλα τοιαῦτα. περὶ μὲν τῶν Βραχμάνων ταῦτα λέγει.

60. Τοὺς δὲ Γαρμάνας,2 τοὺς μὲν ἐντιμοτάτους Τλοβίους φησίν ὄνομάζεσθαι, ζῶντας ἐν ταῖς ὤλαις ἀπὸ φύλλων καὶ καρπῶν ἀγρίων, ἐσθήτος 3 φλοιῶν δενδρεῖν, ψυχοδισίων χωρίς καὶ οἶνον· τοῖς δὲ βασιλείσι συνεῖναι, δι’ ἀγγέλων πυνθανομένους περὶ τῶν αἰτίων καὶ δι’ ἐκείνων θεραπεύουσι καὶ λιτανεύουσι τὸ θείον· μετὰ δὲ τοὺς Τλοβίους δευτερεύειν κατὰ τιμὴν τοὺς ιατρικούς

1 διαπεφοίτηκεν Γ.
2 Γαρμάνας Φ, Γερμάνας other MSS.
3 ἐσθήτας δ’ ἐχεῖν ἀπὸ μον, Tzschucke and Corais; Kramer thinks that ὄσιος has fallen out of the MSS. after ἐσθήτος; Meineke conj. ἐσθητοῖς φλοιῆς δενδρεῖς.

1 i.e. therefore, not everlasting (see Aristotle, Caed. 1. 11).
2 See 1. 1. 20 and footnote.
3 Brahma.
simplicity, for the Brachmanes are better in deeds than in words, since they confirm most of their beliefs through the use of myths; and that they are of the same opinion as the Greeks about many things; for example, their opinion that the universe was created and is destructible, as also the Greeks assert, and that it is spherical in shape, and that the god who made it and regulates it pervades the whole of it; and that the primal elements of all things else are different, but that water was the primal element of all creation; and that, in addition to the four elements, there is a fifth natural element of which the heavens and the heavenly bodies are composed; and that the earth is situated in the centre of the universe. And writers mention similar opinions of the Brachmanes about the seed and the soul, as also several other opinions of theirs. And they also weave in myths, like Plato, about the immortality of the soul and the judgments in Hades and other things of this kind. So much for his account of the Brachmanes.

60. As for the Garmanes, he says that the most honourable of them are named Hylobii and that they live in forests, subsisting on leaves and wild fruits, clothed with the bark of trees, and abstaining from wine and the delights of love; and that they communicate with the kings, who through messengers inquire about the causes of things and through the Hylobii worship and supplicate the Divinity; and that, after the Hylobii, the physicians are second in

4 "They supposed the Creator to have dropped into the water a seed, from which the world-egg sprang" (Tozer, p. 327, quoting Larsen).

5 Forest-dwellers (in 16. 2. 39 called Gymno-sophists).
καὶ ὡς περὶ τῶν ἀνθρωπον φιλοσόφους, λιτοὺς μὲν, μὴ ἄγραύλους δὲ, ὁρὺξ καὶ ἀλφίτους τρεφο-
μένους, ἀ παρέχειν αὐτοῖς πάντα τὸν αἰτηθέντα
καὶ ὑποδεξάμενον ξένια: δύνασθαι δὲ καὶ πολυ-
γόνους ποιεῖν καὶ ἀρρενογόνους καὶ θηλυγόνους
diὰ φαρμακευτικῆς· τὴν δὲ ἰατρείαν διὰ σιτίων
tὸ πλέον, οὐ διὰ φαρμάκων ἐπιτελεῖσθαι· τῶν
φαρμάκων δὲ μάλιστα εὐδοκιμεῖν τὰ ἐπίχριστα
καὶ τὰ καταπλάσματα, τάλλα δὲ κακουργίας
πολὺ μετέχειν· ἀσκεῖν δὲ καὶ τούτους κάκεινος
καρτερίαν, τὴν τε ἐν πόνοις καὶ τὴν ἐν ταῖς
ἐπιμοναῖς, ὡστ' ἐφ' ἐνὸς σχήματος ἀκίνητον
dιατελέσαι τὴν ἠμέραν ὅλην· ἄλλους δ' εἶναι
τοὺς μὲν μαντικοὺς καὶ ἐπιφώνοι καὶ τῶν περὶ
tους κατοιχομένους λόγων καὶ νομίμων ἐμπείρους,
ἐπαιτοῦντας καὶ κατὰ κόμας καὶ πόλεις, τοὺς
dὲ χαριστέρους μὲν τούτων καὶ ἀστειωτέρους,
οὐδ' αὐτοὺς δὲ ἀπεχομένους τῶν καθ' ἀδὴν
θρυλομένων, ὡσα δοκεῖ πρὸς εὐσέβειαν καὶ
όσιότητα· συμφιλοσοφεῖν δ' ἐνίοις καὶ γυναίκας,
ἀπεχωμένας καὶ αὐτὰς ἀφροδισίων.

61. Ἀριστόβουλος δὲ τῶν ἐν Ταξίλοις σοφι-
στῶν ἰδεῖν δύο φησί, Βραχμᾶνας ἀμφοτέρους, τὸν
μὲν πρεσβύτερον ἐξουρημένον, τὸν δὲ νεότερον
κομῆτην, ἀμφοτέροις δ' ἀκολουθεῖν μαθητάς· τὸν
μὲν οὖν ἄλλον χρόνον κατ' ἀγορᾶν διατρίβειν,
tιμωμένους ἀντὶ συμβούλων, ἔξουσίαν ἔχοντας, δ' ὁ
tι βούλονται τῶν ἁδύων, φέρεσθαι δωρεάν· ὅτι δ'

1 ἄγραύλους E, ὑγραύλους other MSS. 2 ἄδου moz. 3 After ὀσιότητα Corais inserts τελευ. 

1 Cf. §§ 61, 63 (below). 

104
honour, and that they are, as it were, humanitarian philosophers, men who are of frugal habits but do not live out of doors, and subsist upon rice and barley-groats, which are given to them by everyone of whom they beg or who offers them hospitality; and that through sorcery they can cause people to have numerous offspring, and to have either male or female children; and that they cure diseases mostly through means of cereals, and not through means of medicaments; and that, among their medicaments, their ointments and their poultices are most esteemed, but that the rest of their remedies have much in them that is bad; and that both this class and the other practise such endurance, both in toils and in perseverance, that they stay in one posture all day long without moving; and that there are also diviners and enchanters, who are skilled both in the rites and in the customs pertaining to the deceased, and go about begging alms from village to village and from city to city; and that there are others more accomplished and refined than these, but that even these themselves do not abstain from the common talk about Hades, insofar as it is thought to be conducive to piety and holiness; and that women, as well as men, study philosophy with some of them, and that the women likewise abstain from the delights of love.

61. Aristobulus says that he saw two of the sophists at Taxila, both Brachmanes; and that the elder had had his head shaved but that the younger had long hair, and that both were followed by disciples; and that when not otherwise engaged they spent their time in the market-place, being honoured as counsellors and being authorized to take as a gift any merchandise they wished; and
ἀν προσίωσι, κυταχεῖ ἀυτῶν τοὺς σησαμίνου λίπους, ὥστε καὶ κατὰ τῶν ὄμματος ρεῖν· τοῦ τε μέλιτος πολλοῦ προκειμένου καὶ τοῦ σησάμου, μάζας ποιομένους τρέφεσθαι δωρεάν· παρερχομένους δὲ καὶ πρὸς τὴν Ἀλεξάνδρου τρῶπεζαν, παραστάντας δειπνεῖν καὶ 1 καρτερίαν διδάσκειν, παραχωροῦντας εἰς τινὰ τόπον πλησίον, ὅπου τὸν μὲν πρεσβύτερον, πεσόντα ὑπτιον, ἀνέχεσθαι τὸν ἥλιων καὶ τῶν ὴμβρων (ἵδη γὰρ ύειν, ἀρχομένου τοῦ ἔαρος), τὸν δὲ ἐστάναι μονοσκελῆ, ξύλῳ ἐπηρμένου ἀμφότερας ταῖς χερσίν ὅσον τρίπηχυ, κάμνοντος δὲ τοῦ σκέλους, ἐπὶ θάτερον μεταφέρειν τὴν βάσιν καὶ διατελεῖν οὕτως τὴν ἴμεραν ὄλην· φανὴν δὲ ἐγκρατέστερον μακρῷ τὸν νεῶτερον· συνακολούθησαν γὰρ μικρὰ τῷ βασιλεὶ ταχὺ ἀναστρέψαι πάλιν ἐπ᾽ οἴκου, μετιόντος τε, αὐτὸν κελεύσαι ἤκειν, εἰ τοῦ βούλεται τυγχάνειν· τὸν δὲ συναπάραι μέχρι τέλους καὶ μεταμφιάσασθαι καὶ μεταθέσθαι τὴν διάταν, συνόντα τῷ βασιλεί· ἐπιτιμώμενον δὲ ὑπὸ τινῶν λέγειν, ὃς ἐκπληρώσειε τὰ τεττάρακοντα ἐτη τῆς ἀσκῆσεως, ἀ ὑπέσχετο. Ἀλέξανδρον δὲ τοῖς παισίν αὐτοῦ δοῦναι δωρεάν.

62. Τῶν δ' ἐν Ταξίλοις νομίμων καὶνὰ καὶ ἀθηνή λέγει· τὸ τε τοὺς μὴ δυναμένους ἐκδιδόναι τὰς παίδας ὑπὸ πενίας προάγει εἰς ἀγορᾶν ἐν ἀκμῇ τῆς ὀρας, κόχλω 2 τε καὶ τυμπάνος (ὅσπερ καὶ τὸ πολεμικὸν σημαίνουσιν), ὄχλον προσκληθέντος, τῷ δὲ προσέλθοντι τὰ ὀπίσθια πρῶτον ἀνασύ-

1 καὶ, Corais and later editors insert.
2 κόχλω CFx, ὄχλω other MSS.

106
that anyone whom they accosted poured over them sesame oil, in such profusion that it flowed down over their eyes; and that since quantities of honey and sesame were put out for sale, they made cakes of it and subsisted free of charge; and that they came up to the table of Alexander, ate dinner standing, and taught him a lesson in endurance by retiring to a place near by, where the elder fell to the ground on his back and endured the sun’s rays and the rains (for it was now raining, since the spring of the year had begun); and that the younger stood on one leg holding aloft in both hands a log about three cubits in length, and when one leg tired he changed the support to the other and kept this up all day long; and that the younger showed a far greater self-mastery than the elder; for although the younger followed the king a short distance, he soon turned back again towards home, and when the king went after him, the man bade him to come himself if he wanted anything of him; but that the elder accompanied the king to the end, and when he was with him changed his dress and mode of life; and that he said, when reproached by some, that he had completed the forty years of discipline which he had promised to observe; and that Alexander gave his children a present.

62. Aristobulus mentions some novel and unusual customs at Taxila: those who by reason of poverty are unable to marry off their daughters, lead them forth to the market-place in the flower of their age to the sound of both trumpets and drums (precisely the instruments used to signal the call to battle), thus assembling a crowd; and to any man who comes forward they first expose her rear parts up
resethai wéxor tón ómow, eìta tά prósathan, ápósa-
san dè kai sýmpieisóteisan, éf' oís ãn doqí, 
sýnoukeiì kai tó ymvì réptpethain tón tekelenv-
kóta: tó dè pleviouns ìhein ymnakías kóinw kai 
állon, pàrà tìsi d' ákouei và xei kai syngkata-
kaiouménas tás ymnakías tois vàndrásw asiménas, 
tás dè mì úpomeinússas ádóxeìn èíhrtaí kai állois 
tauíta.

63. 'Ounisíkritos dè pefphìnav ìhstin avtós 
C 715 dialéxómenos tois sofiástais tòutois: ákouei vàr 
tón 'Álèxandron, òs ymnóll diatéleion kai kar-
terías épimeloiýto oí ãndrwbopoi, èn tìmè te 
ágoínto plevísth, pàr' álloan dè mì bádizouen 
klhenteis, álla keleúoiou ekeíous foitáv pàr' 
avtów, eì toù metasxhein èheloíne wón prattó-
ménon ì legeoménwn ùp' avtów toiwntw dh' òntw, 
épeidi' òute avtò prèpein eòdokei pàr' èkeíous 
foitáv òute èkeíous biaxèsthai pàrà tà nótria 
pòiéin ti ákouata, avtós èfhi pefphìnav katal-
labein dè ãndrás pevtekaídeka àp' stadiów éiko-
si 1 tís póleow, álloan èn álloù èxhìmati èstôta ì 
kathímenou ì keímenon ymnwón, ákíntòtw òws èstew-
ras, eit' àperchómenon eis tìn póliw xaléptw-
tatov d' éinai tò tòv ìliw ùpomeinai ñutw 
ñrermw, åste tów álloan mìnèna ùpomeínein 
ymnóis èpibìnav tois posì tís yús ràdèw kata 
messìmbria.

64. Dialéxèthiav d' ìnv tòutw Kàlánw, òn kai 
synakolovthēsai tòv Basilei méchrì Persídósw kai

1 òkto F.

1 See § 59 (above).
to the shoulders and then her front parts, and if she pleases him, and at the same time allows herself to be persuaded, on approved terms, he marries her; and the dead are thrown out to be devoured by vultures; and to have several wives is a custom common also to others. And he further says that he heard that among certain tribes wives were glad to be burned up along with their deceased husbands, and that those who would not submit to it were held in disgrace; and this custom is also mentioned by other writers.

63. Onesicritus says that he himself was sent to converse with these sophists; for Alexander had heard that the people always went naked and devoted themselves to endurance, and that they were held in very great honour, and that they did not visit other people when invited, but bade them to visit them if they wished to participate in anything they did or said; and that therefore, such being the case, since to Alexander it did not seem fitting either to visit them or to force them against their will to do anything contrary to their ancestral customs, he himself was sent; and that he found fifteen men at a distance of twenty stadia from the city, who were in different postures, standing or sitting or lying naked and motionless till evening, and that they then returned to the city; and that it was very hard to endure the sun, which was so hot that at midday no one else could easily endure walking on the ground with bare feet.

64. Onesicritus says that he conversed with one of these sophists, Calanus, who accompanied the king as far as Persis and died in accordance with the

2 See § 30 (above); and cf. Diodorus Siculus 19. 23.
ἀποθανεῖν τῷ πατρίῳ νόμῳ, τεθέντα ἐπὶ πυρκαίων, τότε ὁ ἐπὶ λίθων τυχεῖν κείμενον προσιών ὁυ καὶ προσαγορεύσας εἴπειν ἐφη, διότι πεμφθείς παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως ἄκροασόμενος τῆς σοφίας αὐτῶν, καὶ ἀπαγγελῶν πρὸς αὐτῶν εἴ ὁυν μηδείς εἰη φθόνος, ἔτοιμος εἰη μετασχεῖν τῆς ἄκροασεως· ἰδόντα δ' ἐκεῖνον χλαμύδα καὶ καινίαν φοροῦντα καὶ κρητίδα, καταγελάσατα, Τὸ παλαιὸν, φάναι, πάντ' ἦν ἀλφίτων καὶ ἀλεύρων πλήρη, καθάπερ νῦν κόνεως· καὶ κρῆναι δ' ἔρρεον, αἱ μὲν ὑδατος, γαλάκτος δ' ἄλλαι, καὶ ὀμοίως μέλιτος, αἱ δ' οἴνου, τινὲς δ' ἔλαιον· ὑπὸ πλησμονῆς δ' οἱ ἀνθρωποὶ καὶ τρυφῆς εἰς ὕβριν ἐξεπεσον. Ζεὺς δὲ μισήσας τὴν κατάστασιν ἡφανυσε πάντα καὶ διὰ πόνου τὸν βιον ἀπέδειξε. σοφροσύνης δὲ καὶ τῆς ἀλλης ἀρετῆς παρελθούσης εἰς μέσον, πάλιν εὔπορία τῶν ἀγαθῶν ὑπῆρξεν. ἐγγὺς δ' ἐστὶν ἐδὴ νυνὶ κόρου καὶ ὕβρεως τὸ πράγμα, κινδυνεύει τε ἀφανισμὸς τῶν ὄντων γενέσθαι. ταῦτα εἰπόνται κελεύειν, εἰ βούλοιτο ἄκροασθαι, καταθέμενον τὴν σκευὴν γυμνὸν ἐπὶ τῶν αὐτῶν λίθων κείμενον, μετέχει μὲν ὑπὸ τῶν λόγων, ἀπορουμένου δὲ αὐτοῦ, Μάνδανιν, ὅσπερ ἦν πρεσβύτατος καὶ σοφῶτατος αὐτῶν, τὸν μὲν ἑπιπλῆξαι ὡς ὑβριστήν, καὶ ταῦτα ὑβρεῖς κατηγορήσαντα, αὐτὸν δὲ προσκαλέσασθαι καὶ εἰπεῖν, ως τὸν μὲν βασιλέα ἐπαινοῦν, διότι ἀρχὴν

1 Instead of Μάνδανιν E reads κάνδανι; and the name given by Arrian (Exp. 7. 2. 2) and Plutarch (Alex. 8. 65) is Δάνδαμις; but in Strabo the MSS. again read Μάνδανιν in § 68 (below).

1 See end of this paragraph.
ancestral custom, being placed upon a pyre and burned up.\textsuperscript{1} He says that Calanus happened to be lying on stones when he first saw him; that he therefore approached him and greeted him; and told him that he had been sent by the king to learn the wisdom of the sophists and report it to him, and that if there was no objection he was ready to hear his teachings; and that when Calanus saw the mantle and broad-brimmed hat and boots he wore, he laughed at him and said: "In olden times the world was full of barley-meal and wheaten-meal, as now of dust; and fountains then flowed, some with water, others with milk and likewise with honey, and others with wine, and some with olive oil; but, by reason of his gluttony and luxury, man fell into arrogance beyond bounds. But Zeus, hating this state of things, destroyed everything and appointed for man a life of toil. And when self-control and the other virtues in general reappeared, there came again an abundance of blessings. But the condition of man is already close to satiety and arrogance, and there is danger of destruction of everything in existence." And Onesicritus adds that Calanus, after saying this, bade him, if he wished to learn, to take off his clothes, to lie down naked on the same stones, and thus to hear his teachings; and that while he was hesitating what to do, Mandanis,\textsuperscript{2} who was the oldest and wisest of the sophists, rebuked Calanus as a man of arrogance, and that too after censuring arrogance himself; and that Mandanis called him\textsuperscript{3} and said that he commended the king because, although busied with the government of so great an

\textsuperscript{2} By Arrian, *Alexander*, 7. 2., and Plutarch, *Alexander* 8. 65, called "Dandamis."  
\textsuperscript{3} Onesicritus.
τοσαύτην διουκών ἐπιθυμοῖς σοφίας· μόνον γὰρ ἵδοι αὐτὸς ἐν ὅπλοις φιλοσοφοῦντα· ὥφελμότατον δ' εἰς τῶν ἀπάντων, εἰ οἱ τοιούτοι φρονοῦεν, οίς πάρεστι δύναμις τοὺς μὲν ἐκουσίους πείθεν ἰμφρονεῖν, τοὺς δ' ἐκουσίους ἀναγκάζειν· αὐτῷ δὲ συγγνώμη εἰς, εἰ δ' ἐρμηνεύσων τριῶν διαλεγόμενος, πλὴν φωνῆς μηδὲν συνιέντων πλέον ἢ οἱ πολλοὶ, μηδὲν ἴσχυσε τῆς ὥφελμας ἐπὶδείξειν ποιήσασθαι· ὁμοίων γὰρ, ὡς ἄν εἰ διὰ βορβόρου καθαρὸν ἄξιοι τις ὕδωρ ρέιν.

65. Τὰ γὰρ λεχθέντα εἰς τούτ' ἐφ' ἑκεῖ συντείνειν, ὡς εἰς λόγος ἀριστός, ὅς ἦδον· καὶ λύπην ψυχῆς ἀφαιρήσεται· καὶ ὡς οὐκ ἔμαθεν, τὸ μὲν γὰρ πολέμου, τὸ δὲ φίλιον1 αὐτοῖς· τὰ γὰρ σώματα ἀσκοῦσι πρὸς πόνον, ὥς αἰ γνῶμαι ρωνύνως, ἀφ' ὅν καὶ στάσεις παύοιες· καὶ σύμβουλοι πασίν ἀγαθῶν παρείες καὶ κοινὴ καὶ ἰδία· καὶ ἦ καὶ Ταξίλη2 νῦν συμβουλεύσειε3 δέχεσθαι τὸν 'Αλέξανδρον' κρείττω μὲν γὰρ αὐτοῦ δεξάμενον εὐ πείσεσθαι, χεῖρω δὲ εὐ διαθήσειν· ταῦτ' εἰπόντα ἐξερέσθαι, εἰ καὶ ἐν τοῖς Ἐκλησί λόγοι τοιούτοι λέγοντο· εἰπόντος δ', ὅτι καὶ Πυθαγόρας τοιαῦτα λέγοι· 4 κελεύοι 5 τε ἐμψύχων ἀπέχεσθαι, καὶ Σωκράτης καὶ Διογένης, οὐ καὶ αὐτὸς ἀκροάσαιτο, ἀποκρίνασθαι, ὅτι τᾶλλα μὲν νομίζοι ψρούμως αὐτοῖς δοκεῖν, ἐν δ' ἀμπτάνειν, νόμον πρὸ τῆς φύσεως τιθεμένους·

1 φίλιον E, φιλόν other MSS.
2 καὶ Ταξίλη E, ταξίλι h other MSS.
3 συμβουλεύσειεν Dhí.
4 λέγοι DFh, λέγει other MSS.
5 κελεύοι DFh, κελεύει other MSS.

112
empire, he was desirous of wisdom; for the king was the only philosopher in arms that he ever saw, and that it was the most useful thing in the world if those men were wise who have the power of persuading the willing, and forcing the unwilling, to learn self-control; but that he might be pardoned if, conversing through three interpreters, who, with the exception of language, knew no more than the masses, he should be unable to set forth anything in his philosophy that would be useful; for that, he added, would be like expecting water to flow pure through mud!

65. At all events, all he said, according to Onesicritus, tended to this, that the best teaching is that which removes pleasure and pain from the soul; and that pain and toil differ, for the former is inimical to man and the latter friendly, since man trains the body for toil in order that his opinions may be strengthened, whereby he may put a stop to dissensions and be ready to give good advice to all, both in public and in private; and that, furthermore, he had now advised Taxiles to receive Alexander, for if he received a man better than himself he would be well treated, but if inferior, he would improve him. Onesicritus says that, after saying this, Mandanis inquired whether such doctrines were taught among the Greeks; and that when he answered that Pythagoras taught such doctrines, and also bade people to abstain from meat, as did also Socrates and Diogenes, and that he himself had been a pupil of Diogenes, Mandanis replied that he regarded the Greeks as sound-minded in general, but that they were wrong in one respect, in that they preferred custom to nature; for otherwise, Mandanis said,
οὐ γὰρ ἂν ἀισχύνεσθαι γυμνοὺς, ὦσπερ αὐτῶν, διάγειν, ἀπὸ λιτῶν ξύντας· καὶ γὰρ οἰκίαν ἀρίστην εἶναι, ἦτοι ἂν ἐπισκευὴς ἐλαχιστῆς δεῖται· ἐφ' ὃ αὐτοὺς καὶ τῶν περὶ φύσιν πολλὰ ἐξετάσαι καὶ προσημασίων, ὀμβρων, αὐχμῶν, νόσων· ἀπὶόντας δ' εἰς τὴν πόλιν κατὰ τὰς ἀγορὰς σκεδάνυσθαι· ὅτι δ' ἂν κομίζοντι σῦκα ἡ βότρυς παρατύχωσι,² λαμβάνειν δωρεὰν παρ-έκοιντος· εἰ δ' ἔλαιον εἰή, καταχείσθαι αὐτῶν καὶ ἀλείφεσθαι· ἀπασαν δὲ πλουσίαν οἰκίαν ἀνείσθαι αὐτοῖς μέχρι γυναικώνιτιδος, εἰσίνιτας δὲ δείπνον κοινωνεὶν καὶ λόγων· οἴσχιστον δ' αὐτοῖς νομίζεσθαι νόσον σωματικῆς· τὸν δ' ὑπο-νοῆσαντα καθ' αὐτοῦ τοῦτο, ἐξάγειν ἑαυτόν διὰ πυρὸς, νήσαντα πυράν, ὑπαλείψαμεν δὲ καὶ καθίσαντα ἐπὶ τὴν πυρὰν ὑφάγαν κελεύειν, ἀκίνητον δὲ καίεσθαι.

66. Νέαρχος δὲ περὶ τῶν σοφιστῶν οὕτω λέγει· τοὺς μὲν Βραχμάνας πολιτεύεσθαι καὶ παρακο-λουθεῖν τοῖς βασιλεύσι συμβούλους, τοὺς δὲ ἄλλους σκοπεῖν τὰ περὶ τὴν φύσιν τούτων δ' εἶναι καὶ Κάλανον· συμφιλοσοφεῖν δ' αὐτοῖς καὶ γυναῖκας, τὰς δὲ διαίτας ἀπάντων σκηνάσας. περὶ δὲ τῶν κατὰ τοὺς ἄλλους νομίμων τοιαύτα ἀποφαίνεται· τοὺς μὲν νόμους ἀγράφους εἶναι, τοὺς μὲν κοινοὺς, τοὺς δ' ἱδίους, ἀνθειαν ἔχοντας. Πρὸς τοὺς τῶν ἄλλων· οἴον τὸ τὰς παρθένους ἄθλου παρὰ τις προκεῖσθαι τῷ πυγμῇ νυκή-σαντι, ὥστ' ἀπροίκος συνεῖναι· παρ' ἄλλοις δὲ

1 ἂν, Corais and later editors insert.
2 παρατύχωσι 'Ε, περιτύχωσι other MSS.
they would not be ashamed to go naked, like himself, and live on frugal fare; for, he added, the best house is that which requires the least repairs. And Onesicritus goes on to say that they inquire into numerous natural phenomena, including prognostics, rains, droughts, and diseases; and that when they depart for the city they scatter to the different market-places; and whenever they chance upon anyone carrying figs or bunches of grapes, they get fruit from that person as a free offering; but that if it is oil, it is poured down over them and they are anointed with it; and that the whole of a wealthy home is open to them, even to the women's apartments, and that they enter and share in meals and conversation; and that they regard disease of the body as a most disgraceful thing; and that he who suspects disease in his own body commits suicide through means of fire, piling a funeral pyre; and that he anoints himself, sits down on the pyre, orders it to be lighted, and burns without a motion.

66. Nearchus speaks of the sophists as follows: That the Brachmanes engage in affairs of state and attend the kings as counsellors; but that the other sophists investigate natural phenomena; and that Calanus is one of these; and that their wives join them in the study of philosophy; and that the modes of life of all are severe. As for the customs of the rest of the Indians, he declares as follows: That their laws, some public and some private, are unwritten, and that they contain customs that are strange as compared with those of the other tribes; for example, among some tribes the virgins are set before all as a prize for the man who wins the victory in a fist-fight, so that they marry the victor without dowry; and
κατὰ συγγένειαν κοινῆ τοὺς καρποὺς ἐργασα-
μένους, ἐπὰν συγκομίσωσιν, αἱρεσθαὶ φορτίον
ἐκαστὸν εἰς διατροφὴν τοῦ ἑτοὺς, τὸν δὲ ἄλλον
ἐμπηπτράναι τοῦ ἐχειν εἰσαύθις ἐργάζεσθαι καὶ
μὴ ἄργον εἶναι. ὅπλισμὼν δὲ εἶναι τὸξον καὶ
ὄις τριπῆς, ἢ σαῦνον, καὶ πέλτην καὶ
μάχαιραν πλατεῖαν τρίπηχων ἀντὶ δὲ χαλινῶν
φίμοις χρῆσθαι κημῶν μικρῶν διαφέρουσιν· ἥλοις
dὲ τὰ χείλη διαπεπάρθαι.

67. Τὴν δὲ φιλοτεχνίαν τῶν Ἰνδῶν ἐμφανίζων
σπόγγους φησίν ἰδόντας παρὰ τοῖς Μακεδοσὶ
μυμήσασθαι, τρίχας καὶ σχοινία λεπτὰ καὶ
ἀρπεδάνος διαρράφαντας εἰς ἑρία, καὶ μετὰ τὸ
πιλῆσαι στήλησαν τὰ μὲν ἐξελκύσαντας, τὰ δὲ βάφαντας
χρωμαίτε· στλεγγεδοποιοῖς τε καὶ ληκυθοποιοῖς
ταχὺ γενέσθαι πολλοῖς· ἐπιστολᾶς δὲ γράφειν
ἐν σινδόσι λίαν κεκροτημέναις, τῶν ἄλλων γράμ-
μασιν αὐτοὺς μὴ χρῆσθαι φαμένων χαλκῷ δὲ
χρῆσθαι χυτῷ, τὸ δ' ἐλατῶ μὴ· τὴν δ' αἰτίαν
οὐκ εἶπε, καίτοι τὴν ἀτοπίαν εἰπὼν τὴν παρα-
κολουθοῦσαν, ὅτι θραύσεται κεράμον δίκην τὰ
σκεύη πεσόντα. τῶν δὲ περὶ τῆς Ἰνδικῆς λεγο-
μένων καὶ τούτ' ἑστίν, ὅτι ἀντὶ τοῦ προσκυνεῖν
προσεύχεσθαι τοῖς βασιλεῦσι καὶ πᾶσι τοῖς ἐν
ἐξουσία καὶ ὑπεροχῇ νόμοις. φέρει δὲ καὶ λιθάναυ

1 πιλῆσαι, Casaubon and the later editors, for πλήσαι.
2 λιθάναυ ἥοξζ and Meineke.

1 i.e. the horses are controlled by the nose with a halter-
like contrivance rather than by the mouth with bridles.
among other tribes different groups cultivate the crops in common on the basis of kinship, and, when they collect the produce, they each carry off a load sufficient for sustenance during the year, but burn the remainder in order to have work to do thereafter and not be idle. Their weapons, he says, consist of bow and arrows, the latter three cubits long, or a javelin, and a small shield and a broad sword three cubits long; and instead of bridles they use nose-bands, which differ but slightly from a muzzle; and the lips of their horses have holes pierced through them by spikes.

67. Nearchus, in explaining the skill of the Indians in handiwork, says that when they saw sponges in use among the Macedonians they made imitations by sewing tufts of wool through and through with hairs and light cords and threads, and that after compressing them into felt they drew out the inserts and dyed the sponge-like felt with colours; and that makers of strigils and of oil-flasks quickly arose in great numbers; and that they write missives on linen cloth that is very closely woven, though the other writers say that they make no use of written characters; and that they use brass that is cast, and not the kind that is forged; and he does not state the reason, although he mentions the strange result that follows the use of the vessels made of cast brass, that when they fall to the ground they break into pieces like pottery. Among the statements made concerning India is also the following, that it is the custom, instead of making obeisance, to offer prayers to the kings and to all who are in authority and of superior rank. The

2 *i.e.* spikes, or raised points, inside the nose-bands.
STRABO

Η χώρα πολυτελῆ κρυστάλλων καὶ ἀνθράκων παντοῖων, καθάπερ τῶν μαργαρίτων.

68. Τῆς δ' ἀνομολογίας τῶν συγγραφέων ἐστω παράδειγμα καὶ ὁ περὶ τοῦ Καλάνου λόγος· ὅτι μὲν γὰρ συνήλθεν Ἀλεξάνδρῳ καὶ ἀπέθανεν ἐκὸν παρ' αὐτῷ διὰ πυρός, ὀμολογοῦσι· τὸν δὲ τρόπον οὗ τὸν αὐτὸν φασὶν, οὐδὲ κατὰ τὰς αὐτὰς αἰτίας. ἀλλ' οἱ μὲν οὕτως εἰρήκασι· συνακολούθησαι γὰρ ὡς ἐγκωμιαστὴν τοῦ βασιλέως ἐξω τῶν τῆς Ἰνδικῆς ὄρων παρὰ τὸ κοῦν ἐδος τῶν ἐκεῖ φιλοσόφων· ἐκεῖνοις γὰρ τοῖς αὐτοθεί συνεῖναι βασιλεύσιν, ὑφηγουμένους τὰ περὶ τοὺς θεοὺς, ὡς τοὺς μάγους τοῖς Πέρσαις· ἐν Πασαργάδαις δὲ νοσήσαντα, τότε πρῶτον αὐτῷ νόσου γενομένης, ἐξαγαγεῖν εαυτὸν, ἀνοῦτα ἐτος ἐβδομήκοστον καὶ τρίτον, μὴ προσέχοντα ταῖς τοῦ βασιλέως δεήσεις· γενομένης δὲ πυρᾶς καὶ τεθείσης ἐπ' αὐτῆς χρυσῆς κλίνης, κατακλιθέντα εἰς αὐτήν, ἐγκαλυψάμενον ἐμπρησθήναι. οἱ δὲ ξύλινον οἰκὸν γενέσθαι, φυλλάδος δ' ἐμπληθέντος καὶ ἐπὶ τῆς στέγης πυρᾶς γενομένης, ἐγκλεισθέντα ὡσπερ ἐκέλευσε, μετὰ τὴν πομην μεθ' ἢς ἢς,¹

C.718 ῥίψαντα εαυτὸν ὡς ἀν δοκον συνεμπρησθήναι τῷ οἴκῳ. Μεγαθενής δ' ἐν τοῖς μὲν φιλοσόφοις οὐκ εἶναι δόγμα φησίν εαυτοῖς ἐξάγειν· τοὺς δὲ ποιούντας τοῦτο νεανικοῦς κρίνεσθαι, τοὺς μὲν σκληροὺς τῇ φύσει φερομένους ἐπὶ πληγήν ἢ κρημνῶν, τοὺς δ' ἀπόνους ἐπὶ βυθόν, τοὺς δὲ

¹ ἢς F, εἴχε other MSS.

1 e.g. carbuncles, rubies, garnets.
country also produces precious stones, I mean crystals and anthraces of all kinds,¹ as also pearls.

68. As an example of the lack of agreement among the historians, let us compare their accounts of Calanus. They all agree that he went with Alexander and that he voluntarily died by fire in Alexander's presence; but their accounts of the manner in which he was burned up are not the same, and neither do they ascribe his act to the same cause. Some state it thus: that he went along as a eulogiser of the king, going outside the boundaries of India, contrary to the common custom of the philosophers there, for the philosophers attend the kings in India only, guiding them in their relations with the gods, as the Magi attend the Persian kings; but that at Pasargadae he fell ill, the first illness of his life, and despatched himself during his seventy-third year, paying no attention to the entreaties of the king; and that a pyre was made and a golden couch placed on it, and that he laid himself upon it, covered himself up, and was burned to death. But others state it thus: that a wooden house was built, and that it was filled with leaves and that a pyre was built on its roof, and that, being shut in as he had bidden, after the procession which he had accompanied, flung himself upon the pyre and, like a beam of timber, was burned up along with the house. But Megasthenes says that suicide is not a dogma among the philosophers, and that those who commit suicide are adjudged guilty of the impetuosity of youth; that some who are by nature hardy rush to meet a blow or over precipices; whereas others, who shrink from suffering, plunge into deep waters;²

¹ i.e. drown themselves.
STRABO

πολυπόνους ἀπαγχομένους, τοὺς δὲ πυρώδεις εἰς πῦρ ὀθουμένους· οἷος ἦν καὶ ὁ Κάλανος, ἀκόλα-
στος ἀνθρώπος καὶ ταῖς 'Αλεξάνδρου τραπέζαις
dεδουλωμένος· τούτου μὲν οὖν ψέγεσθαι, τὸν δὲ
Μάνδανων ἐπανεῖσθαι, ὅσ τῶν τοῦ 'Αλεξάνδρου
ἀγγέλων καλοῦντων πρὸς τὸν Διὸς υἱὸν πειθομένω
τε δῶρα ἑσεσθαι ὑπεσχυμένων, ἀπειθοῦντι δὲ
kόλασιν, μήτ' ἐκείνου φαίνει Διὸς υἱὸν, ὃν γε
ἀρχεῖν μηδὲ πολλοστών μέρους τῆς γῆς· μήτε ¹
ἀυτῷ δεῖν τῶν παρ' ἐκείνου δωρεῶν, ὄν ² οὐδεὶς
κόρος· μήτε δὲ ἀπειλῆς εἰναι φόβου, ὧν τοῖς ἀν
ἀρκοῦσα εἰν τροφὸς ἡ Ἰνδικῆ, ἀποθανὼν δὲ ἀπαλ-
lάξαιτο τῆς τετρυχωμένης ἀπὸ γῆρως σαρκός,
μεταστάσις εἰς βελτίω καὶ καθαρώτερον βίον· ὃς
ἐπανέσαι τὸν 'Αλεξάνδρου καὶ συγχωρήσαι.

69. Δέχεται δὲ καὶ ταῦτα παρὰ τῶν συγγρα-
φέων, ὅτι σέβονται μὲν τὸν ὄμβριον Δία Ἰνδοῦ
καὶ τὸν Γάγγην ποταμὸν καὶ τοὺς ἐχχωρίους δαι-
μονας. ὅταν δὲ βασιλεὺς λούῃ τὴν τρίχα, μεγάλην
ἐορτήν ἄγουσι καὶ μεγάλα δῶρα πέμπουσι τὸν
ἐαυτοῦ πλοῦτον ἑκαστος ἐπιδεικνύμενος κατὰ
ἀμιλλαν. τῶν τε μυρμήκων τινὰς καὶ πτερωτοὺς
λέγουσι τῶν χρυσωρύχων· ψήγματα τε χρυσοῦ
καταφέρειν τοὺς ποταμοὺς, καθάπερ τοὺς Ἰβη-
ρικοὺς· ἐν δὲ ταῖς κατὰ τὰς ἐορτὰς πομπαῖς
πολλοὶ μὲν ἐλέφαντες πέμπονται χρυσῷ κεκο-

¹ μήτε, Corais and later editors, for μηδέ.
²όν, all MSS. except μος, which read ὃ. Kramer conj.
πόθος for κόρος, citing Arrian 7. 2. 3.
and others, who are much suffering, hang themselves; and others, who have a fiery temperament, fling themselves into fire; and that such was Calanus, a man who was without self-control and a slave to the table of Alexander; and that therefore Calanus is censured, whereas Mandanis is commended; for when Alexander's messengers summoned Mandanis to visit the son of Zeus and promised that he would receive gifts if he obeyed, but punishment if he disobeyed, he replied that, in the first place, Alexander was not the son of Zeus, inasmuch as he was not ruler over even a very small part of the earth, and, secondly, that he had no need of gifts from Alexander, of which there was no satiety,\(^1\) and, thirdly, that he had no fear of threats, since India would supply him with sufficient food while he was alive, and when he died he would be released from the flesh wasted by old age and be translated to a better and purer life; and that the result was that Alexander commended him and acquiesced.

69. The following statements are also made by the historians: that the Indians worship Zeus and the Ganges River and the local deities. And when the king washes his hair, they celebrate a great festival and bring big presents, each man making rivalry in display of his own wealth. And they say that some of the ants that mine gold\(^2\) have wings; and that gold-dust is brought down by the rivers, as by the rivers in Iberia.\(^3\) And in the processions at the time of festivals many elephants are paraded, all adorned

\(^1\) Or perhaps, "for which he had no longing" (see critical note).
\(^2\) Cp. §§ 37 and 44 (above).
\(^3\) See 3. 2. 8.
σμημένοι καὶ ἄργυροι, πολλὰ δὲ τέθριππα καὶ
βοϊκὰ ξεύγη. εἰθ' ἡ στρατιὰ κεκοσμημένη καὶ
χρυσώματα δὲ τῶν μεγάλων λεβήτων καὶ κρα-
τήρων ὀργυιαίων· καὶ τοῦ 'Ἰνδικοῦ χαλκοῦ
τράπεζαί τε καὶ θρόνοι καὶ ἐκπώματα καὶ
λούτρες, λιθοκόλλητα τὰ πλείστα σμαράγδοις καὶ
βηρύλλοις καὶ ἄνθραξιν 'Ἰνδικοῖς· καὶ ἔσθης
dὲ ποικίλη χρυσόπαστος, καὶ βόνασοι καὶ
παρδάλεις καὶ λέοντες τίθασοι καὶ τῶν ποικίλων
ὀρνέων καὶ εὐφθόγγων πλῆθος. ὁ δὲ Κλείταρχος
φησιν ἀμάξας τετρακύκλους, δένδρα κομιζοῦσας
τῶν μεγαλοφύλλων, ἐξ δὸν ἀπηρτηται γένη
tετειθασειμένων ὀρνέων, δὲν εὐφωνότατοι μὲν
εὐρήκη τῶν ὁρίωνα, λαμπρότατον δὲ κατὰ τὴν
ὄψιν καὶ πλείστην ἔχοντα ποικιλίαν τὸν καλοῦ-
μενον κατρέα. τὴν γὰρ ἰδέαν ταῖο μάλιστα
ἐγγίζειν. τὴν δὲ λοιπὴν εἰκονογραφίαν παρ' ἐκεῖνον
ληπτέον.

70. Φιλοσόφους τε τοὺς Βραχμᾶσιν ἀντιδιαι-
C 719 ροῦνται Πράμνας, ἐριστικοὺς τινας καὶ ἐλεγκ-
tικοὺς· τοὺς δὲ Βραχμᾶνας φυσιολογίαν καὶ
ἀστρονομίαν ἀσκεῖν, γελωμένους ὑπ' ἑκείνων ὡς
ἀλαξόνας καὶ ἀνόητους. τούτων δὲ τοὺς μὲν
ὀρεινοὺς καλεῖσθαι, τοὺς δὲ γυμνήτας, τοὺς δὲ
πολιτικοὺς καὶ προσχωρίους· τοὺς μὲν ὀρεινοὺς

1 καὶ, before τράπεζαί, Corais ejects.
2 τε, Corais and later editors, for δὲ.
3 καὶ βόνασοι, Meineke; CDEγι have a lacuna of about
six letters; τυ read καὶ . . . ἀσοι, i καὶ ἄρκοι, καὶ 
θηρία; Tzschucke καὶ θηρία . . . ἀσοι; Corais καὶ θηρία ἄρκοι;
Groskurd καὶ θηρία βόνασοι.
4 ἀπηρτηται, Schneider (note on Aelian, An. 12. 22), for
ἀπηρυγηται.
with gold and silver, as also many four-horse chariots and ox-teams; and then follows the army, all in military uniform; and then golden vessels consisting of large basins and bowls a fathom in breadth; and tables, high chairs, drinking-cups, and bath-tubs, all of which are made of Indian copper and most of them are set with precious stones—emeralds, beryls, and Indian anthraces;^1 and also variegated garments spangled with gold, and tame bisons,^2 leopards, and lions, and numbers of variegated and sweet-voiced birds. And Cleitarchus speaks of four-wheeled carriages on which large-leaved trees are carried, and of different kinds of tamed birds that cling to these trees, and states that of these birds the orion has the sweetest voice, but that the catreus, as it is called, has the most splendid appearance and the most variegated plumage; for its appearance approaches nearest that of the peacock. But one must get the rest of the description from Cleitarchus.

70. In classifying the philosophers, writers oppose to the Brachmanes the Pramnae, a contentious and disputatious sect; and they say that the Brachmanes study natural philosophy and astronomy, but that they are derided by the Pramnae as quacks and fools; and that, of these, some are called “Mountain” Pramnae, others “Naked” Pramnae, and others “City” Pramnae or “Neighbouring” Pramnae; and that the “Mountain” Pramnae wear deer-

---

1 See note on “anthraces,” § 68 (above).
2 Aurochs.

καστρέα Δη, κάτρεα F.
δοραῖς ἐλάφων χρῆσθαι, πήρας δ' ἔχειν ρίζῶν καὶ φαρμάκων μεστάς, προσποιουμένους ἰατρικὴν μετὰ γοητείας καὶ ἐπροδών καὶ περιόπτων. τοὺς δὲ γυμνώτας κατὰ τούνομα γυμνοὺς διαζήν, ὑπαι-θρίους τὸ πλέον, καρτερίαν ἀσκοῦντας, ἢν ἔφαμεν πρότερον, μέχρι ἑπτὰ ἐτῶν ἢ καὶ τριάκοντα, γυ-ναίκας δὲ συνεία, μὴ μιγνυμένας αὐτοῖς· τούτους δὲ θαυμάζεσθαι διαφερόντως.

71. Τοὺς δὲ πολιτικοὺς συνδούντας κατὰ πόλιν ξῆν ᾧ καὶ κατ' ἄγροὺς, καθημενοὺς ἕνανβιδας ἤ δορκάδων δοράς· ὥς δ' εἰπεῖν, Ἰνδοὺς ἑσθῆτι λευκὴ χρῆσθαι καὶ συνδόσι λευκαῖς καὶ καρπά-σοις, ὑπεναντίως τοῖς εἰποῦσιν εὐανθέστατα αὐτοὺς ἀμπέχεσθαι φορήματα· κομὰν δὲ καὶ πωγωνοτροφείν πάντας, ἀναπλεκομένους δὲ μι-τροῦσθαι τὰς κόμας.

72. Ἀρτεμίδωρος δὲ τὸν Γάγγην φησὶν ἐκ τῶν Ἡμωδῶν ὅρων καταφερόμενον πρὸς νότον, ἐπειδὰν κατὰ τὴν Γάγγην γένηται πόλιν, ἐπιστρέφειν πρὸς ἑω μέχρι Παλιβόθρων καὶ τῆς εἰς τὴν θάλατταν ἐκβολησ. τῶν δὲ συρρεύσων εἰς αὐτὸν Οἰδάνην τινὰ καλεῖ· τρέφειν δὲ καὶ κροκόδείλους καὶ δελφίνας. λέγει δὲ καὶ ἄλλα τινὰ, συγκεχυμένως δὲ καὶ ἄργῳς, ὅν ὦν φρον-τιστέον. προσθείη δ' ἄν τις τούτοις καὶ τὰ παρὰ τοῦ Δαμασκηνοῦ Νικολίου.

73. Φησὶ γὰρ οὗτος ἐν Ἀντιοχείᾳ τῇ ἐπὶ Δάφνῃ παρατυχεῖν τοῖς Ἰνδῶν πρέσβεσιν, ἀφεγ-

1 ἐτῶν, omitted by all MSS. except E.
2 καθημενοὺς CDEFHx, καθημενοὺς w, ἐνημενοὺς moz and Corais.
3 Οἰδάνη is probably corrupt. Corais conj. Οἰμάνην; Kramer, Ἰομᾶνην; C. Müller Διοιδάνην or Διαρδάνην.

124
skins, and carry wallets full of roots and drugs, prettending to cure people with these, along with witchery and enchantments and amulets; and that the "Naked" Pramnae, as their name implies, live naked, for the most part in the open air, practising endurance, as I have said before,\(^1\) for thirty-seven years; and that women associate with them but do not have intercourse with them; and that these philosophers are held in exceptional esteem.

71. They say that the "City" Pramnae wear linen garments and live in the city, or else out in the country, and go clad in the skins of fawns or gazelles; but that, in general, the Indians wear white clothing, white linen or cotton garments, contrary to the accounts of those who say that they wear highly coloured garments; and that they all wear long hair and long beards, and that they braid their hair and surround it with a head-band.

72. Artemidorus says that the Ganges River flows down from the Emoda mountains towards the south, and that when it arrives at the city Ganges it turns towards the east to Palibothra and its outlet into the sea. And he calls one of its tributaries Oedanes, saying that it breeds both crocodiles and dolphins. And he goes on to mention certain other things, but in such a confused and careless manner that they are not to be considered. But one might add to the accounts here given that of Nicolaüs Damaseenus.

73. He says that at Antioch, near Daphnê, he chanced to meet the Indian ambassadors who had

\(^1\) §§ 60 and 61 (above).

\(^4\) καλεί, Casaubon and later editors, for καλείν.
μένους παρὰ Καίσαρα τὸν Σεβαστόν· οὐς ἐκ μὲν τῆς ἐπιστολῆς πλείους δηλοῦσθαι, σωθῆναι δὲ τρεῖς μόνους, οὕς ἰδεῖν φησί, τοὺς δὲ ἄλλους ὑπὸ μήκους τῶν ὀδῶν διαφαράμην τὸ πλέον· τὴν δ’ ἐπιστολὴν ἐλληνίζειν ἐν διφθέρα γεγραμμένην, δηλοῦσαν, ὅτι Πῶρος εἶ ὁ γράφας, ἐξακοσίων δὲ ἄρχων βασιλέων, ὄμως περὶ πολλοῦ ποιοῦτο φίλος εἶναι Καίσαρι, καὶ ἔτοιμος εἰη διόδον τε παρέχειν, ὅτι βοῦλεται, καὶ συμπράττειν, ὃσα καλῶς ἔχειν. ταῦτα μὲν ἐφ’ ἐγεῖν τὴν ἐπιστολὴν, τὰ δὲ κομισθέντα δώρα προσενεγκείν ὀκτὼ οἰκέτας γυμνοὺς, ἐν περιζώμασι καταπεπασμένους ἄρωμασιν εἶναι δὲ τὰ δώρα τὸν τε Ἐρμᾶν, ἀπ’ τῶν ὀμών ἀφρημένον ἐκ νηπίου τοὺς βραχίονας, ὅν καὶ ἤμεις εἶδομεν, καὶ ἔχιδνας μεγάλας καὶ ὅφιν πηχῶν δέκα καὶ χελώνην ποταμίαν τρίπτηχυν, πέριδικά τε μείζως γυμνός. συνήν δὲ, ὥς φησί, καὶ ὁ Ἀθηνησίς κατακαύσας ἐαυτὸν· ποιεῖν δὲ τοῦτο τοὺς μὲν ἐπὶ κακοπραγία ξητούντας ἀπαλλαγὴν τῶν παρόντων, τοὺς δὲ ἐπὶ εὐπραγία, καθάπερ τοῦτον ἀπαντὰ γάρ κατὰ γνώμην πράξαντα μέχρι νῦν ἀπιέναι δεῖν, μή τε τῶν ἀβουλητῶν χρονίζοντι συμπέσοι· καὶ δὴ καὶ γελώντα ἀλέσθαι γυμνῶν ἐπαληλιμμένον ἐν περιζώματε ἑπὶ τὴν πυρὰν·

1 φησί, Corais, for φασί.
2 After κακοπραγία w adds τοὺς δὲ διὰ ἄλλην τινὰ δυστυχίαν.
3 For ἐπαληλιμμένον F, ἐπαληλιμμένον other MSS., Meineke writes λιπ’ ἄληλιμμένον (cp. λιπ’ ἄληλιμμένοι 14. 1. 44).

1 So called from the fact that Hermes was usually represented as a small god, and sometimes without hands or feet
been despatched to Caesar Augustus; that the letter plainly indicated more than three ambassadors, but that only three had survived (whom he says he saw), but the rest, mostly by reason of the long journeys, had died; and that the letter was written in Greek on a skin; and that it plainly showed that Porus was the writer, and that, although he was ruler of six hundred kings, still he was anxious to be a friend to Caesar, and was ready, not only to allow him a passage through his country, wherever he wished to go, but also to co-operate with him in anything that was honourable. Nicolaüs says that this was the content of the letter to Caesar, and that the gifts carried to Caesar were presented by eight naked servants, who were clad only in loin-cloths be-sprinkled with sweet-smelling odours; and that the gifts consisted of the Hermes, a man who was born without arms, whom I myself have seen, and large vipers, and a serpent ten cubits in length, and a river tortoise three cubits in length, and a partridge larger than a vulture; and they were accompanied also, according to him, by the man who burned himself up at Athens; and that whereas some commit suicide when they suffer adversity, seeking release from the ills at hand, others do so when their lot is happy, as was the case with that man; for, he adds, although that man had fared as he wished up to that time, he thought it necessary then to depart this life, lest something untoward might happen to him if he tarried here; and that therefore he leaped upon the pyre with a laugh, his naked body anointed, wearing only a loin-cloth; and that the

(see Herodotus 2. 51). At Athens any four-cornered pillar ending in a head or bust was called "a Hermes."
STRABO

ἔπιγεγράφθαι δὲ τῷ τάφῳ. Ζαρμανοχηγάς ἦν ἀπὸ Βαργόσης κατὰ τὰ πάτρια Ἰνδῶν ἔθη έαυτον ἀπαθανατίσας κεῖται.

II

1. Μετὰ δὲ τὴν Ἰνδικήν ἔστιν η Ἀριανή, μερὶς πρώτη τῆς ὑπὸ Πέρσαις τῆς μετὰ τῶν Ἰνδῶν ποταμῶν καὶ τῶν ἀνω σατραπεῖων τῶν ἐκτὸς τοῦ Ταύρου, τὰ μὲν νότια καὶ τὰ ἀρκτικὰ μέρη τῇ αὐτῇ θαλάσσῃ καὶ τοῖς αὐτοῖς ὀρεσίων ἀφοριζομένῃ, οἶσπερ καὶ ἦ Ἰνδική, καὶ τῷ αὐτῷ ποταμῷ τῷ Ἰνδῷ, μέσον ἔχουσα αὐτὸν ἑαυτῆς τε καὶ τῆς Ἰνδικῆς, ἐντεύθεν δὲ πρὸς τὴν ἔσπεραν ἐκτεινομένη μέχρι τῆς ἀπὸ Καστίων πυλῶν εἰς Καρμανίαν γραφομένης γραμμῆς, ὡστε εἶναι τετράπλευρον τὸ σχῆμα. τὸ μὲν οὖν νότιον πλευρὸν ἀπὸ τῶν ἐκβολῶν ἄρχεται τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ καὶ τῆς Παταληνῆς, τελευτάτη δὲ πρὸς Καρμανίων καὶ τοῦ Περσικοῦ κόλπου τὸ στόμα, ἀκραν ἔχον ἐκκειμένην ἱκανῶς πρὸς νότον ἐπὶ εἰς τὸν κόλπον λαμβάνει καμπήν ὡς ἐπὶ τὴν Περσίδα. οἰκούσι δὲ Ἀρβίες πρῶτον, ὁμώνυμοι τῷ ποταμῷ Ἀρβεῖ τῷ ὀρίζοντι αὐτοὺς ἀπὸ τῶν ἔξης Ὡρείτων, ὅσον χιλίων σταδίων ἔχουσα παραλίαν, ὡς φησὶ Νέαρχος. Ἰνδῶν δὲ ἐστὶ μερὶς καὶ αὐτῆς. εἰτ Ὡρεῖται ἐκνος αὐτονομοῦ τούτων δὲ ὁ παράπλους χιλίων ὀκτακοσίων, ὁ δὲ τῶν ἔξης Ἰχνουφάγων

1 Ζαρμανοχήγας καὶ Ζάρμανος χήγαν w and Corais.

1 The spelling of the name is doubtful. Dio Cassius (54. 9) refers to the same man as “Zarmarus” (see critical note).
following words were inscribed on his tomb: "Here lies Zarmanochegas, an Indian from Bargosa, who immortalised himself in accordance with the ancestral customs of Indians."

II

1. After India one comes to Ariana, the first portion of the country subject to the Persians after the Indus River and of the upper satrapies situated outside the Taurus. Ariana is bounded on the south and on the north by the same sea and the same mountains as India, as also by the same river, the Indus, which flows between itself and India; and from this river it extends towards the west as far as the line drawn from the Caspian Gates to Carmania, so that its shape is quadrilateral. Now the southern side begins at the outlets of the Indus and at Patalenê, and ends at Carmania and the mouth of the Persian Gulf, where it has a promontory that projects considerably towards the south; and then it takes a bend into the gulf in the direction of Persis. Ariana is inhabited first by the Arbies, whose name is like that of the River Arbis, which forms the boundary between them and the next tribe, the Oreitae; and the Arbies have a seaboard about one thousand stadia in length, as Nearchus says; but this too is a portion of India. Then one comes to the Oreitae, an autonomous tribe. The coasting voyage along the country of this tribe is one thousand eight hundred stadia in length, and the next, along that of the Ichthyophagi, seven

\[ i.e. \ "to \ the \ west \ of.\]
Strabo

2. 'Αλιτενής δ’ ἐστὶν ἡ τῶν 'Ιχθυοφάγων καὶ ἀδενδρός ἡ πλείστη πλήν φοινίκων καὶ ἀκάνθης τινὸς καὶ μυρίκης· καὶ ὑδάτων δὲ καὶ τροφῆς ἑμέρου σπάνις· τοῖς δ’ ἱχθύσι χρώνται καὶ αὐτοὶ καὶ θρέμματα καὶ τοῖς όμβροις ὑδασὶ καὶ ὀρυκτοῖς καὶ τὰ κρέα δὲ τῶν θρεμμάτων ἱχθύων προσβάλλει· οἰκήσεις δὲ ποιοῦνται τοῖς ὀστέοις τῶν κητῶν χρώμενοι καὶ κόγχοις ὀστρέων τὸ πλέον, δοκοῖς μὲν ταῖς πλευραῖς καὶ ὑπερείσμασι, θυρώμασι δὲ ταῖς σιαγόσιν· οἱ σπόνυλοι δ’ αὐτοῖς εἰσιν ὁλμοί, ἐν οἷς πτίσσουσι τοὺς ἱχθύας ἐν ἡλίῳ κατοπτήσαντες· εἰτ’ ἁρτοποιοῦνται σίτου C 721 μικρὰ καταμίζαντες· καὶ γὰρ μύλοι αὐτοῖς εἰσι, σιδήρου μὴ ὁντος. καὶ τούτο μὲν ἦττον θαυμαστόν, καὶ γὰρ ἄλλοθεν ἐνέγκασθαι δυνατόν· ἀλλὰ πῶς ἐπικόπτουσι ἀποτριβέντας; 3 λίθοις μέντοι φασίν, οίς καὶ τὰ βέλη καὶ τὰ ἀκοντίσματα τὰ πεπυρακτωμένα ἀποξύνουσι. τοὺς δ’ ἱχθύας, τοὺς μὲν ἐν κλιβάνοις κατοπτῶσι, τοὺς δὲ πλεῖστοις ὦμοφαγοῦσιν περιβάλλονται δὲ καὶ δικτύοις φλοιοῦ φοινικίνου.

3. 'Ὑπέρκειται δὲ τούτων ἡ Γεδρωσία, τῆς μὲν

1 δισχίλιοι, Kramer and the later editors emend to τρισχίλιοι; but it is better to accept the reading of the MSS. and assume that Strabo does not include in his sum total the coast of the Arbies in India, “about one thousand stadia” in length.
GEOGRAPHY, 15. 2. 1–2

thousand four hundred, and that along the country of the Carmanians as far as Persis, three thousand seven hundred, so that the total voyage is twelve thousand nine hundred stadia.

2. The country of the Ichthyophagi 1 is on the sea-level; and most of it is without trees, except palms and a kind of thorn and the tamarisk; and there is a scarcity both of water and of foods produced by cultivation; and both the people and their cattle use fish for food and drink waters supplied by rains and wells; and the meat of their cattle smells like fish; and they build their dwellings mostly with the bones of whales and with oyster-shells, using the ribs of whales as beams and supports, and the jawbones as doorposts; and they use the vertebral bones of whales as mortars, in which they pound the fish after roasting them in the sun; and then they make bread of this, mixing a small amount of flour with it, for they have grinding-mills, although they have no iron. And this is indeed not so surprising, for they could import grinding-mills from other places; but how do they cut them anew when worn smooth? Why, with the same stones, they say, with which they sharpen arrows and javelins that have been hardened in fire. As for fish, they bake some in covered earthen vessels, but for the most part eat them raw; and they catch them, among other ways, with nets made of palm-bark.

3. Above the country of the Ichthyophagi is

2 Fish-eaters.

2 πλην, omitted by all MSS. except Ez.
3 ἀποτριβέντας, Corais, for ἕπιτριβέντα C, ἀποτριβέντα other MSS.
Ινδικῆς ἦττον ἐμπυρος, τῆς δ’ ἄλλης Ἀσίας μᾶλλον, καὶ τοῖς καρποῖς καὶ τοῖς υδασιν ἔνδεης πλην θέρους, οὗ πολὺ ἀμείνων τῆς τῶν Ἰχθυοφῶνων ἀρ-ωματοφόρος δὲ νάρδου μάλιστα καὶ σμύρνης, ὡστε τὴν Ἀλεξάνδρου στρατιάν ὅσείουσαν ἀντὶ ὄροφον καὶ στρωμάτων τούτων χρησθαι, εὐωδιαζομένην ἄμα καὶ ύγιεινότερον τὸν ἁέρα ἑχουσαν παρὰ τούτον γενέσθαι δ’ αὐτοῖς θέρους τὴν ἐκ τῆς Ἰνδικῆς ἀφοδον ἐπίτηδες συνεβη τότε γὰρ ὁμ-βροὺς ἔχειν τὴν Γεδρωσίαν καὶ τοὺς ποταμοὺς πληρούσθαι καὶ τὰ ὕδρεα, χειμώνος δ’ ἐπιλεί-πειν πίπτειν δε τοὺς ὁμβροὺς ἐν τοῖς ἄνω μέρεσι τοῖς προσαρκτίοις καὶ ἐγγύς τῶν ὀρῶνπληρουμένων δε τῶν ποταμῶν καὶ τὰ πεδία τὰ πλησιάζοντα1 τῇ θαλάττῃ ποτίζεσθαι καὶ ὕδρειων εὐπορεῖν. προέπεπυσε δ’ εἰς τὴν ἔρημον μεταλλευτάς τῶν ὕδρεων ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ τοὺς ναύσταθμα αὐτῷ καὶ τῷ στόλῳ κατασκευά-ςουτας.

4. Τριχῇ γὰρ διελῶν τὰς δυνάμεις, τῇ μὲν αὐτοὺς ἀφομισε διὰ τῆς Γεδρωσίας, ἀφιστάμενος τῆς θαλάτης τὸ πλεῖστον πεντακοσίων στα-δίους, ἵν’ ἄμα καὶ τῷ ναυτικῷ τὴν παραλίαν ἐπιτηδείαν παρασκευάξοι, πολλάκις δὲ καὶ συνά-πτοι τῇ θαλάτη, καίπερ ἁπόρους καὶ τραχείας ἑχούσῃ2 τὰς ἀκτὰς τὴν δὲ προέπεμψε μετὰ Κρατεροῦ διὰ τῆς μεσογαίας, ἀμα χειρουμένου3 τε τὴν Ἀριανῆν καὶ προίόντος ἐπὶ τοὺς αὐτοὺς τόπους, ἐφ’ οὐς Ἀλέξανδρος τὴν πορείαν εἶχε. τὸ δὲ ναυτικὸν Νεάρχῳ καὶ Ὀυνησικρίτῳ τῷ

1 Ὅθι read λιμνάξων-α.
situated Gedrosia, a country less torrid than India, but more torrid than the rest of Asia; and since it is in lack of fruits and water, except in summer, it is not much better than the country of the Ichthyo-phagi. But it produces spices, in particular nard plants and myrrh trees, so that Alexander’s army on their march used these for tent-coverings and bedding, at the same time enjoying thereby sweet odours and a more salubrious atmosphere; and they made their return from India in the summer on purpose, for at that time Gedrosia has rains, and the rivers and the wells are filled, though in winter they fail, and the rains fall in the upper regions towards the north and near the mountains; and when the rivers are filled the plains near the sea are watered and the wells are full. And the king sent persons before him into the desert country to dig wells and to prepare stations for himself and his fleet.

4. For he divided his forces into three parts, and himself set out with one division through Gedrosia. He kept away from the sea no more than five hundred stadia at most, in order that he might at the same time equip the seaboard for the reception of his fleet; and he often closely approached the sea, although its shores were hard to traverse and rugged. The second division he sent forward through the interior under the command of Craterus, who at the same time was to subdue Ariana and also to advance to the same region whither Alexander was directing his march. The fleet he gave over to Nearchus and

---

2 ἔχούσῃ, Tzschucke and the later editors, for ἔχούσῃ.
3 Χειρομένου, Groskurd and later editors, for Χειρομένου.
5. Καὶ δὴ καὶ φησιν ὦ Νέαρχος, ἡδον τοῦ βασιλέως τελοῦντος τῆς ὁδοῦ, αὐτὸς μετοπώρου κατὰ πλειάδος ἐπιτολὴν ἐσπερίαν ἀρξασθαι τοῦ πλοῦ, μὴπὼ μὲν τῶν πνευμάτων ὁικείων ὄντων, τῶν δὲ βαρβάρων ἐπιχειροῦντων αὐτοῖς καὶ ἐξελαυνόντων καταθαρῆσαι γάρ, ἀπελθόντος τοῦ βασιλέως, καὶ ἐλευθεριάσαι. Κρατέρος δ’ ἂπτ’ τοῦ ‘Τιδάσπου ἀρξάμενος δ’ ἀραχωτῶν ἣει καὶ Δράγγων εἰς Καρμανίαν. Πολλὰ δ’ ἐταλαί

C 722 πόρει α’ Ἀλέξανδρος καθ’ ὅλην τῆν ὁδον διὰ λυπρᾶς ἰών πόρρωθεν δ’ ὁμοίως ἐπεχορηγεῖτο μικρὰ καὶ στάνια, ὥστε λιμώττειν τὸ στράτευμα· καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια ἐπέλιπτε, καὶ τὰ σκεύη κατελείπετο ἐν ταῖς ὁδοῖς καὶ τοῖς στρατοπέδοις· ἀπὸ δὲ τῶν φοινίκων ᾧν ἡ σωτηρία, τοῦ τε καρποῦ καὶ τοῦ ἐγκεφάλου. φασὶ δὲ φιλονεικήσαι τὸν Ἀλέξανδρον, καὶ περ εἰδότα τὰς ἀπορίας, πρὸς τὴν κατέχουσαν δόξαν, ὡς Σεμίραμις μὲν ἐξ Ἰνδῶν φεύγουσα σῶθεν μετὰ ἀνδρῶν ὡς εἰκοσι, Κύρος δὲ ἐπτά, εἰ δύνατο αὐτὸς τοσοῦτο στρατευμα διασώσαι διὰ τῆς αὐτῆς χώρας, νικῶν καὶ ταῦτα.

6. Πρὸς δὲ τῇ ἀπορίᾳ χαλεπῶν ἦν καὶ τὸ καύμα καὶ τὸ βάθος τῆς ψάμμου καὶ ἡ θερμότης, ἐστι δ’ ὅπου καὶ θίνεσ ψηλοῖ, ὥστε πρὸς τὸ ἐνυχροὺς ἀναφέρειν τὰ σκέλη, καθάπερ ἐκ βυθοῦ,

1 ὁμοίως, Corais, for ὁμοῖως.
2 πρὸς τῷ (omitted by mss), Corais, for πρὸς τό, other MSS.

1 See 15. 1. 5.
Onesicritus, the latter his master pilot, giving them orders to take an appropriate position, and to follow, and sail alongside, his line of march.

5. Moreover, Nearchus says that when now the king was completing his journey he himself began the voyage, in the autumn, at the time of the rising of the Pleiad in the west; and that the winds were not yet favourable, and that the barbarians attacked them and tried to drive them out; for, he adds, the barbarians took courage when the king departed and acted like freemen. Craterus set out from the Hydaspes and went through the country of the Arachoti and of the Drangae into Carmania. But Alexander was in great distress throughout the whole journey, since he was marching through a wretched country; and from a distance, likewise, he could procure additional supplies only in small quantities and at rare intervals, so that his army was famished; and the beasts of burden fagged out, and the baggage was left behind on the roads and in the camps; but they were saved by the date palms, eating not only the fruit but also the cabbage at the top. They say that Alexander, although aware of the difficulties, conceived an ambition, in view of the prevailing opinion that Semiramis escaped in flight from India with only about twenty men and Cyrus with seven, to see whether he himself could safely lead that large army of his through the same country and win this victory too.\(^1\)

\(^6\)In addition to the resourcelessness of the country, the heat of the sun was grievous, as also the depth and the heat of the sand; and in some places there were sand-hills so high that, in addition to the difficulty of lifting one's legs, as out of a pit,
STRABO

καὶ ἀναβάσεις εἶναι καὶ καταβάσεις ἀνάγκη δ' ἢν καὶ σταθμοὺς ποιεῖσθαι μακροὺς, διὰ τὰ ύδρεία, διακοσίων καὶ τετρακοσίων σταδίων, ἐστὶ δ' ὅτε καὶ ἐξακοσίων, νυκτοποροῦντας τὸ πλέον. πόρρω δὲ τῶν ύδρείων ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο ἐν τριάκοντα σταδίοις πολλάκις τοῦ μὴ ἐμφορεῖσθαι κατὰ δίψος· πολλοὶ γὰρ ἐμπίπτοντες σὺν ὀπλοῖς ἔπινον ὡς ἄν ὑποβρύχιοι, φυσώμενοι δ' ἐπέπλευν ἐκπεπτυχότες καὶ τὰ ύδρεία βραχέα ὡντα διέφθειρον· οἱ δ' ἐν τῷ ἕλιῳ κατὰ μέσην τὴν ὄδον ἀπηγορευκότες ἔκειντο υπὸ δίψον· ἐπειτα τρομώδεις μετὰ παλμοῦ χειρῶν καὶ σκέλῶν ἔθυσκον παραπλησίως· ὡς ἄν ὑπὸ 1 ῥίγους καὶ φρύκης ἐχομένοι. συνέβανε δὲ τις καὶ ἐκτραπομένους τὴν ὄδον καταδαρθείν κρατουμένοις υπὸ ὑπνοῦ καὶ κόπου υπερήσαντες δ' οἱ μὲν ἀπώλοντο πλάνη τῶν ὄδών καὶ υπὸ ἀπορίας ἀπάντων καὶ καύματος, οἱ δ' ἐσώθησαν, πολλὰ ταλαιπωρήσαντες· πολλὰ δὲ κατέκλυσε καὶ τῶν σωμάτων καὶ τῶν χρηστηρίων ἐπιπεσόν χειμάρρους νύκτωρ· καὶ τῆς βασιλικῆς δὲ κατασκευῆς ἔξηλειθῇ πολλή· καὶ τῶν καθοδηγῶν δὲ 2 κατ' ἄγροιαν πολὺ εἰς τὴν μεσόγαιαν ἐκτραπομένων, ὡστε μηκέτι ὅραν τὴν θάλατταν, συνεις ὁ βασιλεύς, ἐξαιτήσεις ὄρμησε, ξητῆσαν τὴν ἥμονα, καὶ ἐπειδὴ εὑρε καὶ ὄρυξας εἶδεν ὄδωρ πότιμον, μεταπέμπεται τὸ στρατόπεδον, καὶ λοιπὸν μέχρι ἡμερῶν ἐπτὰ πλησίον ἧν τῆς ἥμονος, εὐπορῶν ύδρείας· ἔπειτ' αὕτες εἰς τὴν μεσόγαιαν ἀνεχώρησεν.

1 ὑπὸ, omitted by MSS. except moxx.
2 δὲ, omitted by moxx, τε other MSS.; emended by Corais.
there were also ascents and descents to be made. And it was necessary also, on account of the wells, to make long marches of two hundred or three hundred stadia, and sometimes even six hundred, travelling mostly by night. But they would encamp at a distance from the wells, often at a distance of thirty stadia, in order that the soldiers might not, to satisfy their thirst, drink too much water; for many would plunge into the wells, armour and all, and drink as submerged men would; and then, after expiring, would swell up and float on the surface and corrupt the wells, which were shallow; and others, exhausted by reason of thirst, would lie down in the middle of the road in the open sun, and then trembling, along with a jerking of hands and legs, they would die like persons seized with chills or ague. And in some cases soldiers would turn aside from the main road and fall asleep, being overcome by sleep and fatigue. And some, falling behind the army, perished by wandering from the roads and by reason of heat and lack of everything, though others arrived safely, but only after suffering many hardships; and a torrential stream, coming on by night, overwhelmed both a large number of persons and numerous articles; and much of the royal equipment was also swept away; and when the guides ignorantly turned aside so far into the interior that the sea was no longer visible, the king, perceiving their error, set out at once to seek for the shore; and when he found it, and by digging discovered potable water, he sent for the army, and thereafter kept close to shore for seven days, with a good supply of water; and then he withdrew again into the interior.
7. Ἡν δὲ τι ὁμοίον τῇ δάφνῃ φυτὸν, οὐ τὸ γενσάμενον τῶν ὑποξυγίων ἀπέθνησε κατὰ ἐπιληψίας καὶ ἄφροῦ. ἀκανθα δὲ τοὺς καρποὺς ἐπὶ γῆς κεχυμένη, καθάπερ οἱ σίκνοι, πλήρης ἦν ὁποὺ τοῦτον δὲ Ῥανίδες, εἰς ὀφθαλμὸν ἐμπεσοῦσα, πᾶν ἀπετύφλουν ξύρον. οὗ τε ὡμοί φοινίκες ἔπυγγον πολλούς. ἦν δὲ κίνδυνος καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν ὄφεων· ἐν γὰρ τοῖς θισῶν ἐπεφύκει βοτάνη, ταύτῃ δ’ ὑποδεδυκότες ἑλάνθανον, τοὺς δὲ πληγεύτας ἀπέκτεινον. ἐν δὲ τοῖς Ὀρείταις τὰ τοξεύματα χρίσθαι θανασίμοις φαρμάκοις ἔφασαν, ξύλων ὄντα καὶ πεπυρακτωμένα· προβάλοντο δὲ Πτολεμαίον κινδυνεύειν· ἐν ὑπνῷ δὲ παραστάντα τινὰ τῷ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ δεῖξαι ρίζαν αὐτόπρεμον, ἦν κελεύσας τρίβοντα ἐπιτιθέναι τῷ πρωθέντι· ἐκ δὲ τοῦ ὑπνοῦ γενόμενον, μεμνημένον τῆς ὄφεως εὐρέων ξητοῦντα τὴν ρίζαν πολλὴν πεφυκυίαν καὶ χρήσασθαι καὶ αὐτὸν καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους· ἵδοτας δὲ τοὺς βαρβάρους εὐρημένον τὸ ἀλέξημα ὑπηκόους γενέσθαι τῷ βασιλεῖ. εἰκὸς δὲ τινὰ μηνύσαι τῶν εἰδὸτων· τὸ δὲ μυθόδες προσετέθη κολακείας χάριν. ἐλθὼν δ’ εἰς τὸ βασιλείον τῶν Γεδρωσίων ἔξηκοσταῖος ἀπὸ Ὀρῶν, διαναπαύσας τὰ πλῆθη μικρόν, ἀπῆρεν εἰς τὴν Καρμανίαν.

8. Τὸ μὲν δὴ νότιον τῆς Ἀριανῆς πλευρῶν τοιαύτην τινὰ ἔχει τὴν τῆς παραλίας διάθεσιν

1 “Orae” seems surely to be a variant spelling of “Oreitae,” as Groskurd points out.
GEOGRAPHY, 15. 2. 7-8

7. There was a kind of plant like the laurel which caused any beast of burden which tasted of it to die with epilepsy, along with foaming at the mouth. And there was a prickly plant, the fruit of which strewed the ground, like cucumbers, and was full of juice; and if drops of this juice struck an eye of any creature, they always blinded it. Further, many were choked by eating unripe dates. And there was also danger from the snakes; for herbs grew on the sand-hills, and beneath these herbs the snakes had crept unnoticed; and they killed every person they struck. It was said that among the Oreitae the arrows, which were made of wood and hardened in fire, were besmeared with deadly poisons; and that Ptolemaeus was wounded and in danger of losing his life; and that when Alexander was asleep someone stood beside him and showed him a root, branch and all, which he bade Alexander to crush and apply to the wound; and that when Alexander awoke from his sleep he remembered the vision, sought for, and found, the root, which grew in abundance; and that he made use of it, both he himself and the others; and that when the barbarians saw that the antidote had been discovered they surrendered to the king. But it is reasonable to suppose that someone who knew of the antidote informed the king, and that the fabulous element was added for the sake of flattery. Having arrived at the royal seat of the Gedrosii on the sixtieth day after leaving the Orae,¹ Alexander gave his multitudinous army only a short rest and then set out for Carmania.

8. Such, then, on the southern side of Ariana, is about the geographical position of the seaboard and
καὶ τῆς ύπερκειμένης πλησίον γῆς τῆς τῶν Γεδρωσίων καὶ 'Ωρειτών. πολλῇ δ’ ἐστὶ καὶ εἰς τὴν μεσόγαιαν ἀνέχουσα καὶ ἡ Γεδρωσία μέχρι τοῦ συνάψα τράγγας τε καὶ 'Αραχωτοῖς καὶ Παροπαμισάδαις; περὶ δὲ Ἐρατοσθένης οὕτως εὐρηκεν (οὐ γὰρ ἔχομεν τι λέγειν βέλτιον περὶ αὐτῶν). ὀρίζεσθαι μὲν γὰρ φησι τὴν 'Αριανῆν ἐκ μὲν τῶν πρὸς ἑώ τῷ Ἴνδῳ, πρὸς νότον δὲ τῇ μεγάλῃ θαλάττῃ, πρὸς ἀρκτοῦ δὲ τῷ Παροπαμισῷ καὶ τοῖς ἔξης ὀρεσὶ μέχρι Κασπίων πυλῶν, τὰ δὲ πρὸς ἐστέρα τοῖς αὐτοῖς ὅροις, οἷς ἡ μὲν Παρθυνή πρὸς Μηδίαν, ἡ δὲ Καρμανία πρὸς τὴν Παρατακηνήν καὶ Περσίδα διώρισται πλάτος δὲ τῆς χώρας τοῦ τοῦ Ἴνδοῦ μῆκος τὸ ἀπὸ τοῦ Παροπαμισοῦ μέχρι τῶν ἐκβολῶν, μὺροι καὶ δισχίλιοι στάδιοι (οἱ δὲ τρισχίλιους φασί). μῆκος δὲ ἀπὸ Κασπίων πυλῶν, ὡς ἐν τοῖς Ἀσιατικοῖς σταθμοῖς ἀναγέραται, διττόν. μέχρι μὲν Ἀλεξανδρείας τῆς ἐν 'Αρίδου ἀπὸ Κασπίων πυλῶν διὰ τῆς Παρθυναίας μία καὶ ἡ αὐτῆς ὁδός· εἴδ’ ἡ μὲν ἐπ’ εὐθείας διὰ τῆς Βακτριανῆς καὶ τῆς ὑπερβάσεως τοῦ ὅρους εἰς Ὀρτόσπανα ἑπὶ τὴν ἐκ Βάκτρων τρίσοδον, ἣτις ἐστὶν ἐν τοῖς Παροπαμισάδαις· ἡ δ’ ἐκτρέπεται μικρὸν ἀπὸ τῆς 'Αρίδας πρὸς νότον εἰς Προφθασίαν τῆς Δραγγιανῆς· εἰτα πάλιν ἡ λοιπὴ μέχρι τῶν ὅρων τῆς

1 Ὀρτόσπανα, Casaubon and later editors, for Ὀρόσπανα.
2 ἑπὶ, Groskurd, for διὰ.

1 Strabo refers to his description in §§ 1–3 (above).
2 Ariana, not Gedrosia, as some think.
3 Merely a portion of Ariana.
GEOGRAPHY, 15. 2. 8

of the lands of the Gedrosii and Oreitae, which lands are situated next above the seaboards. It is a large country, and even Gedrosia reaches up into the interior as far as the Drangae, the Arachoti, and the Paropamisadae, concerning whom Eratosthenes has spoken as follows (for I am unable to give any better description). He says that Ariana is bounded on the east by the Indus River, on the south by the great sea, on the north by the Paropamisus mountain and the mountains that follow it as far as the Caspian Gates, and that its parts on the west are marked by the same boundaries by which Parthia is separated from Media and Carmania from Paratacenê and Persis. He says that the breadth of the country is the length of the Indus from the Paropamisus mountain to the outlets, a distance of twelve thousand stadia (though some say thirteen thousand); and that its length from the Caspian Gates, as recorded in the work entitled Asiatic Stathmi, is stated in two ways: that is, as far as Alexandreia in the country of the Arii, from the Caspian Gates through the country of the Parthians, there is one and the same road; and then, from there, one road leads in a straight line through Bactriana and over the mountain pass into Ortospana to the meeting of the three roads from Bactra, which city is in the country of the Paropamisadae; whereas the other turns off slightly from Aria towards the south to Prophthasia in Drangiana, and the remainder of it leads back to the boundaries of India and to the

\[\text{i.e. the various Halting-places in Asia. The same records have already been referred to in 15. 1. 11. The author of this work appears to have been a certain Amyntas, who accompanied Alexander on his expedition (see Athenaeus 11. 500 D, 12. 529 E, 2. 67 A, and Aelian 17. 17).}\]
'Ινδικής καὶ τοῦ 'Ινδοῦ. ὡστε μακροτέρα ἐστὶν αὐτὴ ἢ διὰ τῶν Δραγγών καὶ Αραχωτῶν, σταδίων μυρίων πεντακισχιλίων τριακοσίων ἡ πάσα. εἰ δὴ τις ἀφέλοι τοὺς χιλίους τριακοσίους, ἔχοι ἃν τὸ λοιπὸν τὸ ἐπὶ εὐθείας μῆκος τῆς χώρας, μυρίων καὶ τετρακισχιλίων· οὐ πολὺ γὰρ ἐλαττον τὸ τῆς παραλίας, κἂν παρανύξωσι τινες αὐτὸ, πρὸς τοῖς μοίροις τὴν Καρμανίαν ἔξακισχιλίων τιθέντες. ἢ γὰρ σὺν τοῖς κόλποις φαινόνται τιθέντες ἢ σὺν τῇ ἐντὸς τοῦ Περσικοῦ κόλπου παραλία τῇ Καρμανίκῃ. ἐπεκτείνεται δὲ τοῦνομα τῆς 'Αριανῆς μέχρι μέρους τινὸς καὶ Περσῶν καὶ Μηδών καὶ ἔτι τῶν πρὸς ἄρκτον Βακτρίων καὶ Σογδιανῶν· εἰσὶ γὰρ πῶς καὶ ὅμογλωττοί παρὰ μικρόν.

9. Ἡ δὲ τάξις τῶν ἐθνῶν τοιαύτη· παρὰ μὲν τὸν 'Ινδόν οἱ Παροπαμισάδαι, ὃν ὑπέρκειται ὁ Παροπαμισός ὁρὸς, εἰτ' Ἀραχωτοὶ πρὸς νότον, εἰτ' ἐφεξῆς πρὸς νότον Γεδρωσηνοὶ σὺν τοῖς ἄλλοις τοῖς τὴν παραλίαν ἔχονσιν· ἀπασὶ δὲ παρὰ τὰ πλάτη τῶν χωρίων παράκειται ὁ 'Ινδός. τούτων δ' (ἐκ μέρους) τῶν παρὰ τὸν 'Ινδόν ἔχουσί τινα 'Ινδοῖ, προτερον ὄντα Περσῶν· ἃ ἀφείλετο μὲν ὁ Ἀλέξανδρος τῶν Ἀριανῶν καὶ κατοικίας ἰδίαις συνεστήσατο, ἐδωκε δὲ Σέλενκος ὁ Νικάτωρ Σανδροκόττῳ, συνθεμένοι ἐπηγαμίαν καὶ ἀντι- λαβὼν ἐλέοντας πεντακοσίους· τοῖς Παροπα- μισάδαις δὲ παράκεινται πρὸς τὴν ἐσπέραν 'Αριου, τοῖς δὲ Ἀραχωτοῖς Δράγγαι καὶ τοῖς Γεδρωσήοις·

1 Instead of χιλίους Di read τρισχιλίους.
2 τό, Groskurd inserts. aὐτὸ x, aὐτῶν other MSS.
3 γὰρ σὺν Fz, γὰρ τὸν σὺν other MSS.
Indus; so that this road which leads through the country of the Drangae and Arachoti is longer, its entire length being fifteen thousand three hundred stadia. But if one should subtract one thousand three hundred, one would have as the remainder the length of the country in a straight line, fourteen thousand stadia; for the length of the seacoast is not much less,¹ although some writers increase the total, putting down, in addition to the ten thousand stadia, Carmania with six thousand more; for they obviously reckon the length either along with the gulfs or along with the part of the Carmanian seacoast that is inside the Persian Gulf; and the name of Ariana is further extended to a part of Persia and of Media, as also to the Bactrians and Sogdians on the north; for these speak approximately the same language, with but slight variations.

9. The geographical position of the tribes is as follows: along the Indus are the Paropamisadae, above whom lies the Paropamisus mountain: then, towards the south, the Arachoti: then next, towards the south, the Gedroseni, with the other tribes that occupy the seaboard; and the Indus lies, latitudinally, alongside all these places; and of these places, in part, some that lie along the Indus are held by Indians, although they formerly belonged to the Persians. Alexander took these away from the Arians and established settlements of his own, but Seleucus Nicator gave them to Sandrocottus, upon terms of intermarriage and of receiving in exchange five hundred elephants. Alongside the Paromisadae, on the west, are situated the Arii, and alongside the Arochoti and Gedrosii the Drangae; but the Arii

¹ The length given in § 1 (above) is 13,900.
οί δ' Ἀριοι τοῖς Δράγγαίς ἀμα καὶ πρὸς ἀρκτον παράκεινται καὶ πρὸς ἐσπέραν, ἐγκυκλούμενοι μικρά πῶς. ἦ δὲ Βακτριανή τῇ τε Ἀρία πρὸς ἀρκτον 1 παράκειται καὶ τοῖς Παροταμισάδαισι, δι' ὁπερ Ἀλέξανδρος ὑπερέβαλε τὸν Καύκασον, ἐλαύνων τῇ ἐπὶ Βάκτρων πρὸς ἐσπέραν δὲ ἐφεξής εἰς τοῖς Ἀριοῖς Παρθιανοῖ καὶ τὰ περὶ τὰς Κασπίους πῦλας· πρὸς νότον δὲ τούτοις ἦ ἔρημος τῆς Καρμανίας, εἰδ' ἡ λοιπὴ Καρμανία καὶ Γεдрωσία.

10. Γνοίη δ' ἄν τις τὰ περὶ τὴν λεχθείσαν ὀρεινήν ἑτὶ μᾶλλον, προσιστορίσας τὴν ὁδὸν, ἦ ἐχρῆσατο διώκων τοὺς περὶ Βησσόν ὡς ἐπὶ Βάκτρων Ἀλέξανδρος ἐκ τῆς Παρθυνής. εἰς γὰρ τὴν Ἀριανὴν ἥκεν· εἰτ' εἰς Δράγγας, ὅπου Φιλωταν ἀνείλε τὸν Παρμενίωνος νῖον, φωράσας ἐπιβουλὴν· ἐπεμψε δὲ καὶ εἰς Ἐκβάτανα τοὺς καὶ τὸν πατέρα αὐτοῦ ἀνελούντας, ὡς κοινώνων τῆς ἐπιβουλῆς. φασὶ δ' αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ δρομάδων καμήλων ὁδὸν ἡμερῶν τριάκοντα ἦ καὶ τετταράκοντα ἐνδεκατάους διανύσας καὶ τελευτήσας τὴν πράξιν. οἱ δ' Δράγγαι περσεῖζοντες τἀλλα κατὰ τὸν βίον οἶνον σπανίζοντες, γιᾶται δὲ παρ' αὐτοῖς καττήρος. εἰτ' ἐκ Δραγγῶν ἐπὶ τε τοὺς Ἐνεργήτας ἥκεν, οὐς ὁ Κύρος οὕτως ὤνόμασε, καὶ τοὺς Ἀραχωτοὺς, εἶτα διὰ τῶν Παροταμισάδων ἦ υπὸ Πλειάδος δύσιν· ἐστὶ δ' ὀρεινὴ καὶ κεχιονοβόλητο τότε, ὃστε χαλεπῶς ὤδευτο· πυκναὶ μέντοι κῶμαι δεχόμεναι πάντων εὐποροὶ πλὴν

1 ἀρκτον, Kramer and later editors, for ἀριστερόν.

1 i.e. Philotas. 2 i.e. “Benefactors.”
are situated alongside the Drangae on the north as well as on the west, almost surrounding a small part of their country. Bactriana lies to the north alongside both Aria and the Paropamisadace, through whose country Alexander passed over the Caucasus on his march to Bactra. Towards the west, next to the Arii, are situated the Parthians and the region round the Caspian Gates; and to the south of these lies the desert of Carmania; and then follows the rest of Carmania and Gedrosia.

10. One would understand still better the accounts of the aforesaid mountainous country if one inquired further into the route which Alexander took in his pursuit of Bessus from the Parthian territory towards Bactriana; for he came into Ariana, and then amongst the Drangae, where he put to death the son of Parmenio, whom he caught in a plot; and he also sent persons to Ecbatana to put to death the father of Philotas, as an accomplice in the plot. It is said that these persons, riding on dromedaries, completed in eleven days a journey of thirty days, or even forty, and accomplished their undertaking. The Drangae, who otherwise are imitators of the Persians in their mode of life, have only scanty supplies of wine, but they have tin in their country. Then, from the Drangae, Alexander went to the Evergetae, who were so named by Cyrus, and to the Arachoti; and then, at the setting of the Pleiad, through the country of the Paropamisadace, a country which is mountainous, and at that time was covered with snow, so that it was hard to travel. However, numerous villages, well supplied with everything

3 Cyrus the Elder—in return for their kindly services when he marched through the desert of Carmania (Arrian 3. 27, 37).
Strabo

εἶλαιον παρεμυθοῦντο τὰς δυσκολίας· εἰχόν τε ἐν ἀριστερά τὰς ἀκρωτείας. ἔστι δὲ τὰ μεσημβρινὰ μὲν τοῦ ὄρους τοῦ Παροπαμισοῦ Ἰνδική τε καὶ Ἀριανά· τὰ δὲ προσαρκτια τὰ μὲν πρὸς ἐστερέαν Βάκτρια, τὰ δὲ πρὸς ἐω τῶν ὑμῶν ὑμῖν πλὴν τερμίθου θαμμώδους ὀλίγης, ἀπορούμενος καὶ τροφῆς, ὅστε ταῖς τῶν κτηνῶν σαρξὶ χρήσθαι, καὶ ταύταις ὑμαῖς διὰ τὴν ἀξυλίαν· πρὸς δὲ τὴν ὑμοσιτίαν πεπτικῶν ἢν αὐτῶς τὸ σίλφιον, πολὺ πεφυκός. πεντεκαίδεκα ταῖς ἀπὸ τῆς κτισθείσης πόλεως καὶ τῶν χειμαδίων ῥίκεν εἰς Ἀδραψα, πόλιν τῆς Βακτριανῆς.

11. Περὶ ταύτα δὲ ποὺ τὰ μέρη τῆς ὑμῶν τῇ Ἰνδικῇ καὶ τὴν Χαραγήν εἶναι συμβαίνει· ἔστι δὲ τῶν ὑπὸ τοὺς Παρθαναίους αὐτὴ προσεχεστάτη τῇ Ἰνδικῇ· διέχει δὲ τῆς Ἀριανῆς δὲ Ἀραχωτῶν καὶ τῆς λεχθείσης ὧρεινής σταδίους μυρίους ἐνακισχίλους. ταύτην δὲ τὴν χώραν διεξίων Κρατερός, καταστρεφόμενος ἄμα τοὺς ἀπεθοῦντας, ἥει συμμῆξαι τὴν ταχίστην σπεύδων τῷ βασιλεῖ. καὶ

1 τὰ δὲ πρὸς ἐω τῶν ὑμῶν, lacuna supplied by Jones. τοῖς Βακτρίοις βαρβάρων omitted by E (this MS., however, leaves a space of about three words) and by moz; τοῖς Βακτρίοις βαρβάρωι ἴναι, Casaubon and Corais (who, however, place an asterisk before the words); Kramer conj. τὰ δὲ πρὸς ἐω Σούδιανα (citing 11. 8. 8, 11. 11. 2, 3); Müller-Dübnner and Meineke merely indicate a lacuna before τοῖς Βακτρίοις βαρβάρων.

1 Strabo seems to refer to the juice of the “terebinth” above-mentioned.

146
except oil, received them and alleviated their troubles; and they had the mountain summits on their left. Now the southern parts of the Paropamisus mountain belong to India and Ariana; but as for the parts on the north, those towards the west belong to the Bactrians, whereas those towards the east belong to the barbarians who border on the Bactrians. He spent the winter here, with India above him to the right, and founded a city, and then passed over the top of the mountain into Bactriana, through roads that were bare of everything except a few terebinth trees of the shrub kind; and was so in lack of food that it was necessary to eat the flesh of the beasts of burden, and, for lack of wood, even to eat it raw. But the silphium, which grew in abundance there, was helpful in the digestion of the raw food. On the fifteenth day after founding the city and leaving his winter quarters, he came to Adrapsa, a city in Bactriana.

11. Somewhere in the neighbourhood of these parts of the country that borders on India lies Chaarene; and this, of all the countries subject to the Parthians, lies closest to India. It is distant from Ariana, through the land of the Arachoti and the above-mentioned mountainous country, nineteen thousand stadia. Craterus traversed this country, at the same time subduing all who refused to submit, and went by the quickest route, being eager to join

2 "Adrapsa" is probably an error for "Gadrapsa" (see Vol. V, p. 280, note 3).
3 An error, apparently, for Aria.
4 This figure, as given in the MSS., is preposterous. But a slight emendation yields "ten, or nine, thousand stadia," which is more nearly correct.
δὴ περὶ τοὺς αὐτοὺς χρόνους σχεδὸν τι συνεδραμοῦν εἰς τὴν Καρμανίαν αἱ πεζαὶ δυνάμεις ἀμφότεραι. καὶ μικρὸν ὕστερον οἱ περὶ Νέαρχον εἰσέπλεον εἰς τὸν Περσικὸν κόλπον, πολλὰ ταλαιπωρήσαντες διὰ τὴν ἄλην καὶ τὴν ταλαιπωρίαν καὶ τὰ μεγέθη τῶν κητῶν.

12. Εἰκὸς μὲν οὖν πρὸς ὑπερβολὴν ἡδολεσχη-
κέναι πολλὰ τοὺς πλεύσαντας, ὅμως δ᾽ οὖν εἰρή-
κασι παραδηλοῦντες ἀμα καὶ τὸ παραστᾶν αὐτοῖς
πάθος, διότι προσδοκία μᾶλλον ἢ κίνδυνος ὑπῆρχε
τοῖς ἀληθέσι. τὸ δὲ μάλιστα παράττον φυσητήρων
μεγέθη, ῥοῦν ἀπεργαζομένων μέγαν ἅθροον καὶ
ἀχλύν ἐκ τῶν ἀναφυσισμάτων, ὡστε τὰ πρὸ ποδῶν
μέρη μὴ ὀρᾶσθαι· ἔπει δ᾽ οἱ καθηγεμόνες τοῦ
πλοῦ, δεδιότων ταῦτα τῶν ἀνθρώπων, τὴν δ᾽
αἰτίαν οὐχ ὀρῶντων, ἐμήνυσαν, ὅτι θηρία εἰς,
τάχα δ᾽ ἀπαλλάττοντο σάλπιγγος ἄκουσαντα
καὶ κρότου, ἐκ τοῦτο Νέαρχος ταῖς ναυσὶν ἐπήγε
μὲν τὸ ῥόθιον, καθ᾽ ἀπερ ἐκώλυν, καὶ ἀμα ταῖς
σάλπιγξιν ἐφόβησε· τὰ δὲ θηρία ἔδυνεν, ἐφ᾽ ἀνε-
φαίνετο κατὰ πρύμναιν, ὡστε ναυμαχίας ἀγωνίαν
παρεῖχεν· ἀλλ᾽ αὐτίκα ἁφίστατο.

13. Δέγγουσι μὲν οὖν καὶ οἱ νῦν πλέοντες εἰς
Ἰνδοὺς μεγέθη θηρίων καὶ ἐπιφανείας, ἀλλ᾽ οὖτε
ἀθρῶν οὔτ᾽ ἐπιφερομένων πολλάκις, ἀλλ᾽ ἀποσο-
βηθέντα τῇ κραυγῇ καὶ τῇ σάλπιγγι ἀπαλλάτ-
the king; and indeed both forces of infantry gathered together in Carmania at about the same time. And a little later Nearchus sailed with his fleet into the Persian Gulf, having often suffered distress because of his wanderings and hardships and the huge whales.

12. Now it is reasonable to suppose that those who made the journey by sea have prated in many cases to the point of exaggeration; but nevertheless their statements show indirectly at the same time the trouble with which they were afflicted—that underlying their real hardships there was apprehension rather than peril. But what disturbed them most was the spouting whales, which, by their spoutings, would emit such massive streams of water and mist all at once that the sailors could not see a thing that lay before them. But the pilots of the voyage informed the sailors, who were frightened at this and did not see the cause of it, that it was caused by creatures in the sea, and that one could get rid of them by sounding trumpets and making loud noises; and consequently Nearchus led his fleet towards the tumultuous spoutings of the whales, where they impeded his progress, and at the same time frightened them with trumpets; and the whales first dived, and then showed up at the sterns of the ships, thus affording the spectacle of a naval combat, but immediately made off.

13. Those who now sail to India, however, also speak of the size of these creatures and of their manner of appearance, but do not speak of them either as appearing in large groups or as often making attacks, though they do speak of them as being scared away and got rid of by shouts and
C 726 τεσθαί. φασὶ δ' αὐτὰ μὲν μὴ πλησιάζειν τῇ γῇ, τὰ δ' ὀστὰ διαλυθέντων ψυλλιζέντα ἐκκυμαίνεσθαι βαδίως καὶ χορηγείν τὴν λεχθείσαν ὑλὴν τοῖς Ἰχθυσφάγοις περὶ τὰς καλυβοποιίας. μέγεθος δὲ τῶν κητῶν φησιν ο Νέαρχος τριῶν καὶ εἴκοσιν ὄργιων. πιστευθέν τι δὲ ἱκανός ὑπὸ τῶν ἐν τῷ στόλῳ φησιν ο Νέαρχος ἐξελέγξαι ψεύδος ὦν· ὡς εἶχή τις ἐν τῷ πόρῳ νῆσος, ἢ ἀφανίζοι τοὺς προσορμισθέντας· κέρκουρον γὰρ τινα πλέοντα, ἑπειδὴ κατὰ τὴν νῆσον ταύτην ἐγεγόνει, μηκέτι ὀραθήναι· πεμφθέντας δὲ τινας ἑπὶ τὴν ξύλησιν ἐκβήναι μὲν μὴ θαρρείν εἰς τὴν νῆσον ἐκπλέοντας, ἀνακαλεῖν δὲ κραυγῇ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους, μηδένος δ' ὑπακούοντος, ἐπανελθεῖν. ἀπάντων δ' αἰτιωμένων τὴν νῆσον, αὐτὸς ἐφὶ πλεῦσαι καὶ προσορμισθείς ἐκβήναι μετὰ μέρους τῶν συμπλευσάντων καὶ περιελθεῖν τὴν νῆσον· ὡς δ' οὔδὲν εὕρισκεν ἱχνος τῶν ξυλομένων, ἀπογνώντα ἐπανελθεῖν καὶ διδάξαι τοὺς ἀνθρώπους, ὡς ἡ μὲν νῆσος ψευδὴ τὴν αἰτίαν ἔχοι (καὶ γὰρ αὐτὸ καὶ τοῖς συνεκβάσιν ὦ αὐτὸς ὑπάρξαι ἄν 1 φθόρος), ἀλλος δὲ τις τῷ κέρκουρῳ τρόπος τοῦ ἀφανισμοῦ συμβαίνη, μυρίων ὄντων δυνατῶν.  

14. Ἡ δὲ Καρμανία τελευταία μὲν ἐστὶ τῆς ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ 2 παραλίας, ἀρκτικωτέρα δ' ἐστὶ πολὺ τῆς τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ ἐκβολῆς· τὸ μὲντοι πρῶτον αὐτῆς ἄκρον ἐκκείται πρὸς νότον εἰς τὴν μεγάλην

1 ἄν, added by moz and the editors.
2 The words παραλίας . . . Ἰνδοῦ are omitted by all MSS. except EF.
trumpets. They say that these creatures do not approach the land, but that the bones of those that have died, when bared of flesh, are readily thrown ashore by the waves, and supply the Ichthyophagi with the above-mentioned material for the construction of their huts.¹ According to Nearchus, the size of the whales is twenty-three fathoms.² Nearchus says that he found to be false a thing confidently believed by the sailors in the fleet—I mean their belief that there was an island in the passage which caused the disappearance of all who moored near it; for he says that, although a certain light boat on a voyage was no longer to be seen after it approached this island, and although certain men sent in quest of the lost people sailed out past the island and would not venture to disembark upon it, but called the people with loud outcry, and, when no one answered their cry, came on back, yet he himself, though one and all charged their disappearance to the island, sailed thither, moored there, disembarked with a part of those who sailed with him, and went all over it; but that he found no trace of the people sought, gave up his search, came on back, and informed his people that the charge against the island was false (for otherwise both he himself and those who disembarked with him would have met with the same destruction), but that the disappearance of the light boat took place in some other way, since countless other ways were possible.

14. Carmania is last on the seaboard that begins at the Indus, though it is much more to the north than the outlet of the Indus. The first promontory of Carmania, however, extends out towards the

² *i.e.* about 140 feet in length.
STRABO

θάλατταν, ποιήσασα 1 δὲ τὸ στόμα τοῦ Περσικοῦ κόλπου πρὸς τὴν ἀπὸ τῆς εὐδαίμονος Ἀραβίας ἀκραν, ἐν ἀπόφει οὖσαν, κάμπτεται πρὸς τὸν Περσικὸν κόλπον, ἔως ἄν συνάψῃ τῇ Περσίδι: πολλὴ δὲ καὶ ἐν ἑκτεινομένη μεταξὺ τῆς Γεδρωσίας καὶ τῆς Περσίδος, παραλάττουσα πλέον τῆς Γεδρωσίας πρὸς τὴν ἀρκτον. δὴλοι δ' ἡ εὐκαρπία· καὶ γὰρ πάμφορος καὶ μεγαλοδένδρος πλὴν ἐλαίας καὶ ποταμοῖς κατάρρυτος. ἡ δὲ Γεδρωσία διαφέρει μικρὸν τῆς τῶν Ἰχθυοφάγων, ὡστ' ἀκαρπία κατέχει πολλάκις: διὸ φυλάττουσι τὸν ἐναύσιον καρπὸν εἰς ἑτη πλεῖον ταμιεύμενοι. ὁυγηςκρυτος δὲ λέγει ποταμὸν ἐν τῇ Καρμανία καταφέροντα ψῆγματα χρυσοῦ· καὶ ὅρυκτον δὲ εἶναι μέταλλον καὶ ἀργύρου καὶ χαλκοῦ καὶ μίλτου· ὅρη τε εἶναι δύο, τὸ μὲν ἄρσενικον, τὸ δὲ ἅλος. ἔχει δὲ των καὶ ἐρημῶν συνάπτουσαν ᾗδη τῇ Παρθναία καὶ τῇ Παραιτακηνη. γεώργια δ' ἔχει παραπλήσια τοῖς Περσικοῖς, τά τε ἄλλα καὶ ἄμπελον· ταύτης δ' ἡ Καρμανία λεγομένη παρ' ἦμιν καὶ διπτχυν ἐχεὶ πολλάκις τὸν βότρυν, πυκνόρωγα τε ὅντα καὶ μεγαλόρρωγα, ἢν εἰκὸς εἰκεὶ ἐνεργεστέραν εἶναι. χρῶνται δ' ὅνοις οἱ πολλοὶ καὶ πρὸς πόλεμον σπάνει τῶν ἵππων· ὅνων τε θύουσι τῷ Ἀρει, ὅπερ καὶ 3 σέβονται θεῶν μόνον, καὶ εἰσὶ πολέμισται. γαμεῖ δ' οὐδείς, πρὶν ἀν πολεμίου

1 ποιήσασα, Kramer, for ποιήσα. 2 ἐν, E inserts. 3 ὅπερ καὶ, Corais, from conj. of Bertram, for ὅν πέρσαι.

1 So the Greek word, but of course Strabo means yellow orpiment (arsenic trisulphide).

C 727

152
GEOGRAPHY, 15. 2. 14

south into the great sea; and Carmania, after forming, along with the cape that extends from Arabia Felix, which is in full view, the mouth of the Persian Gulf, bends towards the Persian Gulf until it borders on Persis. Carmania is a large country and, in the interior, extends between Gedrosia and Persis, although it deviates more towards the north than Gedrosia. This is plainly indicated by its fruitfulness; for it produces all manner of fruits, is full of large trees except the olive, and is also watered by rivers. Gedrosia differs but little from the country of the Ichthyophagi, and therefore often suffers crop failures; and on this account they keep the annual crop in storage, dealing it out for several years. Onesicritus speaks of a river in Carmania that brings down gold-dust; and he says that there are also mines of silver and copper and ruddle, and also that there are two mountains, one consisting of arsenic and the other of salt. Carmania also has a desert which borders at once upon Parthia and Paraetacene. And it has farm crops similar to those of the Persians, the vine among all the rest. It is from this vine that “the Carmanian,” as we here call it, originated—a vine which often has clusters of even two cubits, these clusters being thick with large grapes; and it is reasonable to suppose that this vine is more flourishing there than here. Because of scarcity of horses most of the Carmanians use asses, even for war; and they sacrifice an ass to Ares, the only god they worship, and they are a warlike people. No one marries before he has cut

2 i.e. at its north-western corner.
3 In circumference, surely.
κεφαλὴν ἀποτεμῶν ἀνενέγκη ἐπὶ τὸν βασιλέα· ὁ δὲ τὸ κρανίον μὲν ἐπὶ τῶν βασιλείων ἀνατιθησι, τὴν δὲ γλώτταν λεπτοτομῆσας καὶ\(^1\) καταμίζας ἀλεύρω, γενσάμενος αὐτὸς δίδωσι τῷ ἀνενέγκαντι καὶ τοῖς οἰκείοις καταστήσασθαι· ἐνδοξότατος δ’ ἐστιν, ὃ πλείσται κεφαλαὶ ἀνηνέχθησαν. Νέαρχος δὲ τὰ πλείστα ἐθη καὶ τὴν διάλεκτον τῶν Καρμανίτων Περσικά τε καὶ Μηδικᾶ εὑρηκε. τὸ δὲ στόμα τοῦ Περσικοῦ κόλπου οὐ\(^2\) μείζον διάρματος ἠμερησίου.

III

1. Μετὰ δὲ Καρμανίαν ἡ Περσίζ ἐστι, πολλὴ μὲν ἐν τῇ παραλίᾳ τοῦ ἀπ’ αὐτῆς ὀνομαζομένου κόλπου, πολὺ δὲ μείζων ἐν τῇ μεσογαίᾳ, καὶ μάλιστα ἐπὶ μῆκος τὸ ἀπὸ τοῦ νότου καὶ τῆς Καρμανίας ἐπὶ τὰς ἀρκτοὺς καὶ τὰ περὶ Μηδίαν ἑθν. τριτῇ\(^3\) δ’ ἐστὶ καὶ τῇ φύσει καὶ τῇ τῶν ἀέρων κράσει. ἡ μὲν γὰρ παραλία καυματηρᾶ τε καὶ ἀμμόδης\(^4\) καὶ σπανιστή καρποῖς ἐστὶ πλὴν φοινίκων (ὅσον ἐν τετρακισχιλίοις καὶ τετρακοσίοις ἡ τριακοσίοις ἐξεταξομενὴ σταδίοις, καταστρέφουσα εἰς ποταμὸν μεγίστον τῶν ταύτης, καλούμενον ’Ὀρόατων’). ἡ δ’ ὑπὲρ ταύτης ἐστὶ πάμφορος καὶ πεδινή καὶ θρεματικὴ ἀρίστη τροφός, ποταμοῖς τε καὶ λίμναις πληθυνεῖ. τρίτη δ’ ἐστὶν ἡ πρὸς βορρᾶν χειμέριος καὶ ὀρεινῇ πρὸς δὲ ταῖς ἐσχαταις εἰσὶν οἱ καμηλοβοσκοὶ. μῆκος

1 καὶ, added by νς and the editors.
2 οὐ, inserted by Corais.
3 τριτῇ Ἐκ, τρίτη other MSS.
off the head of an enemy and brought it to the king; and the king stores the skull in the royal palace; and he then minces the tongue, mixes it with flour, tastes it himself, and gives it to the man who brought it to him, to be eaten by himself and family; and that king is held in the highest repute to whom the most heads have been brought. Nearchus states that the language and most of the customs of the Carmanians are like those of the Medes and Persians. The voyage across the mouth of the Persian Gulf requires no more than one day.

III

1. After Carmania one comes to Persis. A large portion of this country lies on the seaboar of the gulf which is named after it, but a much larger portion of it lies in the interior, particularly in the direction of its length, that is, from the south and Carmania towards the north and the tribes of Media. Persis is of a threefold character, both in its nature and in the temperature of its air. For, in the first place, its seaboar is burning hot, sandy, and stinted of fruits except dates (its length is reckoned at about forty-four, or forty-three, hundred stadia, and it terminates at the largest of the rivers in that part of the world, the Oroatis, as it is called); secondly, the portion above the seaboar produces everything, is level, and is excellent for the rearing of cattle, and also abounds with rivers and lakes; the third portion, that on the north, is wintry and mountainous; and it is on the borders of this portion that the camel-breeders live. Now, according to Eratos-

4 ἀμμάδης, Tyrwhitt, for ἀνεμάδης; so the later editors.
μὲν οὖν ἦστι κατ' Ἑρατοσθένη τὸ ἐπὶ τὰς ἄρκτους καὶ τὰς Κασπίους πύλας περὶ ὀκτακισχιλίων, κατὰ τινας προπιπτούσας ἀκρας, λοιπῇ δ' ἦστιν ἐπὶ Κασπίους πύλας οὐ πλείον ἢ τῶν δισχιλίων πλάτος δὲ τὸ ἐν τῇ μεσογαίᾳ τὸ ἀπὸ Σοῦσων εἰς Περσέπολιν 1 στάδιοι τετρακισχίλιοι διακόσιοι, καντεῖθεν ἐπὶ τοὺς τῆς Καρμανίας ὄρους ἄλλοι χίλιοι ἐξακόσιοι. φῦλα δὲ 2 οἰκεῖ τὴν χώραν οἳ τε Πατεισχορεῖς λεγόμενοι καὶ οἱ 'Αχαιμενίδαι καὶ οἱ Μάγοι' οὕτως μὲν οὖν σεμνὸν τινὸς εἰσι βίου ξηλωταί, Κύρτιοι δὲ καὶ Μάρδοι 3 ληστρικοί, ἄλλοι δὲ γεωργικοί.

2. Σχεδὸν δὲ τι καὶ Ἡ Σουσίς μέρος γεγένηται τῆς Περσίδος, μεταξὺ αὐτῆς κειμένη καὶ τῆς Βαβυλωνίας, ἔχουσα πόλιν ἀξιολογομένην τὰ Σοῦσα. οἱ γὰρ Πέρσαι κρατήσαντες Μῆδων καὶ ὁ Κύρος, ὥρωτες τὴν μὲν οἰκείαν γῆν ἐπ' ἐσχάτως ποι ταττομένην, τὴν δὲ Σουσίδα ἐνυδάτω καὶ πλησιασάτερα τῆς Βαβυλωνία καὶ τῶς ἄλλοις ἔθνεσιν, ἐνταῦθα ἐθέντο τὸ τῆς ἡγεμονίας βασιλείου' ἀμα καὶ τὸ ὄμορον τῆς χώρας ἀποδεξάμενοι καὶ τὸ ἀξίωμα τῆς πόλεως καὶ κρείττον τὸ μηδέποτε καθ' εαυτὴν τὴν Σουσίδα πραγμάτων μεγάλων ἐπῆβολον γεγονέναι, ἀλλ' ἀεὶ ὑφ' ἐτέροις ὑπάρξαι καὶ ἐν μέρει τετάχθαι 4 συστήματος μείζονος, πλὴν εἰ ἄρα τὸ πάλαι ὑπὸ ταῦτας ἥρως. λέγεται γὰρ δὴ καὶ κτίσμα Τιθωνοῦ Μέμνονος πατρός, κύκλων ἔχουσα ἐκατον καὶ εἰκοσι σταδίων,

1 Περσέπολις E, Περσαίπολις other MSS.
2 δὲ, the editors, for τε.
3 Μάρδοι, Casaubon, for Μαραδ.
4 τετάχθαι, Corais, for τετακται.
thenes, the length of the country towards the north and the Caspian Gates is about eight thousand stadia, if reckoned from certain promontories, and the remainder to the Caspian Gates is not more than two thousand stadia; and the breadth, in the interior, from Susa to Persepolis, is four thousand two hundred stadia, and thence to the borders of Carmania sixteen hundred more. The tribes which inhabit the country are the Pateischoreis, as they are called, and the Achaemenidae and the Magi. Now the Magi follow with zeal a kind of august life, whereas the Cyrtii and the Mardi are brigands and others are farmers.

2. I might almost say that Susis also is a part of Persis; it lies between Persis and Babylonia and has a most notable city, Susa. For the Persians and Cyrus, after mastering the Medes, saw that their native land was situated rather on the extremities of their empire, and that Susa was farther in and nearer to Babylonia and the other tribes, and therefore established the royal seat of their empire at Susa. At the same time, also, they were pleased with the high standing of the city and with the fact that its territory bordered on Persis, and, better still, with the fact that it had never of itself achieved anything of importance, but always had been subject to others and accounted merely a part of a larger political organisation, except, perhaps, in ancient times, in the times of the heroes. For Susa too is said to have been founded by Tithonus the father of Memnon, with a circuit of one hundred and

1 The text seems to be corrupt. A clearer statement of this same dimension, as quoted from Eratosthenes, is given in 2. 1. 26.

2 In 2. 1. 26 the text reads "about three thousand stadia."
παραμήκης τῷ σχήματι εἰς ἀκρόπολις ἐκαλεῖτο Μεμνώνιον λέγονταί δὲ καὶ Κίσσιοι οἱ Σουσιοι φησὶ δὲ καὶ Άισχύλος τὴν μητέρα Μεμνώνος Κίσσιαν. ταφῆναι δὲ λέγεται Μέμνων περὶ Πάλτων τῆς Συρίας παρὰ Βαδάν ποταμόν, ὡς είρηκε Σιμωνίδης ἐν Μέμνων διθυράμβῳ τῶν Δηλιακῶν. τὸ δὲ τεῖχος φυκοδόμητο τῆς πόλεως καὶ ἱερὰ καὶ βασίλεια παραπλησίως, ὡσπέρ τὰ τῶν Βαβυλωνίων ἐξ ὅππης πληνθοῦ καὶ ἀσφάλτου, καθάπερ εἰρήκασι τίνες. Πολύκλειτος τε διακοσίων φησὶ τὸν κύκλον καὶ ἀτείχιστον.

3. Κοσμήσαντες δὲ τὰ ἐν Σουσιοι βασίλεια μάλιστα τῶν ἄλλων, οὐδὲν ἦττον καὶ τὰ ἐν Περσεπόλει καὶ τὰ ἐν Πασαργάδαις ἐξετιμήσαν καὶ ή γε γάζα καὶ οἱ θησαυροὶ καὶ τὰ μνήματα ἐνταῦθα ἦν τοὺς Πέρσαις, ὡς ἐν τότοις ἐρυμνοτέροις καὶ ἀμα προγονικοῖς. ἦν δὲ καὶ ἄλλα βασίλεια τὰ ἐν Γάβαισ ὑπὸ τοὺς ἀνωτέρω ποι ἐμερεί τῆς Περσίδος καὶ τὰ ἐν τῇ παραλίᾳ τὰ κατὰ τὴν Ταὸκην¹ λεγομένην. ταῦτα μὲν τὰ κατὰ τὴν τῶν Περσῶν ἀρχὴν, οἱ δ᾿ ύστερον ἄλλοις ἐχρήσαντο, ὡς εἰκός, ἐντελεστέροις τισίν, ἄτε καὶ τῆς Περσίδος ἡλαττώμενης ὑπὸ τε τῶν Μακεδόνων καὶ ἔτι μάλλον ὑπὸ τῶν Παρθανίων. καὶ γὰρ εἰ βασιλεύονται μέχρι νῦν ἰδιον βασιλεά ἐχοντες οἱ Πέρσαι, τῇ γε δυνάμει πλεῖστον ἀπολείπονται καὶ τῷ Παρθανίῳ προσέχουσι βασιλεῖ.

4. Τὰ μὲν οὖν Σουσα ἐν μεσογαίοις κεῖται ἐπὶ τῷ Χοάστῃ ποταμῷ περαιτέρῳ κατὰ τὸ ξεύγμα,

¹ Ταὸκην, Casaubon, for Ὄκην D, Ὄκην (Ὅκην F), other MSS.
158
twenty stadia, and oblong in shape; and its acropolis was called Memnonium; and the Susians are also called Cissians; and Aeschylus calls the mother of Memnon Cissia. Memnon is said to have been buried in the neighbourhood of Paltus in Syria, by the river Badas, as Simonides states in his dithyramb entitled Memnon, one of his Delian poems. The wall and the temples and the royal palace were built like those of the Babylonians, of baked brick and asphalt, as some writers state. Polycleitus says that the city is two hundred stadia in circuit and that it has no walls.

3. Although they adorned the palace at Susa more than any other, they esteemed no less highly the palaces at Persepolis and Pasargadæ; at any rate, the treasure and the riches and the tombs of the Persians were there, since they were on sites that were at the same time hereditary and more strongly fortified by nature. And there were also other palaces—that at Gabæ, somewhere in the upper parts of Persis, and that on the coast near Taocê, as it is called. These were the palaces in the time of the empire of the Persians, but the kings of later times used others, naturally less sumptuous, since Persis had been weakened, not only by the Macedonians, but still more so by the Parthians. For although the Persians are still under the rule of a king, having a king of their own, yet they are most deficient in power and are subject to the king of the Parthians.

4. Now Susa is situated in the interior on the Choaspes River at the far end of the bridge, but its

1 Persæ 17. 118.
διά χώρα μέχρι τῆς θαλάττης καθήκειν· καί ἐστιν αὐτῆς ἡ παραλία μέχρι τῶν ἐκβολῶν σχεδόν τι τοῦ Τίγριος ἀπὸ τῶν ὄρων τῆς Περσικῆς παραλίας σταδίων ὡς τρισχιλίων. οὕτω δὲ διὰ τῆς χώρας ὁ Χοάσπης εἰς τὴν αὐτὴν τελευτῶν παραλίαν, ἀπὸ τῶν Οὐξίων τὰς ἀρχὰς ἐχων. παρεμπίπτει γὰρ τὴς ὄρεως πραγματικαὶ καὶ ἀπότομος μεταξὺ τῶν Σουσίων καὶ τῆς Περσίδος, στενὰ ἔχουσα δυσπάροδα καὶ ἀνθρώποις ληστάς, οὗ μισθοὺς ἔπραττοντο καὶ αὐτοὺς τοὺς βασιλέας κατὰ τὴν ἐκ Σουσίων εἰς Πέρσας εἰσβολήν. 

Φησὶ δὲ Πολύκλειτος εἰς λίμνην τινα συμβάλλειν τὸν τε Χοάσπην καὶ τὸν Εὐλαίον 1 καὶ ἑτὶ τὸν Τίγριν, εἰτ' ἐκεῖδεν εἰς τὴν θαλάτταν ἐκδιδόναι· πρὸς δὲ τῇ λίμνῃ καὶ ἔμποριον εἶναι, τῶν ποταμῶν μὲν οὐ δεχομένων τὰ ἐκ τῆς θαλάττης, οὐδὲ καταπεμπόντων διὰ τοὺς καταράκτας ἐπίτηδες γενομένους, πεζῶ δ' ἐμπορευομένων· ὅκτακοσίους γὰρ εἶναι σταδίους εἰς Σουσία λέγουσιν. 2 Ἀλλοι δὲ φασί τοὺς διὰ Σουσίων ποταμοὺς εἰς ἐν ῥέμα τοῦ Τίγριος συμπέπτειν κατὰ 3 τὰς μεταξὺ διώρυγας τοῦ Εὐφράτου· διὰ δὲ τούτῳ κατὰ τὰς ἐκβολὰς ὑπομάζεσθαι Πασίτιγριν.

5. Νέαρχος δὲ τὸν παράπλου περὶ τῆς Σουσίδος τεναγώδῃ φήσας πέρας αὐτοῦ λέγει τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμῶν· πρὸς δὲ τὸ στόματι κώμην οἰκεῖσθαι τὴν ὑποδεχομένην τὰ ἐκ τῆς 'Αραβίας φορτία· συνάπτειν γὰρ ἐφεξῆς τὴν τῶν Ἀράβων παραλίαν τῷ στόματι τοῦ Εὐφράτου καὶ τοῦ Πασιτίγριος,

1 CDohx read Εὐλειον.
2 Ἀλλοι, after λέγουσι, Corais omits.
3 κατά, Corais and Meineke, for καί.
territory extends down to the sea; and its seaboard is about three thousand stadia in length, extending from the boundaries of the Persian seaboard approximately to the outlets of the Tigris. The Choaspes River flows through Susis, terminating at the same seaboard, and has its sources in the territory of the Uxii; for a kind of mountainous country intrudes between the Susians and Persis; it is rugged and sheer, and has narrow defiles that are hard to pass, and was inhabited by brigands, who would exact payments even from the kings themselves when they passed from Susis into Persis. Polycleitus says that the Choaspes, the Eulæus, and also the Tigris meet in a kind of lake, and then empty from that lake into the sea; and that there is an emporium near the lake, since, on account of the cataracts, purposely constructed, the rivers cannot receive the merchandise that comes in from the sea nor bring down any either, and that all traffic is carried on by land; for the distance to Susa is said to be eight hundred\(^1\) stadia. Others, however, say that the rivers which flow through Susis meet in one stream, that of the Tigris, opposite the intermediate canals of the Euphrates; and that on this account the Tigris, at its outlets, has the name of Pasitigris.\(^2\)

5. Nearchus says that the coast of Persis is covered with shoal-waters and that it ends at the Euphrates River; and that at the mouth of this river there is an inhabited village which receives the merchandise from Arabia; for the seaboard of the Arabians borders next on the mouth of the Euphrates and the Pasitigris.

---

\(^1\) Apparently an error for eighteen hundred.

\(^2\) The Pasitigris, properly so called, is one of the rivers which flow from Susis (see Arrian, *Anab. 3. 17. 1, Ind. 42. 4, and Pliny, 6. 129 and 145).
STRABO

tο δὲ μεταξὺ πάν ἐπέχειν λίμνην, τὴν ὑποδεχομένην τὸν Τίγριν. ἀναπλεύσαντες δὲ τῷ Πασίτιγμενοι σταδίους πεντήκοντα καὶ ἐκατόν, τὴν σχεδίαν εἶναι τὴν ἄγουσαν ἐπὶ Σοῦσων ἐκ τῆς Περσίδος, ἀπέχουσαν Σοῦσων σταδίους ἐξήκοντα· τὸν δὲ Πασίτιγμην ἀπὸ τοῦ Ὀροάτιδος διέχειν περὶ δισεκατόμην σταδίους· διὰ δὲ τῆς λίμνης ἐπὶ τὸ στόμα τοῦ Τίγριος τὸν ἀνάπλουν εἶναι σταδίων ἐξακοσίων· πλησίον δὲ τοῦ στόματος κόμην οἰκεῖσθαι τὴν Σοῦσιαινήν, διέχουσαν τῶν Σοῦσων σταδίους πεντακοσίους· ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ στόματος τοῦ Ἐυφράτου καὶ μέχρι Βαβυλῶνος τὸν ἀνάπλουν εἶναι διὰ γῆς ὁ οἰκουμένης καλῶς σταδίων πλεῖον ἢ τρισεκατόμην. Ὄνησίκριτος δὲ πάντας φησὶν ἐκβάλλειν εἰς τὴν λίμνην, τῶν τοῦ Ἐυφράτην καὶ τοῦ Τίγριν· ἐκπεσόντα δὲ πάλιν τὸν Ἐυφράτην ἐκ τῆς λίμνης ἴδιο στόματι πρὸς τὴν βάλατταν συνάπτειν.

6. Ἔστι δὲ καὶ ἄλλα πλεῖω στενὰ διεκβάλλοντι τὰ ἐν τοῖς Οὐξίοις κατ’ αὐτὴν τὴν Περσίδα, ἃ καὶ αὐτὰ βία διήλθεν Ἀλέξανδρος, κατὰ τὰς Περσικὰς πύλας καὶ κατ’ ἄλλους τόπους διεξόν τὴν χώραν, καὶ κατοπτεύσαν σπεύδων τὰ κυρίωτα καὶ τὰ γαξοφυλάκια, ἃ τοσοῦτος χρόνους ἐξεπτεπλήρωτο, οἷς ἐδασμολόγησαν Πέρσαι τὴν Ἀσίαν· ποταμοὺς δὲ διεβῆ πλείους τοὺς διαρρέοντας τὴν χώραν καὶ καταφερομένους εἰς τὸν Περσικὸν κόλπον. μετὰ γὰρ τὸν Χοάσπην ὁ Κοπράτας ἐστὶ καὶ ὁ Πασίτιγμης, δὲ ἐκ τῆς

1 γῆς, Tzschucke, from conj. of Casaubon, for τῆς.

1 Apparently an error for six hundred.

162
GEOGRAPHY, 15. 3. 5-6

gris, the whole of the intervening space being occupied by a lake, that is, the lake that receives the Tigris; and that on sailing up the Pasitigris one hundred and fifty stadia one comes to the raft-bridge that leads from Persis to Susa, being sixty \(^1\) stadia distant from Susa; and that the Pasitigris is about two thousand stadia distant from the Oroatis; and that the inland voyage on the lake to the mouth of the Tigris is six hundred stadia; and that near the mouth there is an inhabited Susian village,\(^2\) which is five hundred stadia distant from Susa; and that the voyage inland from the mouth of the Euphrates to Babylon, through a very prosperous land, is more than three thousand stadia. Onesicritus says that all the rivers empty into the lake, both the Euphrates and the Tigris; but that the Euphrates, again issuing from the lake, joins with the sea by its own separate mouth.

6. There are also several other narrow defiles as one passes out through the territory of the Uxii in the neighbourhood of Persis itself; and Alexander forced his way through these passes too, both at the Persian Gates and at other places, when he was passing through the country and was eager to spy out the most important parts of the country, and the treasure-holds, which had become filled with treasures in those long periods of time in which the Persians had collected tribute from Asia; and he crossed several rivers that flowed through the country and down into the Persian Gulf. For after the Choaspes, one comes to the Copratas River and the Pasitigris, which latter also flows from the

\(^2\) The name of this village, according to Arrian (\textit{Indica} 42), was Aginis.
Ούξιας καὶ αὐτὸς ἰεί· ἐστὶ δὲ καὶ Κῦρος ποταμός, διὰ τῆς κοίλης καλουμένης Περσίδος ῥέων περὶ Πασαργάδας, οὐ μετέλαβε τὸ ὄνομα βασιλεύς, ἀντὶ Ἀγραδάτου μετονομάσθης Κῦρος. πρὸς αὐτὴ δὲ τῇ Περσεπόλει τὸν Ἀράξην διέβη. ἦν δὲ Ἡ Περσέπολις ἧπερ Σουσα κάλλιστα κατεσκευασμένη μεγίστη πόλις; ἐξούσα βασιλεία ἐκτρεπῆ, καὶ μάλιστα τῇ πολυτελείᾳ τῶν κειμένων. ἰεί δ' ὁ Ἀράξης ἐκ τῶν Παραϊτακῶν συμβάλλει δ' εἰς αὐτὸν ὁ Μήδος, ἐκ Μηδίας ὀρμηθείς. φέροντα δὲ δ' αὐλώνος παμφόρου συνάπτοντος τῇ Καρμανίᾳ καὶ τοῖς ἐωθινοῖς μέρεσι τῆς χώρας, καθάπερ καὶ αὐτὴ Ἡ Περσεπόλις. ἐνεπλησε δὲ ὁ Ἀλεξανδρὸς τὰ ἐν C 730 Περσεπόλει 4 βασίλεια, τιμωρῶν τοῖς Ἑλλησίων, ὅτι κάκεινον ιερὰ καὶ πόλεις οἱ Πέρσαι πυρὶ καὶ σιδῆρῳ διεπόρθησαν.

7. Εἰτ' εἰς Πασαργάδας ἦκε· καὶ τούτῳ δ' ἦν βασίλειον ἀρχαίον. ἐνταῦθα δὲ καὶ τὸν Κῦρον τάφον εἶδεν ἐν παραδείσῳ, πύργον οὐ μέγαν, τῷ δασεί τῶν δένδρων ἐναποκεκρυμμένον, κάτω μὲν στερεόν, ἄνω δὲ στέγην ἔχοντα καὶ σηκῶν, στενῆν τελέως ἔχοντα τὴν εἴσοδον δ' ἦς παρελθείν εἰσω φησίν Ἀριστόβουλος, κελεύσαντος τοῦ βασιλέως, καὶ κοσμήσαι τὸν τάφον ἰδεῖν δὲ κλίνῃ τε χρυσῆν καὶ τράπεζαν σὺν ἐκτώμασι καὶ πύελον χρυσῆν καὶ ἐσθήτα πολλήν κόσμον τε λιθοκόλλητον κατὰ μὲν οὖν τὴν πρώτην ἐπιδημίαν ταῦτ' ἰδεῖν, ὡστερον δὲ συνηθήναι καὶ τὰ

1 Περσέπολις DEi, Περσαῖοπολις other MSS.
2 The words μετὰ . . . πόλις are found only in F.
3 CDFh read Παρετάκων.
GEOGRAPHY, 15. 3. 6–7

country of the Uxii. There is also a river Cyrus, which flows through CoelêPersis, as it is called, in the neighbourhood of Pasargadæ; and the king assumed the name of this river, changing his name from Agradatus to Cyrus. Alexander crossed the Araxes near Persepolis itself. Persepolis, next to Susa, was the most beautifully constructed city, and the largest, having a palace that was remarkable, particularly in respect to the high value of its treasures. The Araxes flows from the country of the Paraetaci; and this river is joined by the Medus, which has its source in Media. These rivers run through a very productive valley which borders on Carmania and the eastern parts of the country, as does also Persepolis itself. Alexander burnt up the palace at Persepolis, to avenge the Greeks, because the Persians had destroyed both temples and cities of the Greeks by fire and sword.

7. Alexander then went to Pasargadæ; and this too was an ancient royal residence. Here he saw also, in a park, the tomb of Cyrus; it was a small tower and was concealed within the dense growth of trees. The tomb was solid below, but had a roof and sepulchre above, which latter had an extremely narrow entrance. Aristobulus says that at the behest of the king he passed through this entrance and decorated the tomb; and that he saw a golden couch, a table with cups, a golden coffin, and numerous garments and ornaments set with precious stones; and that he saw all these things on his first visit, but that on a later visit the place had been robbed

1 Hollow.

4 Περσέπολις . . Περσεπόλει DEh, Περσαίπολις . . Περσαίπόλει other MSS.
μὲν ἄλλα ἐκκομισθῆναι, τὴν δὲ κλίνην θραυσθῆναι μόνον καὶ τὴν πύελον, μεταθέντων τὸν νεκρόν, δὲ οὖν δῆλον γενέσθαι, διότι προνομευτῶν ἔργον ἦν, οὐκὶ τοῦ σατράπου, καταλιπόντων ἀ μὴ δυνατὸν ἦν ραδίως ἐκκομίσαι· συμβῆναι δὲ ταῦτα, καίπερ φυλακῆς περικειμένης Μάγων, σίτισιν λαμβανόντων καθ' ἴμεραν πρόβατον, διὰ μὴν δὲ ἤππον. ἀλλ' ὁ ἐκτοπισμὸς τῆς 'Αλεξάνδρου στρατιᾶς εἰς Βάκτρα καὶ Ἰνδοὺς πολλά τε ἄλλα νεωτερισθῆναι παρεσκεύασε, καὶ δὴ καὶ τοῦθ' ἐν τῶν νεωτερισθέντων ὑπῆρξεν. οὖτω μὲν οὖν 'Αριστόβουλος εἴρηκε, καὶ τὸ ἑπίγραμμα δὲ ἀπομνημονεύει τούτῳ· ὃ ἀνθρωπε, ἐγὼ Κύρος εἰμί, ὅ τιν ἄρχῃν τοῖς Πέρσαις κτησάμενος καὶ τῆς 'Ασίας βασιλεύς· μὴ οὖν φθονῆσης μοι τοῦ μνήματος. 'Ονησίκριτος δὲ τὸν μὲν πῦργον δεκάστεγον εἴρηκε, καὶ ἐν μὲν τῇ ἀνωτάτῳ στέγῃ κείσθαι τὸν Κύρον, ἑπίγραμμα δ' εἶναι 'Ελληνικόν, Περσικὸς κεχαραγμένον γράμμασιν· ἐνθαδ' ἐγὼ κεῖμαι Κύρος βασιλεὺς βασιλέως· καὶ ἄλλο περσῖζων πρὸς τὸν αὐτὸν νοῦν.

8. Μέμνηται δ' ὁ Ὀνησίκριτος καὶ τὸ ἐπὶ τῷ ἄρειν τάφῳ γράμμα τόδε· φίλοις ἦν τοῖς φίλοις· ἱππεύς καὶ τοξότῃς ἀριστος ἐγενόμην· κυνηγών ἐκράτουν· πάντα ποιεῖν ἦδυνάμην. 'Αριστός δ' ὁ Σαλαμίνος πολὺ μὲν ἐστὶ νεώτερος τούτων, λέγει δὲ δίστεγον τὸν πῦργον καὶ μέγαν, ἐν δὲ τῇ

1 δ' ὁδ, Tyrwhitt, for δ' ὁδ; so the later editors.
2 τῷ moxz, τοῦ other MSS. 166
and everything had been carried off except the couch and the coffin, which had only been broken to pieces, and that the robbers had removed the corpse to another place, a fact which plainly proved that it was an act of plunderers, not of the satrap, since they left behind only what could not easily be carried off; and that the robbery took place even though the tomb was surrounded by a guard of Magi, who received for their maintenance a sheep every day and a horse every month. But just as the remoteness of the countries to which Alexander’s army advanced, Bactra and India, had led to numerous other revolutionary acts, so too this was one of the revolutionary acts. Now Aristobulus so states it, and he goes on to record the following inscription on the tomb: “O man, I am Cyrus, who acquired the empire for the Persians and was king of Asia; grudge me not, therefore, my monument.” Onesicritus, however, states that the tower had ten stories and that Cyrus lay in the uppermost story, and that there was one inscription in Greek, carved in Persian letters, “Here I lie, Cyrus, king of kings,” and another written in the Persian language with the same meaning.

8. Onesicritus records also the following inscription on the tomb of Dareius: “I was friend to my friends; as horseman and bowman I proved myself superior to all others; as hunter I prevailed; I could do everything.” Aristus of Salamis is indeed a much later writer than these, but he says that the tower has only two stories and is large; that it was

1 The horse, of course, was sacrificed to Cyrus (cf. Arrian 6.29).

3 ἐγενόμην, Xylander, for γενόμην.
Περσῶν διαδοχὴ ἱδρύσθαι, φυλάττεσθαι δὲ τὸν τάφον᾽ ἐπίγραμμα δὲ τὸ λεχθὲν Ἐλληνικόν καὶ ἄλλο Περσικὸν πρὸς τὸν αὐτὸν νοῦν. τοὺς δὲ Πασαργάδας ἐτίμησε Κύρος, ὅτι τὴν ύστάτην μάχην ἐνίκησεν 'Αστυάγγυν ἐνταῦθα τὸν Μήδον, καὶ τὴν ἀρχὴν τῆς Ἀσίας μετήνεγκεν εἰς ἑαυτὸν καὶ πόλιν ἐκτισε καὶ βασίλειον κατεσκεύασε τῆς νίκης μνημείον.

9. Πάντα δὲ τὰ ἐν τῇ Περσίδι χρήματα ἐξεσκενάσατο εἰς τὸν Σοῦσα, καὶ αὐτὰ θησαυρῶν καὶ κατασκευῆς μεστὰ· οὐδὲ τοῦθ' ἤγετο τὸ βασιλείον, ἀλλὰ τὴν Βαβυλῶνα, καὶ διενείπτο ταύτην προσκατασκευάζειν κἂνταῦθα δ᾽ ἐκεῖνο τὸ θησαυρόν. φασὶ δὲ, χωρὶς τῶν ἐν Βαβυλῶνι καὶ τῶν ἐν τῷ στρατόπεδῳ τῶν παρὰ 1 ταύτα μὴ ληφθέντων αὐτὰ τὰ ἐν Σοῦσοι καὶ τὰ ἐν Περσίδι τέτταρας μυριάδας ταλάντων ἐξετασθῆναι· τινὲς δὲ καὶ πέντε λέγουσιν· ἄλλοι δὲ πάντα πάντοθεν συναχθῆναι παραδεδώκασιν εἰς Ἐκβάτανα ὀκτωκαίδεκα μυριάδας ταλάντων· τὰ δὲ Δαρείῳ φυγόντι ἐκ τῆς Μηδίας συνεκκομισθέντα τάλαντα ὀκτακισχίλια διήρπασαν οἱ δολοφονήσαντες αὐτῶν.

10. Τὴν γοῦν Βαβυλῶνα ὁ Ἀλέξανδρος προεκρίνεν, ὅρων καὶ τῷ μεγέθει πολὺ ὑπερβάλλουσαν καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις. εὐδαίμων δ' οὖσα ἡ Σοῦσίς, ἐκτυροῦν τὸν ἄερα ἔχει καὶ 2 καυματηρῶν, καὶ μάλιστα τὸν περὶ τὴν πόλιν, ὥς φησιν ἐκεῖνος·

1 παρά, Corais, for περι.
2 καί, added by Eiw and the editors.

1 i.e. when the empire passed from the Medes to the Persians.

168
GEOGRAPHY, 15. 3. 8-10

built at the time of the succession of the Persians,¹ and that the tomb was kept under guard; and that there was one inscription written in Greek, that quoted above, and another written in the Persian language with the same meaning. Cyrus held Pasargadae in honour, because he there conquered Astyages the Mede in his last battle, transferred to himself the empire of Asia, founded a city, and constructed a palace as a memorial of his victory.

9. Alexander carried off with him all the wealth in Persis to Susa, which was also full of treasures and equipment; and neither did he regard Susa as the royal residence, but rather Babylon, which he intended to build up still further; and there too treasures lay stored. They say that, apart from the treasures in Babylon and in the camp, which were not included in the total, the value of those in Susis and Persis alone was reckoned at forty thousand talents, though some say fifty; and others have reported that all treasures from all sources were brought together at Ecbatana and that they were valued at one hundred and eighty thousand talents; and the treasures which were carried along with Dareius in his flight from Media, eight thousand talents in value, were taken as booty by those who slew him.

10. At all events, Alexander preferred Babylon, since he saw that it far surpassed the others, not only in its size, but also in all other respects. Although Susis is fertile, it has a hot and scorching atmosphere, and particularly in the neighbourhood of the city, according to that writer.² At any rate, he says that

² Whether Aristobulus or Nearchus or Onesicritus, the translator does not know.

169
τὰς γούν σαύρας καὶ τοὺς ὀφεῖς, θέρους ἀκμάζοντος τοῦ ἥλιου κατὰ μεσημβρίαν, διαβίβαινε μὴ φθάνειν τὰς ὁδοὺς τὰς ἐν τῇ πόλει, ἀλλ’ ἐν μέσαις περιφλέγεσθαι ὑπὲρ τῆς Περσίδος μηδαμοῦ συμβαίνειν, καὶ περὶ νοτιώτερας οὐσιᾶς λουτρὰ δὲ ψυχρὰ προτεθέντα ἐκθερμάνεσθαι παραχρῆμα, τὰς δὲ κριθὰς διασπαρέσας εἰς τὸν ἥλιον ἀλλεσθαί, 1 καθάπερ ἐν τοῖς ἑπτά χρόνισ. 2 διὸ καὶ ταῖς στέγαις ἐπὶ δύο πῆχεις τὴν γῆν ἐπιτίθεσθαι, ὑπὸ δὲ τοῦ βάρους ἀναγκάζεσθαι στενῶς μὲν μακρὸς 3 δὲ ποιεῖσθαι τοὺς ὀίκους, ἀπορουμένους μακρῶν μὲν δοκῶν, δεομένους δὲ μεγάλων ὀίκων διὰ τὸ πνῦγος. ἰδιον δὲ τι πάσχειν τὴν φοινικίνην δοκοῦσθαι στερεὰν γὰρ ὀυσίαν, παλαιομένην οὐκ εἰς τὸ κατώ τῆς ἐνδοσειν λαμβάνειν, ἀλλ’ εἰς τὸ ἀνω μέρος κυρτοῦσθαι τῷ βάρει καὶ βέλτιον ἀνέχειν τὴν ὅροφην. ἀϋτιον δὲ τῶν καυμάτων λέγεται τὸ ὑπερκείσθαι πρὸς ἀρκτόν ὦρη υψηλὰ τὰ προσεκδεχόμενα ἀπαντᾶσι τοὺς βορείους ἀνέμους. ὑπερπετεῖς δὴ πνέουτες ἀπὸ τῶν ἀκρωτηρίων μετέωροι τε τῶν πεδίων οὐ προσάπτονται, ἀλλὰ παρελαύνουσιν 4 εἰς τὰ νοτιώτερα τῆς Σουσίδος. αὕτη δὲ νηρείας κατέχεται, καὶ μάλιστα τότε, ἡνίκα ἐτησία τὴν ἀλλὴν γῆν καταψύχουσιν ἐκκαυμένην ὑπὸ τῶν καυμάτων.

11. Πολύσιτος δ’ ἄγαν ἔστιν, ὡστε ἐκατοντάχοιν δὲ ὀμαλοῦ καὶ κριθῆν καὶ πυρὸν ἐκτρέφειν, ἔστι δ’ ὅτε καὶ διακοσιοντάχουν. διόπερ

1 ἀλλεσθαί, Corais and Meineke, who cite Plutarch (Al. x. 35) and Theophrastus (Hist. Plant. 8. 11), for ἀλλεσθαί μον, ἀλείνεσθαι other MSS.
when the sun is hottest, at noon, the lizards and the snakes could not cross the streets in the city quickly enough to prevent their being burnt to death in the middle of the streets. He says that this is the case nowhere in Persis, although Persis lies more to the south; and that cold water for baths is put out in the sun and immediately heated, and that barley spread out in the sun bounces like parched barley in ovens; and that on this account earth is put on the roofs of the houses to the depth of two cubits, and that by reason of this weight the inhabitants are forced to build their houses both narrow and long; and that, although they are in want of long beams, yet they need large houses on account of the suffocating heat; and that the palm-tree beam has a peculiar property, for, although it is rigid, it does not, when aged, give way downwards, but curves upwards because of the weight and better supports the roof. It is said that the cause of the heat is the fact that lofty mountains lie above the country on the north and that these mountains intercept all the northern winds. Accordingly, these winds, blowing aloft from the tops of the mountains and high above the plains, do not touch the plains, although they blow on the more southerly parts of Susis. But calm prevails here, particularly at the time when the Etesian winds cool the rest of the land that is scorched by heat.

11. Susis abounds so exceedingly in grain that both barley and wheat regularly produce one hundred-fold, and sometimes even two hundred; on this

\[\text{\textsuperscript{2} k\acute{a}\gamma\rho\upsilon\varsigma, F Epit., k\acute{a}\gamma\chi\rho\upsilon\ E, k\acute{e}\gamma\kappa\rho\upsilon\varsigma \text{CDh, k\acute{e}\gamma\chi\rho\upsilon\varsigma \text{moxz.}} \]

\[\text{\textsuperscript{3} Xylander and Tzschucke emend \text{\mu\acute{a}k\rho\omicron\upsilon\varsigma \text{to \text{\mu\acute{i}k\rho\omicron\upsilon\varsigma.}}} \]

\[\text{\textsuperscript{4} E reads \text{\pi\rho\sigma\epsilon\lambda\alpha\nu\omicron\upsilon\omega\varsigma.}} \]
οὐδὲ πυκνὰς τὰς αὐλακας τέμνουσιν· πυκνοῦ-μένει γὰρ κωλύουσιν αἰ ῥίζαι τὴν βλάστην. τὴν δὲ ἀμπελοῦ ὁ φυομένῃ πρότερον Μακεδόνες κατεφύτευσαν κάκει καὶ ἐν Βαβυλώνι, οὐ ταφρεύοντες, ἀλλὰ παττάλους κατασεσιδηρω-μένους ¹ εξ ἀκρων πῆττοντες, εἰτ ἐξαιροῦντες, ἀντὶ δ' αὐτῶν τὰ κλήματα καθιέντες εὐθέως. ἢ μὲν δὴ μεσόγαια ² τοιαύτη ἢ δὲ παραλία τενα-γώδης ἔστι καὶ ἀλήμενος· διὰ τούτο γοῦν καὶ φησιν ὁ Νέαρχος μηδὲ καθοδήγων ἐπιχωρίων τυγχάνειν, ἤμικα τῷ στόλῳ παρέπλει πρὸς τὴν Βαβυλωνίαν ἐκ τῆς Ἰνδικῆς, ὅτι προσόρμους οὐκ εἰχεν, ³ οὐδ' ἄνθρωποιν εὐπορεῖν οἷος τ' ἦν τῶν ἡγησομένων κατ' ἐμπειρίαν.

12. Γειτνιά δὲ τῇ Σουσίδι τῆς Βαβυλωνίας ἢ Σιτακηνή μὲν πρότερον, Ἀπολλωνιάτις δὲ ύστε-ρον προσαγορευθεῖσα. ἀπὸ τῶν ἄρκτων δ' ὑπέρεικεν τινὸς ἀμφοῖν πρὸς ἐω Ἐλυμαιόι τε καὶ Παρατακηνοὶ, ληστρικοὶ ἄνδρες καὶ ὀρεινὴ τραχεία πεποιθότες· μᾶλλον δ' οἱ Παρατακηνοὶ τοῖς Ἀπολλωνιάταις ἐπίκεινται, ὡστε καὶ χείρον ἐκείνους διατιθέασιν. οἱ δὲ Ἐλυμαιοὶ κακείνοις καὶ τοῖς Σουσίοις, τούτοις δὲ καὶ οἱ Οὐξιοὶ προσπολεμοῦσιν· ἦττον δὲ νῦν, ὡς εἰκός, διὰ τὴν τῶν Παρθιαίων ἰσχύν, ὡς καὶ οἱ ἀπάντες οἱ ταύτη. εὐ μὲν οὖν πραττόντων ἐκείνων, ευ

¹ κατασεσιδηρωμένους, Kramer, from conj. of Corais, for ἄτε σεσιδηρωμένους CDFhi (moi omits ἄτε), κατασεσιδηρω-μένους other MSS.

² The words τοιαύτη . . . γοῦν are transferred to this position by Corais, Groskurd and Meineke (Kramer approving) from their position in the MSS. after τοιαύτη at end of § 12. Instead of these words the MSS. read (after

172
account, also, the people do not cut the furrows close together, for the crowding of the roots hinders the sprouting. The vine did not grow there until the Macedonians planted it, both there and at Babylon; however, they did not dig trenches, but only thrust into the ground iron-pointed stakes, and then pulled them out and replaced them at once with the plants. Such, then, is the interior; but the sea-board is full of shallows and without harbours. On this account, at any rate, Nearchus goes on to say that he met with no native guides when he was sailing along the coast with his fleet from India to Babylonia; that the coast had no mooring-places, and that he was also unable to find any experienced people to guide him.

12. Neighbouring Susis is the part of Babylonia which was formerly called Sitacene, but is now called Apolloniatis. Above both, on the north and towards the east, lie the countries of the Elymaei and the Paraetaceni, who are predatory peoples and rely on the ruggedness of their mountains. But the Paraetaceni are situated closer to the Apolloniatae, and therefore treat them worse. The Elymaei carry on war against both that people and the Susians, whereas the Uxii too carry on war against the Elymaei; but less so at the present time, in all probability, because of the might of the Parthians, to whom all the peoples in that part of the world are subject. Now when the Parthians fare well, all their subjects fare well too,

μεσόγαια) the words πολλάκις, καὶ δὴ καὶ ἑφ’ ἡμῶν ἄλλοτ’ ἄλλως συνέβη, which, except for the form of the verb συνέβη, are repeated by the MSS. towards the end of § 12 and rightly omitted by the editors.

3 εἰχεῖν, Kramer and later editors, for ἐχεῖν.
πράττουσιν ἄπαντες καὶ οἱ ὑπῆκοι αὐτῶν· στασιαζόντων δὲ, ὀτερ συμβαίνει πολλάκις, καὶ δὴ καὶ ἐφ’ ἡμῶν, ἀλλοτ’ ἄλλως συμβαίνει καὶ οὐ τὰ αὐτὰ πᾶσι’ τοῖς μὲν γὰρ συνήνεγκεν ἡ ταραχὴ, τοῖς δὲ παρὰ γνώμην ἀπήντησεν. ἡ μὲν δὴ χώρα ἣ τε Περσίς καὶ Ἡ Σουσιανὴ τοιαυτή.

13. Ὁ δ’ ἐθη τὰ Περσικὰ καὶ τούτους καὶ Μήδους τὰ αὐτὰ καὶ ἄλλους πλείοσι, περὶ δὲν εἰρήκασι μὲν πλείους, τὰ δὲ καίρια καὶ ἡμῖν λεκτέων. Πέρσαι τοίνυν ἀγάλματα μὲν καὶ βωμοὺς οὐχ ἱδρύονται, θύουσι δ’ ἐν ψυχῆς τόπῳ, τὸν οὐρανον ἡγούμενοι Δία· τιμῶσι δὲ καὶ Ἡλιον, ὄν καλοῦσι Μίθρην, καὶ Σελήνην καὶ Ἀφροδίτην καὶ τῦρ καὶ γῆν καὶ ἀνέμους καὶ ὕδωρ’ θύουσι δ’ ἐν καθαρῷ τόπῳ κατεξάμενοι, παραστησάμενο τὸ ἱερεῖον ἐστεμμένου· μελίσαντος δὲ τοῦ Μάγου τὰ κρέα τοῦ ψυχομένου τὴν ἱερουργίαν ἀπίασι διελόμενοι, τοῖς θεοῖς οὐδὲν ἀπονείμαντες μέρος· τῆς γὰρ ψυχῆς φασὶ τοῦ ἱερείου δεῖσθαι τὸν θεόν, ἄλλου δὲ οὐδενός· ὁμως δὲ τοῦ ἐπίπλου τι μικρὸν τιθέασιν, ὡς λέγονσι τινες, ἐπὶ τὸ πῦρ.

14. Διαφερόντως δὲ τῷ πυρὶ καὶ τῷ ὕδατι θύουσι, τῷ μὲν πυρὶ, προστιθέντες ἔηρα ξύλα τοῦ λέπους χωρίς, πιμελὴν ἐπιτιθέντες ἀνωθεν· εἰθ’ υφάπτουσιν, ἔλαιον καταχέοντες, οὐ φυσῶντες, ἀλλὰ ριπίζοντες· τους δὲ φυσησάντας ἡ νεκρὸν ἐπὶ πῦρ θέντας ἡ βολβιτον θανατοῦσι· τῷ δ’

1 δ’, Corais and later editors insert.
2 Dhin read ἐπιθέντας.

1 The Sun.
GEOGRAPHY, 15. 3. 12-14

but when there is an insurrection, as is often the case, even indeed in our own times, the results are different at different times and not the same for all; for some have benefited by disturbances, whereas others have been disappointed in their expectations. Such, then, are the countries of Persis and Susis.

13. But the Persian customs are the same as those of these peoples and the Medes and several other peoples; and while several writers have made statements about all these peoples, I too must tell what is suitable to my purpose. Now the Persians do not erect statues or altars, but offer sacrifice on a high place, regarding the heavens as Zeus; and they also worship Helius,1 whom they call Mithras, and Selenê 2 and Aphroditê, and fire and earth and winds and water; 3 and with earnest prayer they offer sacrifice in a purified place, presenting the victim crowned; 4 and when the Magus, who directs the sacrifice, has divided the meat the people go away with their shares, without setting apart a portion for the gods, for they say that the god requires only the soul of the victim and nothing else; but still, according to some writers, they place a small portion of the caul upon the fire.

14. But it is especially to fire and water that they offer sacrifice. To fire they offer sacrifice by adding dry wood without the bark and by placing fat on top of it; and then they pour oil upon it and light it below, not blowing with their breath, but fanning it; and those who blow the fire with their breath or put anything dead or filthy upon it are put to

1 The Moon. 2 So Herodotus 1. 131. 3 Herodotus (1. 132) says that he who offers the sacrifice wears a crown.
STRABO

υδατι, ἐπὶ λίμνην ἢ ποταμὸν ἢ κρήνην ἐλθόντες, βόθρουν ὁρύζαντες εἰς τούτον σφαγιάζονται,
C 733 φυλαττόμενοι, μή τι τοῦ πλησίον ύδατος αἰ-
μαχθεῖ, ὡς μιανοῦτες· εἰτ' ἐπὶ μυρρίνην ἢ
dάφνην διαθέντες τὰ κρέα, ῥάβδοις λεπτοῖς
ἐφάπτονται οἱ Μάγοι καὶ ἐπάδουσιν, ἀποστεπ-
δοτες ἐλαιον ὁμοῦ γάλακτι καὶ μέλιτι κεκρα-
μένου ὡκ εἰς πῦρ, οὐδ' ὑδρὰ, ἀλλ' εἰς τοῦδαφοφ-
tὰς δ' ἐφῳδᾶς ποιοῦνται πολὺν χρόνον ῥάβδων
μυρικίων λεπτῶν δέσμην κατέχοντες.

15. Ἐν δὲ τῇ Καππαδοκίᾳ (πολὺ γὰρ ἐκεῖ3 ἐστὶ
tὸ τῶν Μάγων φῦλον, οὗ καὶ Πύραθοι καλοῦνται:
pολλὰ δὲ καὶ τῶν Περσικῶν θεῶν ἱερὰ) οὐδὲ
μαχαίρα θύουσιν, ἀλλὰ κορμῷ τινι, ὡς ἄν ὑπέρφω τύπτοντες. ἐστὶ δὲ καὶ Πυραθεία, σηκοὶ
tines ἀξιόλογοι· ἐν δὲ τούτοις μέσοις βωμός, ἐν
ὦ πολλῇ τε σπόδος, καὶ πῦρ ἀσβεστον φυλάτ-
tουσιν οἱ Μάγοι. καὶ καθ' ἡμέραν δὲ εἰσίντες,
ἐπάδουσιν ὡραν σχεδόν τι, πρὸ τοῦ πυρὸς τὴν
dέσμην τῶν ῥάβδων ἐχοντες, τιάρας περικεί-
μενοι πῖλωτας, καθεικνίας ἐκατέρωθεν μέχρι τοῦ
καλύπτειν τὰ χέιλη τασ παραγναθίδας. ταῦτα
4 δ' ἐν τοῖς τῆς 'Αναϊτίδος 5 καὶ τοῦ 'Ομάνου ἱεροῖς
νενόμισται· τούτων δὲ καὶ σηκοὶ εἰσι, καὶ ξόανον
τοῦ 'Ομάνου πομπεύει. ταῦτα μὲν οὖν ἡμεῖς
ἐωράκαμεν, ἐκείνα δ' ἐν ταῖς ἱστορίαις λέγεται καὶ
tά ἐφεξῆς.

1 οὐδ' x, οὐχ other MSS.
2 Instead of γὰρ, Dl read μᾶλλον.
3 ἐκεῖ, Meineke inserts, omitting ἐστὶ; Jones, however,
retains the ἐστὶ, following Groskurd and Kramer.
4 ταύτα, Corais, for ταῦτα.
5 Ἀναϊτίδος, Xylander, ναϊτίδος.
176
death. And to water they offer sacrifice by going to a lake or river or spring, where, having dug a trench leading thereto, they slaughter a victim, being on their guard lest any of the water near by should be made bloody, believing that the blood would pollute the water; and then, placing pieces of meat on myrtle or laurel branches, the Magi touch them with slender wands and make incantations, pouring oil mixed with both milk and honey, though not into fire or water, but upon the ground; and they carry on their incantations for a long time, holding in their hands a bundle of slender myrtle wands.

15. In Cappadocia (for there the sect of the Magi, who are also called Pyraethi, is large, and in that country are also many temples of the Persian gods), the people do not sacrifice victims with a sword either, but with a kind of tree-trunk, beating them to death as with a cudgel. They also have Pyraetheia, noteworthy enclosures; and in the midst of these there is an altar, on which there is a large quantity of ashes and where the Magi keep the fire ever burning. And there, entering daily, they make incantations for about an hour, holding before the fire their bundle of rods and wearing round their heads high turbans of felt, which reach down over their cheeks far enough to cover their lips. The same customs are observed in the temples of Anaîtis and Omanus; and these temples also have sacred enclosures; and the people carry in procession a wooden statue of Omanus. Now I have seen this myself; but those other things, as also what follows, are recorded in the histories.

1 Fire-kindlers.
16. Εἰς γὰρ ποταμὸν οὐτ᾽ οὐροῦσιν οὔτε νῦπτονται Πέρσαι, οὐδὲ λούονται οὐδὲ νεκρὸν ἐμβάλλουσιν 1 οὐδ᾽ άλλα τῶν δοκοῦντων εἶναι μυσαρῶν. οὕτος δ᾽ ἂν θύσωσι θεῷ, πρῶτος τῷ πυρὶ εὐχονται.

17. Βασιλεύονται δ᾽ ὑπὸ τῶν ἀπὸ γένους: οδὸ ἀπειθῶν ἀποτμηθεῖς κεφαλὴν καὶ βραχίονα ῥίπτεται. γαμοῦσι δὲ πολλὰς καὶ ἄμα πάλινικας τρέφουσι πλείους πολυτεκνίας χάριν. τιθέασι δὲ καὶ οἱ βασιλεῖς άθλα πολυτεκνίας κατ᾽ έτος τὰ δὲ τρεφόμενα μέχρι ἔτων τεττάρολοι οὐκ ἀγεταί τοῖς γονεῦσιν εἰς ὅψιν. οἱ δὲ γάμοι κατὰ τὰς ἀρχὰς τῆς ἐαρινῆς ἱσημερίας ἐπιτελοῦνται: παρέρχεται δ᾽ ἐπὶ τὸν βάλαμον, προφαγὸν μήλον ἢ καμήλου μυελόν, ἀλλὰ δ᾽ οὐδὲν τὴν ἡμέραν ἐκείνην.

18. Ἀπὸ δὲ πέντε ἔτων ἐως τετάρτου καὶ εἰκοστοῦ παιδεύονται τοξεύειν καὶ ἀκοντίζειν καὶ ἱππάξεσθαι καὶ ἀληθεύειν, διδασκάλιοι τε λόγων τοῖς σωφρονεστάτοις χρώνται, οἱ καὶ τὸ μυθῶδες πρὸς τὸ συμφέρον ἀνάγοντες παραπλέκουσι, καὶ μέλους χωρίς καὶ μετ᾽ φόδης έργα θεῶν τε καὶ ἀνδρῶν τῶν ἁριστῶν ἀναδίδοντες. συνάγουσι δ᾽ εἰς ἑνα τόπον, ψόφῳ χαλκοῦ πρὸ όρθρον διεγείροντες ὡς ἐπὶ ἐξοπλισίαν ἢ θήραν τάξαντες δ᾽ ἀνὰ πεντῆκοντα ἕγεμόνα τῶν βασιλέως τινὰ C 734 παίδων αὐτοῖς ἡ σατράπου τρέχοντι κελεύονσιν ἐπεσθαι, χωρίον ἀφορίσαντες τριάκοντα ἡ τετταράκοντα σταδίων. ἀπαιτοῦσι δὲ καὶ λόγον ἐκά-

1 CDmóxx read ἐκβάλλουσιν.
16. For the Persians neither urinate, nor wash themselves, in a river; nor yet bathe therein or cast therein anything dead or any other thing that is considered unclean. And to whatever god they offer sacrifice, to him they first offer prayer with fire.

17. They are governed by hereditary kings. And he who is disobedient has his head and arms cut off and his body cast forth. The men marry many wives, and at the same time maintain several concubines, for the sake of having many children. The kings set forth prizes annually for those who have the most children; but the children are not brought into the presence of their parents until they are four years old. Marriages are consummated at the beginning of the vernal equinox; and the bridegroom passes to the bridal chamber, having first eaten an apple or a camel's marrow, but nothing else during that day.

18. From five years of age to twenty-four they are trained to use the bow, to throw the javelin, to ride horseback, and to speak the truth; and they use as teachers of science their wisest men, who also interweave their teachings with the mythical element, thus reducing that element to a useful purpose, and rehearse both with song and without song the deeds both of the gods and of the noblest men. And these teachers wake the boys up before dawn by the sound of brazen instruments, and assemble them in one place, as though for arming themselves or for a hunt; and then they divide the boys into companies of fifty, appoint one of the sons of the king or of a satrap as leader of each company, and order them to follow their leader in a race, having marked off a distance of thirty or forty stadia. They require
στον μαθήματος, ἀμα καὶ μεγαλοφωνίαν καὶ πνεῦμα καὶ πλευράν ἀσκοῦντες, καὶ πρὸς καῦμα δὲ καὶ πρὸς ψύχος καὶ ὁμβρος καὶ χειμάρρων διαβάσεις, ὦστ' ἄβροχα φυλάττειν καὶ ὅπλα καὶ ἑσθήτα, καὶ ποιμάνειν δὲ καὶ ἄγραυλεῖν καὶ καρποῖς ἀγρίοις χρήσθαι, τερμίνθω, δρυβαλά-νοις, ἀχράδι. καλοῦνται1 δ' οὗτοι Κάρδακες, ἀπὸ κλοπείας τρεφόμενοι κάρδα γὰρ τὸ ἀνδρῶδες καὶ πολεμικὸν λέγεται. ἡ δὲ καθ' ἠμέραν δίαντα ἄρτος μετὰ τὸ γυμνάσιον καὶ μάζα καὶ κάρδαμον καὶ ἀλῶν χόνδρος καὶ κρέα ὅπτα ἠ ἐφθὰ ἔξ ύδατος, ποτὸν δ' ύδωρ. θηρεύουσι δὲ σαύνια ἀφ' ἔπτων βάλλουτες καὶ τοξεῦματα καὶ σφενδο-νοῦντες.2 δείλησ δὲ φυτουργεῖν καὶ ριζοτομεῖν ἀσκοῦσι καὶ ὅπλοποιεῖν καὶ λίνα καὶ ἀρκυς φιλοτεχνεῖν. οὐχ ἀπτούται δὲ τῶν θηρευμάτων οἱ παιδεῖς, ἀλλὰ κομίζειν οἰκάδε ἔθος. τίθεται δ' ὑπὸ τοῦ βασιλέως άθλα δρόμου καὶ τῶν ἀλλῶν τῶν ἐν τοῖς πεντάθλοις. κοσμοῦνται δ' οἱ παιδεῖς χρυσῷ, τὸ πυρωτὸν τιθεμένων ἐν τιμῇ: διὸ οὐδὲ νεκρῷ προσφέρουσι, καθάπερ οὐδὲ τὸ πῦρ, κατὰ τιμήν.

1 Meineke, following conj. of Corais, Groskurd and Kramer, ejects the words καλοῦνται . . . λέγεται.
2 σφενδονοῦντες, Meineke emends to σφενδονώντες.
3 ἀλλῶν τῶν, Meineke, following Groskurd, inserts.

1 The tree is the Pistacia terebinthus.
them also to give an account of each lesson, at the same time training them in loud speaking and in breathing, and in the use of their lungs, and also training them to endure heat and cold and rains, and to cross torrential streams in such a way as to keep both armour and clothing dry, and also to tend flocks and live outdoors all night and eat wild fruits, such as pistachio nuts, acorns, and wild pears. These are called Cardaces, since they live on thievery, for "carda" means the manly and warlike spirit. Their daily food after their gymnastic exercises consists of bread, barley-cake, cardamum, grains of salt, and roasted or boiled meat; but their drink is water. They hunt by throwing spears from horseback, and with bows and slings; and late in the afternoon they are trained in the planting of trees and in the cutting and gathering of roots. The boys do not touch the meat of wild animals, though it is the custom to bring them home. Prizes are offered by the king for victory in running and in the four other contests of the pentathla. The boys are adorned with gold, since the people hold in honour the fiery appearance of that metal; and on this account, in honour of its fiery appearance, they do not apply gold, just as they do not apply fire, to a dead body.

2 This statement appears to be an interpolation (see critical note).

3 The Nasturtium orientale, also called Tropaeolum majus. The plant, a kind of cress, contains a pungent juice; and its seeds are prepared and eaten like our mustard.

4 i.e. for medicinal purposes.

5 The pentathla were (1) jumping, (2) discus-throwing, (3) running, (4) wrestling, and (5) javelin-throwing (if not boxing).
19. Στρατεύονται δὲ καὶ ἄρχουσιν ἀπὸ εἰκοσιν ἐτῶν ἕως πεντήκοντα, πεζοὶ τε καὶ ἵππεῖς· ἀγορᾶς δὲ οὐχ ἀπτοῦνται, οὔτε γὰρ πωλοῦσιν οὔτε ὄνυνται. ὁπλίζονται δὲ γέρρῳ ῥομβοειδεῖ, παρὰ δὲ τὰς φαρέτρας σαγάρεις ἔχουσι καὶ κοπίδας, περὶ δὲ τῇ κεφαλῇ πίλημα πυργωτόν, θώραξ δὲ ἐστὶν αὐτοῖς φολιδωτὸς. ἐσθής δὲ τοῖς ἣγεμόσι μὲν ἀναξυρίας τριπλῆ, χιτῶν δὲ χειριδωτὸς διπλοῦς ἕως γόνατος, ὁ ὑπενδύτης μὲν λευκός, ἀνθινός δὲ ὁ ἐπάνω ἰμάτιον δὲ θέρους μὲν πορφυρῶν ἢ ἀνθινῶν, χειμώνως δὲ ἀνθινόν, τιάραι παραπλήσιαι ταῖς τῶν Μάγων, ὑπόδημα κοίλον διπλοῦν. τοῖς δὲ πολλοῖς χιτῶν ἕως μεσοκηνητίου καὶ διπλοῦς, ῥάκος δὲ σιωδόνιον τι περὶ τῇ κεφαλῇ· ἐχει δὲ ἐκαστὸς τόξον καὶ σφενδόνην. δειπνοῦσι δὲ πολυτελῶς Πέρσαι, τιθέντες καὶ ὀλομελὴ καὶ πολλὰ καὶ ποικίλα· κόσμος τε λαμπρὸς στρωμῆς ἐκπωμάτων τε καὶ τῶν ἄλλων, ὡστε χρυσῷ καὶ ἀργυρῷ καταλαμπέσθαι.

20. Ἐν οὖν τὰ μέγιστα βουλεύονται, καὶ βεβαιότερα τῶν ἐν νῆσει τίθενται. τῶν κατὰ τὰς ὁδοὺς συναντῶντων τοὺς μὲν γυνώμοις καὶ ἰσοτίμοις φιλοῦσι προσιόντες, τοῖς δὲ ταπεινότεροι παραβάλλοντι τὴν γνάθον καὶ δέχονται ταύτῃ τὸ φίλημα· οἱ δὲ ἐτί ταπεινότεροι προσκυνοῦσι μόνον. θάπτουσι δὲ κηρῷ περιπλάσιαντες τὰ σῶματα, τοὺς δὲ Μάγους οὐθάπτουσιν, ἀλλ'
19. They serve in the army and hold commands from twenty to fifty years of age, both as foot-soldiers and as horsemen; and they do not approach a market-place, for they neither sell nor buy. They arm themselves with a rhomboidal wicker-shield; and besides quivers they have swords and knives; and on their heads they wear a tower-like hat; and their breastplates are made of scales of iron. The garb of the commanders consists of three-ply trousers, and of a double tunic, with sleeves, that reaches to the knees, the under garment being white and the upper vari-coloured. In summer they wear a purple or vari-coloured cloak, in winter a vari-coloured one only; and their turbans are similar to those of the Magi; and they wear a deep double shoe. Most of the people wear a double tunic that reaches to the middle of the shin, and a piece of linen cloth round the head; and each man has a bow and a sling. Persians dine in an extravagant manner, serving whole animals in great numbers and of various kinds; and their couches, as also their drinking-cups and everything else, are so brilliantly ornamented that they gleam with gold and silver.

20. They carry on their most important deliberations when drinking wine; and they regard decisions then made as more lasting than those made when they are sober. When they meet people on the streets, they approach and kiss those with whom they are acquainted and who are of equal rank, and to those of lower rank they offer the cheek and in that way receive the kiss; but those of still lower rank merely make obeisance. They smear the bodies of the dead with wax before they bury them, though they do not bury the Magi but leave their
οἰωνοβρώτους 1 ἔωσι: τούτοις δὲ καὶ μητράσι
συνέρχεσθαι πάτριον νεόμισται. τοιαύτα μὲν
tὰ ἔθη.

21. Ἐστὶ δ' ἱσως καὶ ταῦτα τῶν ἔθιμων, ἀ
φησὶ Πολύκριτος.2 ἐν γὰρ Σούσουσ ἐκάστῳ τῶν
Βασιλέως ἐπὶ τῆς ἁκρας ἵδια πεποιηθεὶς οἶκησιν
καὶ θησαυροὺς καὶ παραδέσεις ὃν ἐπράπτοντο
φόρων, ὑπομνήματα τῆς οἰκονομίας πράττεσθαί
d' ἐκ μὲν τῆς παραλίας ἀργύριον, ἐκ δὲ τῆς
μεσογαίας ἀ φέρει ἐκάστη χώρα, ὡστε καὶ
χρόματα καὶ φάρμακα καὶ τρίχα 3 ἐρέαν ἢ τι
tοιοῦθ' ἔτερον καὶ θρέμματα ὁμοίως. τὸν δὲ
dιατάξαντα τοὺς φόρους Δαρεῖον εἶναι, τὸν 4
Μακρόχειρα, καὶ κάλλιστον ἀνθρώπων, πλὴν
tοῦ μήκους τῶν βραχιόνων καὶ τῶν πῆχεων
ἀπτεσθαί γὰρ καὶ τῶν γονάτων τὸν δὲ πλείστον
χρυσὸν καὶ ἀργυρὸν ἐν κατασκευαῖς εἶναι, νο-
μίσματι δὲ οὐ πολλῷ πρὸς τέ τας δωρεὰς ἑκεῖνα
κεχαρισμένα νομίζειν μᾶλλον καὶ πρὸς κειμηλίων
ἀπόθεσιν τὸ δὲ νόμισμα το πρὸς τὰς χρείας
ἀρκοῦν ἰκανὸν εἶναι, κόπτειν δὲ πάλιν τὸ τοῖς
ἀναλώμασι σύμμετρον.

22. Τὰ γὰρ οὖν ἔθη σωφρονικά τὰ πλείως διὰ
δὲ τὸν πλοῦτον εἰς τρυφήν ἐξέπεσον οἱ βασιλεῖς,
ὡστε πυρὸν μὲν ἐξ Ἅσσιας τῆς Αἰολίδος μετή-
σαν, οἶνον δ' ἐκ Συρίας τὸν Χαλυμώνιον, ὕδωρ δὲ

1 οἰωνοβρώτους C, οἰωνοβρώτους w, οἰωνοβρώτους other MSS.
2 C. Müller (Ind. Var. Lect., p. 1035) would emend Πολύκριτος to Πολύκλειτος (cp. reference to him in 15. 3. 2).
3 ἡ, Kramer inserts (καὶ, Corais).
4 τὸν Μακρόχειρα . . . γονάτων, Meineke, following conj. of Kramer, ejects.

184
bodies to be eaten by birds; and these Magi, by ancestral custom, consort even with their mothers. Such are the customs of the Persians.

21. Perhaps also the following, mentioned by Polycritus, is one of their customs. He says that in Susa each one of the kings built for himself on the acropolis a separate habitation, treasure-houses, and storage places for what tributes they each exacted, as memorials of his administration; and that they exacted silver from the people on the seaboard, and from the people in the interior such things as each country produced, so that they also received dyes, drugs, hair, or wool, or something else of the kind, and likewise cattle; and that the king who arranged the separate tributes was Dareius, called the Long-armed, and the most handsome of men, except for the length of his arms, for they reached even to his knees; and that most of the gold and silver is used in articles of equipment, but not much in money; and that they consider those metals as better adapted for presents and for deposing in storehouses; and that so much coined money as suffices their needs is enough; and that they coin only what money is commensurate with their expenditures.

22. For their customs are in general temperate; but on account of their wealth the kings fell into such luxury that they sent for wheat from Assus in Aeolis, for Chalymonian wine from Syria, and for

1 An error, apparently, for Polycleitus (see critical note).
2 This is thought by various editors to be an interpolation (see critical note). Plutarch (Artaxerxes 1) refers to Artaxerxes as having been surnamed "Long-armed" because his right arm was longer than his left; but the above statement in regard to Dareius lacks corroboration.
εκ τοῦ Ἐὐλαίου πάντων ἐλαφρότατον, ὡστ' ἐν Ἀττικῇ κοτύλῃ δραχμῇ ἀφολκότερον εἶναι.

23. Συνέβη δὲ τοῖς Πέρσαις ἐνδοξοτάτοις γενέσθαι τῶν βαρβάρων παρὰ τοῖς Ἕλλησιν, ὅτι τῶν μὲν ἄλλων οὐδὲνες τῶν τῆς Ἀσίας ἀρξάντων Ἕλληνων ἦρξαν, οὐδ' ἤδεισαν οὐδ' ἐκεῖνοι τούτοις, οὐδ' οἱ Ἕλληνες τοὺς βαρβάρους, ἀλλ' ἐπὶ μικρὸν μόνον ἐκ τῆς πόρρωθεν ἀκοῆς. "Ωμηρος γοῦν οὔτε τὴν τῶν Συρῶν οὔτε τὴν τῶν Μῆδων ἀρχὴν οἴδεν' οὐδὲ γὰρ ἂν, Θῆβας Αἰγυπτίας ὄνομάζων καὶ τὸν ἐκεῖ καὶ τὸν ἐν Φοινίκῃ πλούτων, τὸν ἐν Βαβυλώνι καὶ Νίνω 1 καὶ Ἐκβατάνων παρεσιώτης. πρῶτοι δὲ Πέρσαι καὶ Ἕλληνων ἐπήρξαν, Λυδοὶ δὲ ἐπήρξαν μὲν, ἀλλ' οὔτε τῆς Ἀσίας ὀλης ἐπάρξαντες, 2 ἀλλὰ μέρους τινὸς μικροῦ, τοῦ ἑντὸς Ἀλνος μόνον, καὶ ταῦτ' ἐπὶ ὅλον χρόνον τὸν κατὰ Κροῖσον καὶ 'Ἀλνάττην. κρατηθέντες δ' ὑπὸ Περσῶν, εἰ καὶ τῇ τῆς δόξῃ ἢν αὐτοῖς, ἀφηρέτησαν τούθ' ὑπ' ἐκείνων. Πέρσαι δ', ἀφ' οὖ κατέλυσαν τὰ Μῆδων, εὐθὺς καὶ Λυδῶν ἐκράτησαν καὶ τοὺς κατὰ τὴν 'Ασίαν Ἕλληνας ὑπηκόους ἐσχων ύστερον δὲ καὶ διέβησαν C 736 εἰς τὴν 'Ελλάδα, καὶ ἤτηθέντες πολλοῖς καὶ πολλάκις ἀγώσιν, 3 ὡμοὶ διετέλεσαν τὴν Ἀσίαν μέχρι τῶν ἐπὶ θαλάττη τόπων κατέχοντες, ἔως ὑπὸ Μακεδόνων κατεπολεμήθησαν.

1 καὶ Νίνω, omitted by moz, Neίω CDFηνωx, Σοῦσοι i.
2 ἐπάρξαντες, omitted by moz, Corais and Meineke.

186
water from the Eulaeus, which is so far the lightest of all waters that an Attic cotyle\(^1\) of it weighs a drachm less than other waters.

23. The Persians, of all the barbarians, became the most famous among the Greeks, because none of the other barbarians who ruled Asia ruled Greeks; neither were these people acquainted with the Greeks nor yet the Greeks with the barbarians, except for a short time by distant hearsay. Homer, at any rate, knows neither of the empire of the Syrians nor of that of the Medes; for otherwise, since he names Aegyptian Thebes and mentions the wealth there and the wealth in Phoenicia, he would not have passed by in silence that in Babylon and Ninus and Ecbatana. The Persians were the first people to rule over Greeks. The Lydians had indeed ruled over Greeks, but not also over the whole of Asia—only over a small part of it, that inside the Halys River, and that too for only a short time, in the time of Croesus and Alyattes. But the Lydians were mastered by the Persians and deprived by them of whatever glory they had. The Persians, as soon as they broke up the power of the Medes, immediately mastered the Lydians and also got as their subjects the Greeks in Asia; and later they even crossed over into Greece; and, though often defeated in many battles, still they continued to hold the country as far as the places on the sea until they were subdued by the Macedonians.

\(^1\) Nearly half a pint.

3 F reads πολλοίς καὶ πολλάκοις (sic) ἀγώσιν καὶ πολλάκις; \(\muος\) πολλοίς ἀγώσιν καὶ πολλάκις. Kramer and C. Müller would read πολλοίς καὶ μεγάλοις ἀγώσιν.
24. Ὅ μὲν οὖν εἰς τὴν ἡγεμονίαν καταστήσας αὐτοὺς Κύρος ἤν· διαδεξάμενος δὲ τούτον Καμβύ-ςης νίδος ὑπὸ τῶν Μάγων κατελύθη· τούτους δὲ ἀνελόντες οἱ ἐπτὰ Πέρσαι Δαρεῖῳ τῷ Ὀστάσπεως παρέδοσαν τὴν ἀρχὴν εἰς οἱ ὑπὸ τούτον δια- δεχόμενοι κατέληξαν εἰς Ἀρσην, διὰ ἀποκτείνας Βαγγός ὁ εὐνοῦχος κατέστησε Δαρεῖον, οὐκ ὄντα τοῦ γένους τῶν βασιλέων. τούτον δὲ καταλύσας Ἁλέξανδρος αὐτὸς ἠρξὲ 1 δέκα ἡ ἑνδέκα ἔτη· εἰτ' εἰς πλεῖον τοὺς διαδεξαμένους καὶ τοὺς ἐπιγόνους τούτων μερισθεῖσα ἡ ἡγεμονία τῆς Ἀσίας διε- λύθη· συνέμευνε δ' ὁ σος πεντήκοντα ἕπτα τοῖς διακοσίοις ἔτη. νῦν δ' ἡδη καθ' αὐτοὺς συνεστώτες οἱ Πέρσαι βασιλέας ἐχουσιν ὑπήκοους ἐτέρους βασιλέυσι, πρῶτον μὲν Μακεδόσι, νῦν δὲ Παρθαναῖοι.

1 Instead of δέκα, Dh and Corais read δώδεκα.
24. Now the man who established the Persians in their hegemony was Cyrus.\(^1\) Cyrus was succeeded by his son Cambyses, who was deposed by the Magi. The Magi were slain by the Seven Persians, who then gave over the empire to Dareius, the son of Hystaspes. And then the successors of Dareius came to an end with Arses. Arses was slain by Bagoûs the eunuch, who set up as king another Dareius, who was not of the royal family. Him Alexander deposed, and reigned himself for ten or eleven years. And then the hegemony of Asia was divided amongst his several successors and their descendants, and then dissolved. The hegemony of the Persians over Asia lasted about two hundred and fifty years. But now, though again organised into a state of their own, the Persians have kings that are subject to other kings, formerly to the kings of Macedonia, but now to those of the Parthians.

\(^1\) Cyrus the Elder.
1. Τῇ δὲ Περσίδι καὶ τῇ Σουσιανῇ συνάπτουσιν οἱ Ἀσσύριοι· καλοῦσα δὲ οὕτω τὴν Βαβυλωνίαν καὶ πολλὴν τῆς κύκλῳ γῆς, ἢς ἐν μέρει καὶ ἡ Ἀτουρία ἐστίν, ἐν ἄπερ ἡ Νίνος καὶ ἡ Ἀπολλωνίας καὶ Ἡλυμαίοι καὶ Παραπότακι καὶ ἡ περὶ τὸ Ζάγρον ὡς Χαλωνίτης καὶ τὰ περὶ τῆς Νίνος πεδία, Δολομηνὴ τε καὶ Καλαχηνή καὶ Χαζηνή καὶ Ἀδιαβηνή, καὶ τὰ τῆς Μεσοποταμίας ἐθνη τὰ περὶ Γορδοναῖους καὶ τοὺς περὶ Νίσιβιν Μυγδόνας μέχρι τοῦ Ζεύγματος τοῦ κατὰ τὸν Εὐφράτην καὶ τῆς πέραν τοῦ Εὐφράτου πολλή, ἡν Ἡραβας κατέχουσι, καὶ οἱ ἡδίως ὑπὸ τῶν νῦν C 737 λεγόμενοι Σύροι μέχρι Κιλίκων καὶ Φοινίκων καὶ Ἰούδαίων καὶ τῆς θαλάττης τῆς κατὰ τὸ Ἀιγύπτιον πέλαγος καὶ τὸν Ἰσσικὸν κόλπον.

2. Δοκεῖ δὲ τὸ τῶν Σύρων ὄνομα διατείναι ἀπὸ μὲν τῆς Βαβυλωνίας μέχρι τοῦ Ἰσσικοῦ κόλπου, ἀπὸ δὲ τούτου μέχρι τοῦ Εὐξείνου τὸ παλαιόν. οἱ γοῦν Καππαδόκες ἀμφότεροι, οἱ τε πρὸς τὸ Ταύρον καὶ οἱ πρὸς τὸ Πόντῳ, μέχρι νῦν Λευκο-

1 Ζάδρον E, Ζάγριον Dhiix Tzschucke, Corais.
2 Χαλωνίτης Casaubon, for Χαλωνίτησ D, Χαλωνίτις other MSS.
3 πολλή, Kramer, for πολλής.
4 Ἰούδαίων, in marg. FCz, for Διβόων. Corais writes καὶ Ἰούδαίων καὶ Διβόων.
BOOK XVI

I

1. The country of the Assyrians borders on Persis and Susiana. This name\(^1\) is given to Babylonia and to much of the country all round, which latter, in part, is also called Aturia, in which are Ninus, Apolloniatis, the Elymaei, the Paraetaceae, the Chalonitis in the neighbourhood of Mt. Zagrus, the plains in the neighbourhood of Ninus, and also Dolomenê and Calachenê and Chazenê and Adiabenê, and the tribes of Mesopotamia in the neighbourhood of the Gordyaeans, and the Mygdonians in the neighbourhood of Nisibis, as far as the Zeugma\(^2\) of the Euphrates, as also much of the country on the far side of the Euphrates, which is occupied by Arabians, and those people who in a special sense of the term are called by the men of to-day Syrians, who extend as far as the Cilicians and the Phoenicians and the Judaeans and the sea that is opposite the Aegyptian Sea and the Gulf of Issus.

2. It seems that the name of the Syrians extended not only from Babylonia to the Gulf of Issus, but also in ancient times from this gulf to the Euxine. At any rate, both tribes of the Cappadocians, both those near the Taurus and those near the Pontus, have to the present time been called "White

\(^1\) i.e. "Assyria."  \(^2\) Bridge.
συροί καλοῦνται, ὡς ἄν ὄντων τινῶν Σύρων καὶ μελάνων· οὕτω δ' εἶσιν οἱ ἐκτὸς τοῦ Ταύρον· λέγω δὲ Ταύρον, μέχρι τοῦ Ἀμανόν διατείνων τούνομα. οἱ δ' ἰστοροῦντες τὴν Σύρων ἄρχην ὅταν φῶς Μήδους μὲν ὑπὸ Περσῶν καταλυθήναι, Σύρους δὲ ὑπὸ Μήδων, οὐκ ἄλλους τινὰς τοὺς Σύρους λέγουσιν, ἀλλὰ τοὺς ἐν Βαβυλῶνι καὶ Νίνῳ κατεσκευασμένοις τὸ βασίλειον' ὅπω τὸ μὲν Νίνος ἦν ὁ τὴν Νίνον ἐν τῇ Ἀτουρία κτίσας, ἢ δὲ τούτου γυνή, ἢπερ καὶ διεδέξατο τὸν ἄνδρα, Σεμίραμισ· ἦς ἐστὶ κτίσμα ἡ Βαβυλῶν. οὕτω δὲ ἐκράτησαν τῆς Ἀσίας, καὶ τῆς Σεμιράμιδος, χωρίς τῶν ἐν Βαβυλῶνι ἔργων, πολλὰ καὶ ἄλλα κατὰ πᾶσαν γῆν σχεδὸν δείκνυται, ὅση τῆς ἤπειρον ταύτης ἐστί, τά τε χώματα, ἀ δὴ καλοῦσι Σεμιράμιδος, καὶ τεῖχη καὶ ἐρυμάτων κατασκευαλ καὶ συρῖγγων τῶν ἐν αὐτοῖς καὶ ὑδρείων καὶ κλιμάκων καὶ διωρύγων ἐν ποταμοῖς καὶ λίμναις καὶ ὄδων καὶ γεφυρῶν. ἀπέλιθων δὲ τοῖς μεθ' ἐαυτοὺς τὴν ἄρχην μέχρι τῆς Σαρδαναπάλου καὶ Ἀρβάκου  μετέστη δ' εἰς Μήδους ὑστερον.  

3. Ἡ μὲν οὖν Νίνος  πόλις ἡφανίσθη παρα- χρημα μετὰ τὴν τῶν Σύρων κατάλυσιν. πολύ δὲ μείζων ἦν τῆς Βαβυλῶνος, ἐν πεδίῳ κειμένη τῆς Ἀτουρίας· ἢ δ' Ἀτουρία τοῖς περὶ Ἀρβηλα τόποις ὀμορός ἐστι, μεταξὺ ἠχοῦσα τῶν Δύκων ποταμῶν. τὰ μὲν οὖν Ἀρβηλα τῆς Βαβυλωνίας ἱπάρχει, ἀ κατ' αὐτὴν ἐστίν· ἐν δὲ τῇ περαιᾷ τοῦ

1 All MSS. except E read δε after πολλά.
2 Ἀρβάκου, Casaubon, for Ἀρβάκου.
3 Τί read σήμερον.
4 Νίνων CDFhiw.
5 κατά Es.
GEOGRAPHY, 16. 1. 2-3

Syrians,” as though some Syrians were black, these being the Syrians who live outside the Taurus; and when I say “Taurus,” I am extending the name as far as the Amanus. When those who have written histories of the Syrian empire say that the Medes were overthrown by the Persians and the Syrians by the Medes, they mean by the Syrians no other people than those who built the royal palaces in Babylon and Ninus; and, of these Syrians, Ninus was the man who founded Ninus in Aturia, and his wife, Semiramis, was the woman who succeeded her husband and founded Babylon. These two gained the mastery of Asia; and as for Semiramis, apart from her works at Babylon, many others are also to be seen throughout almost the whole of that continent, I mean the mounds called the Mounds of Semiramis, and walls, and the construction of fortifications with aqueducts therein, and of reservoirs for drinking-water, and of ladder-like ascents of mountains, and of channels in rivers and lakes, and of roads and bridges. And they left to their successors their empire until the time of the empires of Sardanapalus and Arbaces. But later the empire passed over to the Medes.

3. Now the city Ninus was wiped out immediately after the overthrow of the Syrians. It was much greater than Babylon, and was situated in the plain of Aturia. Aturia borders on the region of Arbela, with the Lycus River lying between them. Now Arbela, which lies opposite to Babylonia, belongs to that country; and in the country on the

1 Cf. 12. 3. 9. 2 Nineveh. 3 608 B.C.

6 ἰουοὺς Ez, ἰουοῖος other MSS.
Λύκον τὰ τῆς Ἀτουρίας πεδία τῇ Νίνῳ περίκειται. ἐν δὲ τῇ Ἀτουρίᾳ ἐστὶ Γαυγάμηλα κώμη, ἐν ᾗ συνέβη νικήθηναι καὶ ὑποβαλεῖν τὴν ἄρχὴν Δαρείον. ἔστι μὲν οὖν τὸ τοῦτος ἐπίσημος οὕτος καὶ τούνομα, μεθερμηνευθὲν γὰρ ἐστὶ καμήλου ὅλκος· ἀνόμασε δ' οὕτω Δαρείος ὁ 'Σττάστεω, κτῆμα δοὺς εἰς διατροφὴν τῇ καμήλῳ τῇ συνεκπεπονηκτικαὶ μάλιστα τὴν ὁδὸν τὴν διὰ τῆς ἐρήμου Σκύθιας μετὰ τῶν φορτίων, ἐν οἷς ἦν καὶ ἡ διατροφὴ τῶ βασιλεί. οἱ μέντοι Μακεδόνες, τούτῳ μὲν ὀρῶντας κώμοιν εὐτελέσ, τὰ δὲ 'Ἀρβηλα κατοικίαν ἀξίουλον (κτίσμα, ὡς φασίν, 'Ἀρβηλα τοῦ Ἀθμονέως), περὶ 'Αρβηλα τὴν μάχην καὶ νίκην κατεφήμισαν καὶ τοῖς συγγραφεύσιν οὕτω παρέδωκαν.

4. Μετὰ δὲ 'Ἀρβηλα καὶ τὸ Νικατόριον ὄρος (ὅ προσωνόμασεν Ἀλέξανδρος, νικήσας τὴν περὶ 'Ἀρβηλα μάχην) ὁ Κάπρος ἐστὶ ποταμὸς ἐν ώσι διαστήματι, ὡσὶ καὶ ὁ Λύκος· ἢ δὲ χῶρα Ἀρτακηνή ἕλεγεται. περὶ 'Ἀρβηλα δὲ ἐστὶ καὶ Δημητρίας πόλις· εἰθ' ἡ τοῦ νάφθα πηγή καὶ τὰ πυρᾶ καὶ τὸ τῆς Ἀνέας ιερὸν καὶ Σαδράκαι, τὸ Δαρείον τοῦ 'Σττάστεω βασίλειον, καὶ ὁ Κυπαρισσῶν καὶ ἡ τοῦ Κάπρου διάβασις, συναπτούσα ἡδὴ Σελευκεία καὶ Βαβυλῶν.

5. Ἡ δὲ Βαβυλῶν καὶ αὐτὴ μὲν ἐστὶν ἐν πεδίῳ, τὸν δὲ κύκλον ἔχει τοῦ τείχους τριακοσίων ὀγδοίκοντα πέντε στάδιαν, πάχος δὲ τοῦ τείχους

1 Ἀρτακηνὴ is otherwise unknown. Groskurd conj. Ἀρβηλη λανη (noting Ἀρβελητης in Ptolemaeus 6. 1 and Pliny 6. 13. 16); Kramer prefers Ἀδίαβην; C. Müller conj. Γαραμηνῆ.

2 Ἀνέας, Xylander and Kramer emend to Ἀκαλας; Corais conj. Ἀνατίδος.
far side of the Lycus River lie the plains of Aturia, which surround Ninus. In Aturia is a village Gau-gamela, where Dareius was conquered and lost his empire. Now this is a famous place, as is also its name, which, being interpreted, means "Camel's House." Dareius, the son of Hystaspes, so named it, having given it as an estate for the maintenance of the camel which helped most on the toilsome journey through the deserts of Scythia with the burdens containing sustenance and support for the king. However, the Macedonians, seeing that this was a cheap village, but that Arbela was a notable settlement (founded, as it is said, by Arbelus, the son of Athmoneus), announced that the battle and victory took place near Arbela and so transmitted their account to the historians.

4. After Arbela and Mt. Nicatorium (a name applied to it by Alexander after his victory in the neighbourhood of Arbela), one comes to the Caprus River, which lies at the same distance from Arbela as the Lycus. The country is called Artacene. Near Arbela lies the city Demetrias; and then one comes to the fountain of naphtha, and to the fires, and to the temple of Anea, and to Sandracae, and to the royal palace of Dareius the son of Hystaspes, and to Cyparisson, and to the crossing of the Caprus River, where, at last, one is close to Seleuceia and Babylon.

5. Babylon, too, lies in a plain; and the circuit of its wall is three hundred and eighty-five stadia. The thickness of its wall is thirty-two feet; the

1 "Mount of Victory."
2 Probably an error for Adiabenê (see 16. 1. 8 and 16. 1. 18).
3 Apparently the same as the goddess Anaitis (cf. 11. 8. 4 and 15. 3. 15)
ποδῶν δύο καὶ τριάκοντα, ύψος δὲ τῶν μὲν μεσοπυργίων πῆχεις πεντήκοντα, τῶν δὲ πύργων ἐξήκοντα, ἢ δὲ πάροδος τοῖς ἐπὶ τοῦ τείχους, ὡστε ἡ τέθριππα ἐναντιοδρομεῖν ἄλληλοις βαθίως· διότι τῶν ἐπτὰ θεαμάτων λέγεται καὶ τοῦτο καὶ ὁ κρεμαστὸς κῆπος, ἔχων ἐν τετραγώνῳ σχήματι ἐκάστην πλευρὰν τεττάρων πλέθρων· συνέχεται δὲ ψαλιδώμασι καμαρωτοῖς, ἐπὶ πεττῶν ἱδρυμένοις κυβοειδῶν ἄλλοις ἐπ’ ἄλλοις· οἱ δὲ πετσοὶ κοίλοι πλήρεις γῆς, ὡστε δέξασθαι φυτὰ δένδρων τῶν μεγίστων, ἐξ ὁπτῆς πλίνθου καὶ ἀσφάλτου κατεσκευασμένοι καὶ αὐτοὶ καὶ αἱ ψαλίδες καὶ τὰ καμαρώματα. ἢ δ’ ἀνωτάτῳ στέγῃ προσβάσεις κλιμακωτᾶς ἔχει, παρακειμένους δ’ αὐταῖς καὶ κοχλίας, δι’ ὅν τὸ ύδωρ ἀνήγον εἰς τὸν κῆπον ἀπὸ τοῦ Εὐφράτου συνεχῶς οἱ πρὸς τοῦτο τεταγμένοι. ὁ γὰρ ποταμὸς διὰ μέσης ρεῖ τῆς πόλεως σταδιαῖος τὸ πλάτος· ἐπὶ δὲ τῷ ποταμῷ ὁ κῆπος. ἔστι δὲ καὶ ὁ τοῦ Βήλου τάφος αὐτόθι, νῦν μὲν κατεσκαμμένος· Ἐξέρξης δ’ αὐτὸν κατέσπασεν, ὥς φασιν· ἢν δὲ πυραμίδος τετράγωνος ἐξ ὁπτῆς πλίνθου, καὶ αὐτὴ σταδιαῖα τὸ ύψος, σταδιαῖα δὲ καὶ ἐκάστη τῶν πλευρῶν ἦν Ἀλέξανδρος ἐβούλετο ἀνασκευάσαι, πολὺ δ’ ἦν ἔργον καὶ πολλοῦ χρόνου (αὐτὴ γὰρ ἡ χοῖς εἰς ἀνακάθαρσιν μυρίως ἀνδράσι δυεῖν μηνῶν ἔργον ἦν), ὡστ’ οὐκ ἔφθη τὸ ἐγχειρηθέν ἐπιτελέσαι· παραχρήμα γὰρ ἡ νόσος καὶ ἡ τελευτὴ συνέπεσε τῷ βασιλεῖ.

1 ὡστε Dhi, Corais, and Meineke, for ὡς.
GEOGRAPHY, 16. 1. 5

height thereof between the towers is fifty cubits; that of the towers is sixty cubits; and the passage on top of the wall is such that four-horse chariots can easily pass one another; and it is on this account that this and the hanging garden are called one of the Seven Wonders of the World. The garden is quadrangular in shape, and each side is four plethra in length. It consists of arched vaults, which are situated, one after another, on checkered, cube-like foundations. The checkered foundations, which are hollowed out, are covered so deep with earth that they admit of the largest of trees, having been constructed of baked brick and asphalt—the foundations themselves and the vaults and the arches. The ascent to the uppermost terrace-roofs is made by a stairway; and alongside these stairs there were screws, through which the water was continually conducted up into the garden from the Euphrates by those appointed for this purpose. For the river, a stadium in width, flows through the middle of the city; and the garden is on the bank of the river. Here too is the tomb of Belus, now in ruins, having been demolished by Xerxes, as it is said. It was a quadrangular pyramid of baked brick, not only being a stadium in height, but also having sides a stadium in length. Alexander intended to repair this pyramid; but it would have been a large task and would have required a long time (for merely the clearing away of the mound was a task for ten thousand men for two months), so that he could not finish what he had attempted; for immediately the king was overtaken by disease and death. None of his successors

1 Cp. the account of Herodotus (1. 178), who gives much larger dimensions.
τῶν δ’ ύστερον οὐδεὶς ἐφροντίσεν ἀλλὰ καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ ὀλυγωρήθη καὶ κατηρεύσαν τῆς πόλεως τὰ μὲν οἱ Πέρσαι, τὰ δ’ οἱ χρόνοι καὶ ἣ τῶν Μακεδόνων ὀλυγωρία περὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα, καὶ μάλιστα ἐπειδὴ τὴν Σελεύκειαν ἐπὶ τῷ Τίγρει πλησίον τῆς Βαβυλώνος ἐν τριακόσιοι που σταδίους ἐτείχισε Σέλευκος ὁ Νικάτωρ. καὶ γὰρ ἑκεῖνοι καὶ οἱ μετ’ αὐτῶν ἀπαντεῖς περὶ ταύτην ἐσπούδασαν τὴν πόλιν καὶ τὸ βασιλείου ἐνταῦθα μετήνεγκαν· καὶ δὴ καὶ νῦν ἡ μὲν γέγονε Βαβυλώνος μείζων, ἡ δ’ ἔρημος ἡ πολλή, ὡστ’ ἐπ’ αὐτῆς μὴ ἄν ὀκνήσαι τινα εἰπεῖν, ὅπερ ἔφη τις τῶν κομικῶν ἐπὶ τῶν Μεγαλοπολιτῶν τῶν ἐν Ἀρκαδίᾳ.

ἐρημία μεγάλη’ στὶν ἡ Μεγάλη πόλις.

C 739 διὰ δὲ τὴν τῆς ύλῆς σπάνιν ἐκ φοινικῶν ξύλων αἱ οἰκοδομαὶ συντελοῦνται καὶ δοκοῖς καὶ στύλοις· περὶ δὲ τοὺς στύλους στρέφοντες ἐκ τῆς καλάμης σχονία περιτεθέασιν, εἰτ’ ἐπαλείφοντες χρώμασι καταγράφουσι, τὰς δὲ θύρας ἀσφάλτῳ ύψηλαὶ δὲ καὶ αὐταὶ καὶ οἱ οίκοι, καμαρωτοὶ πάντες διὰ τὴν ἄξυλιαν. ψυλὴ γὰρ ἡ χώρα καὶ θαμνώδης ἡ πολλὴ πλῆθος φοινικὸς’ οὕτος δὲ πλείστος ἐν τῇ Βαβυλωνίᾳ, πολὺς δὲ καὶ ἐν Συσσοίς καὶ ἐν τῇ παραλίᾳ τῇ 1 Περσίδι καὶ ἐν τῇ Καρμανίᾳ. κεράμῳ δ’ οὐ χρῶνται οὐδὲ γὰρ κατομβροῦνται. παραπλήσια δὲ καὶ τὰ ἐν Συσσοῖς καὶ τῇ Σιτακηνῇ.

6. Ἀφώριστο δ’ ἐν τῇ Βαβυλωνίᾳ 2 κατοικία

1 τῇ, Meineke inserts.

200
cared for this matter; and even what was left of the city was neglected and thrown into ruins, partly by the Persians and partly by time and by the indifference of the Macedonians to things of this kind, and in particular after Seleucus Nicator had fortified Seleucia on the Tigris near Babylon, at a distance of about three hundred stadia therefrom. For not only he, but also all his successors, were strongly interested in Seleucia and transferred the royal residence to it. What is more, Seleucia at the present time has become larger than Babylon, whereas the greater part of Babylon is so deserted that one would not hesitate to say what one of the comic poets said in reference to the Megalopolitans in Arcadia: "The Great City is a great desert." On account of the scarcity of timber their buildings are finished with beams and pillars of palm-wood. They wind ropes of twisted reed round the pillars; and then they plaster them and paint them with colours, though they coat the doors with asphalt. Both these and the private homes are built high, all being vaulted on account of the lack of timber; for, with the exception of the palm tree, most of the country is bare of trees and bears shrubs only. The palm is most abundant in Babylonia, and is found in abundance in Susa and on the coast of Persis and in Carmania. They do not use tiles much on their houses, for they get no rain; and this is likewise the case both in Susa and Sitacene.

6. In Babylonia a settlement is set apart for the

1 "Megalopolis" means "Great City."

2 Strabo makes the same quotation in 8. 8. 1.

2 Βαβυλώνι, Groskurd and Meineke emend to Βαβυλῶνι.
τοῖς ἐπιχωρίοις φιλοσόφοις, τοῖς Χαλδαίοις προσαγορευομένοις, οἱ περὶ ἀστρονομίαν εἰσὶ τὸ πλέον προσποιοῦνται δὲ τινες καὶ γενεθλιαλογεῖν, οὕς οὐ καταδέχονται οἱ ξένοι. ἔστι δὲ καὶ φῦλον τὸ τὸν Χαλδαίων καὶ χώρα τῆς Βαβυλονίας ὑπ’ ἐκείνων οἰκομένη, πλησιάζουσα καὶ τοῖς Ἀραβι καὶ τῇ κατὰ Πέρσας λεγομένη θαλάττῃ. ἔστι δὲ καὶ τῶν Χαλδαίων τῶν ἀστρονομικῶν γένη πλείω καὶ γὰρ Ὁρχηνοὶ τινες προσαγορευοῦνται καὶ Βοροστπήνοι καὶ ἄλλοι πλείους, ώς ἄν καὶ αἱρέσεις, ἄλλα καὶ ἄλλα νέμοντες περὶ τῶν αὐτῶν δόγματα. μέμνηνται δὲ καὶ τῶν ἄνδρῶν ἔνιοι οἱ μαθηματικοί, καθάπερ Κιδήνα τε καὶ Ναβουριανοῦ καὶ Σουδίνου, καὶ Σέλενυκος δ’ ὁ ἀπὸ τῆς Σελευκείας Χαλδαίος ἔστι καὶ ἄλλοι πλείους ἁξιόλογοι ἄνδρες.

7. Τὰ δὲ Βόρσιππα ἱερὰ πόλις ἔστιν Ἀρτέμιδος καὶ Ἀπόλλωνος, λυσοργεῖον μέγα. πληθύνουσι δὲ ἐν αὐτῇ νυκτερίδες μείζους πολὺ τῶν ἐν ἄλλοις τόποις ἀλήσκονται δ’ εἰς βρῶσιν καὶ ταρχεύονται.

8. Περιέχεται δ’ ἡ χώρα τῶν Βαβυλωνίων ἀπὸ μὲν τῆς ἱσός ὑπὸ τε Σουσίων καὶ Ἐλυμαίων καὶ Παραβακκηνών, ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς μεσημβρίας ὑπὸ τοῦ Περσικοῦ κόλπου καὶ τῶν Χαλδαίων μέχρι Ἀράβων τῶν Μεσηνῶν, ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς ἐσπέρας ὑπὸ τε Ἀράβων τῶν Σκηνιτῶν μέχρι τῆς Ἀδιαβηνῆς καὶ τῆς Γορδαίας, ἀπὸ δὲ τῶν ἄρκτων ὑπὸ τε Ἀρμενίων καὶ Μηδῶν μέχρι τοῦ Ζάγρου καὶ τῶν περὶ αὐτῶν ἐθνῶν.

1 Μεσηνῶν, Letronne, for 'Ελεσηνῶν Ε', 'Αλεσηνῶν other MSS.; so later editors. 2 αὐτῶν, Jones, for αὐτό.
local philosophers, the Chaldaeans, as they are called, who are concerned mostly with astronomy; but some of these, who are not approved of by the others, profess to be genethlialogists.¹ There is also a tribe of the Chaldaeans, and a territory inhabited by them, in the neighbourhood of the Arabians and of the Persian Sea, as it is called. There are also several tribes of the Chaldaean astronomers. For example, some are called Orcheni, others Borsippeni, and several others by different names, as though divided into different sects which hold to various different dogmas about the same subjects. And the mathematicians make mention of some of these men; as, for example, Cidenas and Naburianus and Sudinus. Seleucus of Seleuceia is also a Chaldaean, as are also several other noteworthy men.

7. Borsippa is a city sacred to Artemis and Apollo; and it manufactures linen in great quantities. It abounds in bats, much larger in size than those in other places; and these bats are caught and salted for food.

8. The country of the Babylonians is surrounded on the east by the Susians and Elymaeans and Paraetacenians, and on the south by the Persian Gulf and the Chaldaeans as far as the Mesenian Arabians, and on the west by the Arabians called Scenitae,³ as far as Adiabenê and Gordyaea, and on the north by the Armenians and the Medes as far as the Zagrus and the tribes about that river.

¹ i.e. to be astrologers, or to know how to cast nativities.
² Cf. “Mesenê” in 2. 1. 31.
³ “Tent-dwellers.”
9. Διαρρέεται δ’ ύπο πλειονών μὲν ποταμῶν ἢ χώρα, μεγίστων δὲ τού τε Εὐφράτου καὶ τοῦ Τίγρεως· μετὰ γὰρ τοὺς Ἰνδικοὺς οὕτωι λέγονται δευτερεύειν κατὰ τὰ νότια μέρη τῆς Ἀσίας οἱ ποταμοὶ· ἔχουσι δ’ ἀνάπλους, ὁ μὲν ἐπὶ τὴν Ὀπιν καὶ 1 τὴν νῦν Σελεύκειαν (ἡ δὲ Ὀπις κώμη ἐμπόριον τῶν κύκλω τῶν), ὁ δ’ ἐπὶ Βαβυλῶνα, C 740 πλειόνων ἢ τρισχιλίων σταδίων. οἱ μὲν οὖν Πέρσαι τους ἀνάπλους ἐπίτηδες κωλύειν θέλουσι, φόβῳ τῶν ἐξωθεν ἐφόδων, καταράκτας χειροτονήτους κατεσκευάσαν 2· ὁ δὲ Ἀλεξανδρὸς ἐπιών, ὁσοὺς οἶος τῇ ἄνω, ἀνεσκεύασε, καὶ μάλιστα τοὺς ἐπὶ τὴν Ὀπιν. ἐπεμελήθη δὲ καὶ τῶν διωρύγων· πλημμυρεῖ γὰρ ὁ Εὐφράτης κατὰ τὴν ἀρχὴν τοῦ θέρους, ἀπὸ τοῦ ἐαρός ἀρξάμενος, ἥνικα τῇ κοινῇ αἱ χώνες αἱ ἀπὸ τῆς Ἀρμενίας, ὡςτ’ ἀνάγκη λιμνάζειν καὶ κατακλύζεσθαι τὰς ἀρούρας, εἰ μὴ διοχετεύει ταῖς ταράτειαις καὶ διώρυξι τὸ ἐκπίπτον τοῦ τοῦ ῥοῦ καὶ ἐπιπολάζον ὕδωρ, καθάπερ καὶ ἐν Αἰγύπτῳ τῷ τοῦ Νείλου· ἐντεύθεν μὲν οὖν αἱ διώρυγας γεγένηται· χρεία δὲ ἐστὶν ὑπουργίας μεγάλης· βαθεία γὰρ ἡ γῆ καὶ μαλακὴ καὶ εὐένδοτος, ὅστε καὶ ἐκσύρεται ραδίως ὑπὸ τῶν ῥευμάτων καὶ γυμνοὶ τὰ πεδία, πληροὶ δὲ τὰς διώρυγας καὶ τὰ στόματα αὐτῶν ἐμφράττει ράδιως ἢ χοῦς· οὗτος δὲ συμβαίνει πάλιν τὴν ὑπέρχυσιν τῶν ύδατων εἰς τὰ πρὸς τῇ θαλάττῃ πεδία ἐκπίπτουσαν λίμνας ἀποτελεῖν καὶ ἐλη καὶ

1 Meissner would omit καὶ. But according to Strabo’s usage Σελεύκειαν might be appositional with Ὀπιν with the καὶ quite as well as without it.

2 λιμνάζεσθαι Δhi.

204
9. The country is traversed by several rivers, though the largest are the Euphrates and the Tigris. Next to the Indian rivers these two, among those in the southern parts of Asia, are said to hold the second place. And they are navigable inland: the Tigris to Opis and the present Seleucia 1 (the village Opis is an emporium of the places situated round it) and the Euphrates to Babylon, a distance of more than three thousand stadia. Now the Persians, wishing on purpose to prevent voyaging up these rivers, for fear of attacks from without, had constructed artificial cataracts, but Alexander, when he went against them, destroyed as many of them as he could, and in particular those to Opis. He also paid careful attention to the canals; for the Euphrates rises to flood-tide at the beginning of summer, beginning first to rise in the spring when the snows in Armenia melt; so that of necessity it forms lakes and deluges the ploughed lands, unless the excess of the stream, or the surface water, is distributed by means of trenches and canals, as is the case with the Nile in Aegypt. Now this is the origin of the canals; but there is need of much labour to keep them up, for the soil is so deep and soft and yielding that it is easily swept out by the streams, and the plains are laid bare, and the canals are easily filled, and their mouths choked, by the silt; and thus it results again that the overflow of the waters, emptying into the plains near the sea, forms lakes and marshes and reed-beds, which last supply reeds from

1 Bruno Meissner (Klio, Beiträge zur Alten Geschichte, XIX. 1925, p. 103), comparing 2. 1. 26, understands Strabo to mean that Opis and "the present Seleucia" are identical (see critical note).
STRABO

καλαμώνας, εξ δὲ καλάμινα πλεκται παντοία σκεύη, τὰ μὲν ύγρον δεκτικὰ τῇ ἀσφάλτῳ περι-
αλειφόντων, τοῖς δ᾽ ἄλλοις ψιλῶς χρωμένων καὶ
ιστία δὲ ποιοῦνται καλάμινα, ψιάθοις ἢ ῥιψὶ
παραπλήσια.

10. Τὸ μὲν οὖν παντάπασι κωλύειν τὴν τοιαύτην
πλήμμυραν οὐχ οἶνον τε ἵσως, τὸ δὲ τὴν δυνατὴν
προσφέρειν βοήθειαν ἡγεμόνων ἁγαθῶν ἑστιν.
ἡ δὲ βοήθεια αὐτῆ τὴν μὲν πολλὴν παρέκχουσιν
ἐμφρᾶξει κωλύειν, τὴν δὲ πλήρωσιν, ἢν ἡ χοῦς
ἐργάζεται, τούσαντίον ἀνακαθάρσει τῶν διωρύγων
καὶ ἑξανοίξει τῶν στομάτων. ἡ μὲν οὖν ἀνακα-
θαρσεῖς βάδια, ἡ δὲ ἐμφραξίς πολυχειρίας δεῖ
εὐένδοτος γὰρ οὖσα ἢ γῆ καὶ μαλακῆ τὴν ἐπιφορη-
θείσαν οὐχ ὑπομένει χοῦν, ἀλλὰ εἰκονισά συνεφέλ-
κεται κἀκείνην καὶ ποιεῖ δυσέγχωστον ¹ τὸ στόμα.
καὶ γὰρ καὶ τάχους δεῖ πρὸς τὸ ταχέως κλεισθῆναι
τὰς διωρύγας καὶ μὴ πᾶν ἐκπεσεῖν εξ αὐτῶν τὸ
ὕδωρ. ἐξηρανθείσαι γὰρ τοῦ θέρους ἐξηρανίσκει
καὶ τὸν ποταμὸν ταπεινωθεῖς δὲ τὰς ἐποχετείας
οὐ δύναται παρέχεσθαι κατὰ καιρὸν ὧν δεῖ
πλείστον τοῦ θέρους ἐμπυροσ οὖσα ἡ χώρα καὶ
καυματηρά διαφέρει δ᾽ οὖν ἡ τῷ πλήθει τῶν
ὕδατων κατακλύζεσθαι τοὺς καρποὺς, ἡ τῇ λει-
ψυχρίᾳ τῷ δίψει διαφθείρεσθαι· ἀμα δὲ καὶ τοὺς
ἀνάπλους, πολὺ τὸ χρῆσιμον ἔχοντας, ἀεὶ λυμαιν-
μένους ² ὑπ᾽ ἀμφοτέρων τῶν λεχθέντων παθῶν,
οὐχ οἶνον τε ἐπανορθοῦν, εἴ μὴ ταχὺ μὲν ἑξανοί-
γοιτο ³ τὰ στόμια τῶν διωρύγων, ταχὺ δὲ κλείοιτο

¹ δυσέγχωστον, Schneider, for δυσέγχωστον Φ, δυσέχωστον
other MSS.
² After λυμαινομένου all MSS. except F read γὰρ; before
that word Meineke, from conj. of Corais, inserts δὲ.
²06
which all kinds of reed-vessels are woven. Some of these vessels, when smeared all over with asphalt, can hold water, whereas the others are used in their bare state. They also make reed-sails, which are similar to rush-mats or wicker-work.

10. Now it is impossible, perhaps, altogether to prevent overflows of this kind, but it is the part of good rulers to afford all possible aid. The aid required is this: to prevent most of the overflowing by means of dams, and to prevent the filling up effected by the silt, on the contrary, by keeping the canals cleared and the mouths opened up. Now the clearing of the canals is easy, but the building of dams requires the work of many hands; for, since the earth readily gives in and is soft, it does not support the silt that is brought upon it, but yields to the silt, and draws it on, along with itself, and makes the mouth hard to dam. And indeed there is also need of quick work in order to close the canals quickly and to prevent all the water from emptying out of them. For when they dry up in the summer, they dry up the river too; and when the river is lowered it cannot supply the sluices with water at the time needed, since the water is needed most in summer, when the country is fiery hot and scorched; and it makes no difference whether the crops are submerged by the abundance of water, or are destroyed by thirst for water. At the same time, also, the voyages inland, with their many advantages, were always being thwarted by the two above-mentioned causes, and it was impossible to correct the trouble unless the mouths of the canals were quickly opened up and quickly closed, and

3 ἐξανολόγυτο, Kramer, for κλείοντο; so the later editors.
καὶ αἱ διώρυγες αἰὲι μετριάζοιεν, ὅστε μὴ πλεονάζειν ἐν αὐταῖς τὸ ὕδωρ μὴ ἔλλειπεν.

C 741 11. Φησὶ δ’ Ἀριστόβουλος τὸν Ἀλέξανδρον αὐτὸν, ἀναπλέοντα καὶ κυβερνῶντα τὸ σκάφος, ἐπισκοπεῖν καὶ ἀνακαθαίρειν τὰς διώρυγας μετὰ τοῦ πλῆθους τῶν συνακολουθησάντων· ὥς δ’ αὐτῶς καὶ τὰ στόμια ἐμφράττειν, τὰ δ’ ἀνοίγειν· κατανοῆσαντα δὲ μίαν τὴν μάλιστα τείνουσαν ἡτὶ τὰ ἐλη καὶ τὰς λίμνας τὰς πρὸ τῆς ’Αραβίας, δυσμεταχείριστον ἔχουσαν τὸ στόμα καὶ μὴ ῥαδίως ἐμφράττεσθαι δυναμένην διὰ τὸ εὐνόδοτον καὶ μαλακόγειον, ἄλλο ἀνοίξας καίνον στόμα, ἀπὸ σταδίων τριάκοντα ύπόπτερον λαβόντα χωρίον, κἀκεὶ μεταγαγεῖν τὸ ἕρθον· ταῦτα δὲ ποιεῖν, προονούντα ἁμα καὶ τοῦ μὴ τὴν ’Αραβίαν δυσεἰσβολον τελέως ύπὸ τῶν λιμνῶν ἢ καὶ τῶν ἐλῶν ἀποτελεσθῆναι, νησίζουσαν ἢδη διὰ τὸ πλῆθος τοῦ ύδατος· διανοεῖσθαι γὰρ δὴ κατακτᾶσθαι τὴν χώραν ταύτην καὶ στόλους καὶ ὀρμητῆρια ἢδη κατεσκευάσθαι, τὰ πλοία τὰ μὲν ἐν Φοινίκῃ τε καὶ Κύπρῳ ναυπηγησάμενον διάλυτα τε καὶ γομφώτα, δ’ κομισθέντα εἰς Ἡπάκον σταθμοῖς ἢτα ἑπτὰ εἰς τὸ ποταμὸ κατακομμισθῆναι μέχρι Βαβυλῶνος, τὰ δ’ ἐν τῇ Βαβυλωνίᾳ συμπήξαμεν τῶν ἐν τοῖς ἀλσει καὶ τοῖς παραδείσοις κυπαρίττων· σπάνις γὰρ ὑλῆς ἔνταθαι· ἐν δὲ Κοσσάιοις καὶ ἄλλοις τισὶ μετρία τὶς ἐστὶν ἐυπορία. σκῆψασθαι μὲν οὖν αἰτίαν

1 μὴτε, Corais, for μὴδε.
2 τείνουσαν, the editors, for συντείνουσαν.
3 σταθμοῖς F, σταδίοις other MSS. and editors before Kramer.

208
unless the canals were regulated so that the water in them neither was excessive nor failed.

11. Aristobulus says that Alexander himself, when he was sailing up the river and piloting the boat, inspected the canals and with his multitude of followers cleared them; and that he likewise stopped up some of the mouths and opened others; and when he noticed that one canal, the one which stretched most directly towards the marshes and lakes that lay in front of Arabia, had a mouth most difficult to deal with and could not easily be stopped up because of the yielding and soft nature of the soil, he opened up another mouth, a new one, at a distance of thirty stadia from it, having selected a place with a rocky bottom, and that he diverted the stream to that place; and that in doing this he was taking forethought at the same time that Arabia should not be made utterly difficult to enter by the lakes or even by the marshes, since, on account of the abundance of water, that country was already taking the form of an island. For of course Alexander, he says, intended to acquire possession of that country, and had already prepared fleets and bases of operations, having built some of his boats in Phoenicia and Cypros, boats that were constructed with bolts and could be taken to pieces, which were conveyed by a seven days' journey to Thapsacus and then down the river to Babylon, and having built others in Babylonia, from the cypress trees in the groves and the parks; for there is a scarcity of timber in Babylonia, although there is a moderately good supply of timber in the countries of the Cossaei and certain other tribes. Now Alexander alleged
τοῦ πολέμου φησίν, ἐπειδὴ μόνοι τῶν ἀπάντων οὐ πρεσβεύσαντο οἱ 'Αραβὲς ὡς αὐτῶν, τὸ δ’ ἀληθὲς ὁρεγόμενον πάντων εἶναι κύριον καὶ ἐπεὶ δύο θεοὺς ἐπυνθάνετο τιμᾶσθαι μόνοις ὑπ’ αὐτῶν, τὸν τε Δία καὶ τὸν Διόνυσον, τοὺς τὰ κυρίωτα πρὸς τὸ ξῆν παρέχοντας, τρίτον ὑπολαβεῖν εἀυτὸν τιμῆσασθαί, κρατήσαντα καὶ ἐπιτρέψαντα τὴν πάτριον αὐτονομίαν ἔχειν, ἢν εἰχον πρότερον. ταύτα τε δὴ πραγματεύεσθαι περὶ τὰς διώρυγας τὸν 'Αλέξανδρον, καὶ τοὺς τάφους σκευωρεῖσθαι τοὺς τῶν βασιλέων καὶ δυναστῶν τοὺς γὰρ πλείστους ἐν ταῖς λίμναις εἶναι.

12. Ἐρατοσθένης δὲ, τῶν λιμνῶν μνησθεῖς τῶν πρὸς τῇ 'Αραβίᾳ, φησὶ τὸ ὕδωρ ἀπορομενον διεξόδων ἀνοίξαι πόρους ὑπὸ γῆς καὶ δὲ ἐκείων ὑποφέρεσθαι μέχρι Κοιλοσύρων· ἀναθλίβεσθαι δὲ εἰς τοὺς περὶ 'Ρινοκόλουρα 1 καὶ τὸ Κάσιον ὄρος τόπους 2 καὶ ποιεῖν τὰς ἐκεῖ λίμνας καὶ τὰ βάραθρα. οὐκ οἶδα δ’, εἰ πιθανῶς εὔρηκεν: αἱ γὰρ τοῦ Εὐφράτου παρεκχύσεις αἱ ποιοῦσαι τὰς πρὸς τῇ 'Αραβία λίμνας καὶ τὰ ἔλη πλησίον εἰσὶ τῆς κατὰ Πέρσας θαλάττης, ὀ δὲ διείργων ἱσθμὸς οὔ τε πολὺς ἑστὶν οὔτε πετρώδης, ὡστε C 742 ταύτη μᾶλλον εἰκὸς ἢν βιάσασθαι τὸ ὕδωρ εἰς τὴν θάλατταν, εἰτ’ ὑπὸ γῆς 3 εἰτ’ ἐπιπολῆς, ἢ πλείους τῶν ἐξαισχελίων σταδίων διανύειν, ἀνυδρον καὶ ἕθραν οὔτω, καὶ ταύτα ὁρῶν ἐν μέσῳ κειμένων.

1 'Ρινοκόλουρα, Tzschucke and Corais, for 'Ρινοκορόδρα (see readings in 16. 2. 31 and 16. 4. 24).
as cause of the war, Aristobulus says, that the Arabians were the only people on earth who did not send ambassadors to him, but in truth was reaching out to be lord of all; and when he learned that they worshipped two gods only, Zeus and Dionysus, the gods who supply the most requisite needs of life, he took it for granted that they would worship him as a third if he mastered them and allowed them to keep the ancestral independence which they had had before. Accordingly, he adds, Alexander busied himself thus with the canals, and also inspected thoroughly the tombs of the kings and potentates, most of which are situated among the lakes.

12. Eratosthenes, when he mentions the lakes near Arabia, says that when the water is deprived of exits it opens up underground passages and through these flows underground as far as the country of Coelê-Syria, and that it is pressed up into the region of Rhinocolura and Mt. Casius and forms the lakes and the pits there; but I do not know whether or not his statement is plausible; for the side-outflows of the Euphrates which form the lakes near Arabia and the marshes are near the Persian Sea, but the isthmus which separates them is neither large nor rocky, so that it was more likely that the water forced its way into the sea in this region, whether underground or on the surface, than that it traversed a distance of more than six thousand stadia, through a country so waterless and dry, and that too when mountains intervene, I mean Mt.

---

2 τόποις, Corais, for ποταμοῖς.
3 γῆν μίν, Tzschucke, and Corais.
1 Eratosthenes’ reference to “Rhinocolura” in connection with “Mt. Casius,” shows that he meant the Mt. Casius near Aegypt and not the Syrian Mt. Casius. Eratosthenes, like other writers (Polybius 5. 80, Diodorus Siculus 1. 30,
Libanus and Mt. Antilibanus and Mt. Casius.¹ Such, then, are the accounts of Aristobulus and Eratosthenes.

13. Polycleitus, however, says that the Euphrates does not overflow; for, he says, it flows through large plains; and as for the mountains, some stand at a distance of two thousand stadia from it, but the Cossaean mountains at a distance of scarcely one thousand, which latter are not very high, are not covered very deeply with snow, and do not cause the snow to melt quickly in great quantities; for, he says, the heights of the mountains lie in the region above Ecbatana towards the north, but, in the region towards the south, they split, broaden out, and become much lower, and at the same time most of their waters are received by the Tigris and thus overflow the plains. Now this last assertion is obviously absurd, for the Tigris flows down into the same plains as the Euphrates, and the above-mentioned heights of the mountains have different altitudes, the northern heights being more elevated in some places, whereas the southern broaden out in some places; but the quantity of snow is not determined merely by the heights, but also by their latitudes; and the same mountain has more snow in its northern parts than in its southern, and the snow continues longer in the former than the latter. Now the Tigris receives from the southernmost parts of Armenia, which are and Josephus 13. 13), extended the name "Cœlæ-Syria," which was properly applied only to the country between Mts. Libanus and Antilibanus, to include that part of Syria which borders on Aegypt and Arabia. Hence, quite apart from the truth or falsity of Eratosthenes' statement, he was clearly misinterpreted by Strabo.
πλησίον ἔστι τὰς Βαβυλωνίας, δεχόμενος τὸ ἐκ τῶν χιόνων ὑδρα ὑπὸ πολὺ ἄν, ἀτε ἐκ τῆς νοτίου πλευρᾶς, ἢττον ἀν πλημμύροι· ὁ δὲ Εὐφράτης τὸ ἐξ ἀμφοτέρων δέχεται τῶν μερῶν, καὶ οὐκ ἐξ ἐνὸς ὤρους, ἀλλὰ πολλῶν, ὡς ἐδηλοῦμεν ἐν τῇ περιγραφῇ τῆς Ἀρμενίας, προστίθεισ τὸ µῆκος τοῦ ποταμοῦ, ὃς μὲν τὸ ἐν τῇ μεγάλῃ Ἀρμενίᾳ διέξεισι καὶ τῇ µικρᾷ, ὃς δὲ τὸ ἐκ τῆς µικρᾶς Ἀρμενίας καὶ τῆς Καππαδοκίας διὰ τοῦ Ταύρου διέκβαλὼν ἐως Θαψάκου φέρεται, τὴν κατὰ Συρίαν καὶ τὴν Μεσοποταμίαν ἄφορίζων, ὃς δὲ τὸ λοιπὸν µέχρι Βαβυλώνου καὶ τῆς ἑκβολῆς ὀμοῦ τρισμυρίων καὶ ἔξακοσικιλίων σταδίων. τὰ µὲν οὖν περὶ τὰς διώρυγας τοιαύτα.

14. Ἡ δὲ χώρα φέρει κριθὰς µέν, ὡςας οὐκ ἄλλη (καὶ γὰρ τριακοσιοντάχουν 2 λέγουσι), τὰ δὲ ἄλλα ἕκ τοῦ φοῖνικος παρέχεται καὶ γὰρ ἄρτον καὶ οἶνον καὶ ὦξος καὶ µέλι καὶ ἀλφίτα: τὰ τὸ πλεκτὰ παντοῖα ἐκ τούτων· τοῖς δὲ πυρῆσιν ἀν’ ἄνθράκων οἱ χαλκεῖς χρῶνται, βρεχόμενοι δὲ τοῖς συιτζομένοις εἰσὶ τροφὴ βουνοῦ καὶ προβάτων. φασὶ δ’ εἶναι Περσικὴν φώµην, ἐν ἥ τᾶς ϕιλελείας τριακοσίας καὶ ἐξήκοντα διαριθμοῦνται:

1 ἐδηλοῦμεν, Corais unnecessarily emends to ἐδήλουν.
2 τριακοσιοντάχουν, Meineke, for τριακοσιάχια Ald., τριακοσιάχεα conj. of Lobeck.
GEOGRAPHY, 16. 1. 13–15

near Babylonia, the water of the melted snows, which is not much, since it comes from the southern side, and this river would therefore be flooded less than the Euphrates; but the Euphrates receives the water from both parts, and not merely from one mountain, but from many, as I made clear in my description of Armenia,¹ where I added the length of that river, giving first the length of its course in Greater Armenia and Lesser Armenia, and secondly its length from Lesser Armenia and Cappadocia through the Taurus as far as Thapsacus, where it forms the boundary between Lower Syria and Mesopotamia, and, thirdly, the rest of its length as far as Babylon and the outlet, a length, all told, of thirty-six thousand stadia. So much, then, for the canals.

14. The country produces larger crops of barley than any other country ² (bearing three hundredfold, they say), and its other needs are supplied by the palm tree; for this tree yields bread, wine, vinegar, honey, and meal; and all kinds of woven articles are supplied by that tree; and the bronze-smiths use the stones of the fruit instead of charcoal; and when soaked in water these stones are used as food for oxen and sheep which are being fattened. There is said to be a Persian song wherein are enumerated three hundred and sixty uses of the palm tree; and, as for oil, the people use mostly that of sesame, but this plant is rare in all other places.

15. Babylonia produces also great quantities of asphalt, concerning which Eratosthenes states that the liquid kind, which is called naphtha, is found in Susis, but the dry kind, which can be solidified, in

¹ See 11. 12. 3 and 11. 14. 2.
² Cf. 11. 4. 3, 15. 3. 11, and Herodotus 1. 193.
Βαβυλωνία: ταύτης δ' ἦστιν ἡ πηγή τοῦ Εὐφράτου πλησίον· πλημμύροντος δὲ τούτου κατὰ τὰς τῶν χιόνων τήξεις καὶ αὐτῇ πληροῦται καὶ ὑπέρχυσιν εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν λαμβάνειν· ἐνταῦθα δὲ συνίστανται βῶλοι μεγάλαι πρὸς τὰς οἰκοδομὰς ἐπιτήδειαί τὰς διὰ τῆς ὅπτης πλώθουν. άλλοι δὲ καὶ τὴν ύγράν ἐν τῇ Βαβυλωνίᾳ γίνεσθαι φασίν. περὶ μὲν οὖν τῆς ἥχησις εἰρηται, πόσον τὸ χρῆσιμον τὸ ἐκ τῶν οἰκοδομῶν μάλιστα· φασὶ δὲ καὶ πλοία πλέκεσθαι, ἐμπλασθέντα δ' ἀσφάλτω πυκνοῦσθαι. τὴν δὲ ύγράν, ἢν νάφθαν καλοῦσι, παράδοξον ἔχειν συμβαίνει τὴν φύσιν προσαχθεῖς.1 γὰρ ὁ νάφθας πυρὶ πλησίον ἀναρ- πάξει τὸ πῦρ, κἂν ἐπιχρίσασας αὐτῷ σῶμα προσα- γάγης, φλέγεται· σβέσαι δ' ύδατι οὐχ οἷον τε (ἐκκαίεται γὰρ μάλλον), πλὴν εἰ πάνω πολλῷ, ἀλλὰ πηλῷ καὶ ὄξει καὶ στυπτηρία καὶ ἐξῄ πυγεῖς2 σβέννυται. πείρας δὲ χάριν φασίν Ἀλέξανδρον ἐν λοντρῷ προσχέαι παιδὶ τοῦ νάφθα καὶ προσαγαγεῖν λύχνον· φλεγόμενον δὲ τὸν παιδὰ ἐγγὺς ἐλθεῖν τοῦ ἀπόλεσθαι, πλὴν πολλῷ σφόδρα καταντούντες τῷ ύδατι ἐξίσχυσαν καὶ διέσωσαν οἱ περιστώτες. Ποσειδώνιος δὲ φησὶ τοῦ ἐν τῇ Βαβυλωνίᾳ νάφθα τάς πηγάς, τὰς μὲν εἶναι λευκοῦ, τὰς δὲ μέλανος· τούτων δὲ3 τὰς μὲν εἶναι θείου ύγροῦ, λέγω δὲ τὰς τοῦ λευκοῦ (ταύτας δ' εἶναι τὰς ἐπιστώσας τὰς φλόγας), τὰς δὲ τοῦ μέλανος, ἀσφάλτου ύγρῶς, φ' αὖτ' ἐλαιόν τοὺς λύχνους κάουσιν.4

1 προσαχθεῖς D, προσαφθεῖς other MSS.
2 πυγεῖς Epit., for πυγέντα; so Meineke.
3 δὴ Dh.
4 καίουσι CFmosv.
GEOGRAPHY, 16. 1. 15

Babylonia; and that there is a fountain of this latter asphalt near the Euphrates River; and that when this river is at its flood at the time of the melting of the snows, the fountain of asphalt is also filled and overflows into the river; and that there large clods of asphalt are formed which are suitable for buildings constructed of baked bricks. Other writers say that the liquid kind also is found in Babylonia. Now writers state in particular the great usefulness of the dry kind in the construction of buildings, but they say also that boats are woven with reeds and, when plastered with asphalt, are impervious to water. The liquid kind, which they call naphtha, is of a singular nature; for if the naphtha is brought near fire it catches the fire; and if you smear a body with it and bring it near to the fire, the body bursts into flames; and it is impossible to quench these flames with water (for they burn more violently), unless a great amount is used, though they can be smothered and quenched with mud, vinegar, alum, and bird-lime. It is said that Alexander, for an experiment, poured some naphtha on a boy in a bath and brought a lamp near him; and that the boy, enveloped in flames, would have been nearly burned to death if the bystanders had not, by pouring on him a very great quantity of water, prevailed over the fire and saved his life. Poseidonius says of the springs of naphtha in Babylonia, that some send forth white naphtha and others black; and that some of these, I mean those that send forth white naphtha, consist of liquid sulphur (and it is these that attract the flames), whereas the others send forth black naphtha, liquid asphalt, which is burnt in lamps instead of oil.

217
STRABO

16. Πάλαι μὲν οὖν ἦ Βαβυλῶν ἡ μητρόπολις τῆς Ἀσσυρίας, νῦν δὲ Σελεύκεια, ἢ ἐπὶ τῷ Τίγρει λεγομένη. πλησίον δ᾽ ἐστὶ κόμη, Κηνησίφων λεγομένη, μεγάλη· ταύτην δ᾽ ἐποιοῦντο χειμάδιον οἱ τῶν Παρθανίων βασιλεῖς, φειδομένοι τῶν Σελευκέων, ἵνα μὴ κατασταθμεῦντο ὕπο τοῦ Σκυθικοῦ φύλου καὶ στρατωτικοῦ. δυνάμει οὖν Παρθικῆ1 πόλις ἀντὶ κόμης ἐστὶ, καὶ τὸ μέγεθος τοσοῦτον γε πλῆθος δεχομένη καὶ τὴν κατασκευὴν ὑπ᾽ ἐκείνων αὐτῶν κατεσκευασμένη καὶ τὰ ὄνομα καὶ τὰς τέχνας προσφόρους ἐκείνοις πεπορισμένη. εἰώθασι γὰρ ἐνταῦθα τοῦ χειμώνος διάγενοι οἱ βασιλεῖς διὰ τὸ εὐάρεον θέρους δὲ ἐν Ἐκβατάνοις καὶ τῇ Τρκανίᾳ διὰ τὴν ἐπικράτειαν τῆς παλαιᾶς δόξης. ὁσπερ δὲ Βαβυλωνίαν τὴν χώραν καλοῦμεν, οὔτω καὶ τούς ἀνδρας τούς ἐκείθεν Βαβυλωνίους καλοῦμεν, οὐκ C 744 ἀπὸ τῆς πόλεως, ἀλλ᾽ ἀπὸ τῆς χώρας· ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς Σελευκείας ἢττον, καὶ ἐκείθεν ὡςι, καθάπερ Διωγένη τὸν Στοικὸν φιλόσοφον.

17. ἦστι δὲ καὶ Ἀρτεμίτα, πόλις ἀξιόλογος, διέχοισα πεντακοσίους τῆς Σελευκείας σταδίους, πρὸς ἐω τὸ πλέον, καθάπερ καὶ ἡ Σιτακηνή. καὶ γάρ αὐτῇ, πολλῇ τε καὶ ἀγαθῇ, μέσῃ2 Βαβυλῶνος τέτακται καὶ τῆς Σουσίδος, ὡστε τοῖς ἐκ Βαβυλῶνος εἰς Σοῦσα βαδίζουσι διὰ τῆς Σιτα-

1 Παρθικῆ, Kramer, for Παρθικῆ.
2 For μέση E reads μέχρι.
GEOGRAPHY, 16. 1. 16–17

16. Now in ancient times Babylon was the metropolis; but Seleuceia is the metropolis now, I mean the Seleuceia on the Tigris, as it is called. Near by is situated a village called Ctesiphon, a large village. This village the kings of the Parthians were wont to make their winter residence, thus sparing the Seleuceians, in order that the Seleuceians might not be oppressed by having the Scythian folk or soldiery quartered amongst them. Because of the Parthian power, therefore, Ctesiphon is a city rather than a village; its size is such that it lodges a great number of people, and it has been equipped with buildings by the Parthians themselves; and it has been provided by the Parthians with wares for sale and with the arts that are pleasing to the Parthians; for the Parthian kings are accustomed to spend the winter there because of the salubrity of the air, but the summer at Ecbatana and in Hyrcania because of the prevalence of their ancient renown. And as we call the country Babylonia, so also we call the men from there Babylonians, that is, not after the city, but after the country; but we do not call men after Seleuceia, if they are from there, as, for example, Diogenes the Stoic philosopher.  

17. And there is also Artemita, a noteworthy city, which is five hundred stadia distant from Seleuceia, being situated almost directly towards the east, as is also Sitacenê. For Sitacenê too, both extensive and fertile, lies between Babylon and Susis, so that the whole of the journey for people travelling from Babylon to Susa is through Sitacenê towards the

1 i.e. Diogenes was known as “Diogenes the Babylonian” (as in Cicero, de Nat. Deorum 1. 5), not as “Diogenes the Seleuceian.”
κηνής η 'δός ἀπασα πρὸς ἐω. πρὸς ἐω δ ἐστὶ καὶ τοῖς ἐκ Σουσών εἰς τὴν μεσόγαιαν τῆς Περσίδος διὰ τῆς Οὐξίας καὶ τοῖς ἐκ τῆς Περσίδος εἰς τὰ μέσα τῆς Καρμανίας. τὴν μὲν ὁνν Καρμανίαν ἐγκυκλοῦται πρὸς ἐκ Περαίας, πολλὴ ύσσα: ταύτῃ δὲ συνάπτει ἡ Παραίτακην καὶ ἡ Κοσσαία μέχρι Κασπίων πυλῶν, ὅρεινα καὶ ληστρικὰ ἔθνη τῇ δὲ Σουσίδι ἡ 'Ἐλυμαίας,2 καὶ αὐτῇ τραχεία ἡ πολλὴ καὶ ληστρικὴ τῇ δὲ 'Ἐλυμαῖδι 3 τὰ περὶ τὸν Ζάγρον καὶ ἡ Μηδία.

18. Κοσσαίοι μὲν ὁνν εἰσὶ τοξόται τὸ πλέον, καθάπερ καὶ οἱ συνεχεῖς ὅρεινοι, προνομεύοντες ἀεὶ: χώραν γὰρ ἔχουσιν ὀλίγην τε καὶ λυπράν, ὡστ' ἐκ τῶν ἀλλοτρίων ἀνάγκη ξῆν' ἀνάγκη δὲ καὶ ἵσχυειν ἄπαντες γὰρ εἰσὶ μάχιμοι τοῖς γοῦν 'Ἐλυμαίους συνεμάχουν μύριοι καὶ τρισχίλιοι, πολεμοῦσι πρὸς τε Βαβυλωνίους καὶ Σουσίους, οἱ δὲ Παραίτακηνοὶ μᾶλλον μὲν τὸν Κοσσαίον ἐπιμελοῦνται γῆς: ὅμως δὲ καὶ αὐτοὶ ληστηρίων ὁμός ἀπέχουνται. 'Ἐλυμαῖοι δὲ καὶ μείζω τούτων κέκτηται χώραν καὶ ποικιλωτέραν. ὅση μὲν ὁνν ἄγαθὴ γεωργοῦσι ἔχει τοὺς ἐνοικοῦντας, ἢ δ' ὅρειν καὶ στρατιῶτας τρέφει, τοξότας τοὺς πλείστους: πολλὴ δὲ ύσσα πολὺ καὶ τὸ στρατιωτικὸν παρέχεται. ὡστε καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς αὐτῶν ζύμαμιν κεκτημένος μεγάλην ὁμός ἀξιοὶ τοῦ τῶν Παρθναίων βασιλεὶ παραπλησίως τοῖς

1 Before ἅρκτον Meineke, from conj. of Groskurd, inserts ἐσπέραν καί.
2 'Ἐλυμαῖ, the editors, for Ἐλυμάντις F, Ἐλυμάτίς other MSS.
east; and the journey for people travelling from Susa into the interior of Persis through Uxia, and for people travelling from Persis into the middle of Carmania, is also towards the east. Now Carmania is encircled on the north by Persis, which is a large country; and bordering on this country are Paraetacene and Cossaea as far as the Caspian Gates, which is inhabited by mountainous and predatory tribes. And bordering on Susis is Elymais, most of which is rugged and inhabited by brigands; and bordering Elymais are Media and the region of the Zagrus.

18. Now the Cossaeans, like the neighbouring mountaineers, are for the most part bowmen, and are always out on foraging expeditions; for they have a country that is small and barren, so that they must needs live at the expense of the other tribes. And they are of necessity a powerful people, for they are all fighters; at any rate, thirteen thousand Cossaeans joined the Elymaeans in battle, when the latter were warring against both the Babylonians and the Susians. But the Paraetaceni are more interested in agriculture than the Cossaeans; but still even they themselves do not abstain from brigandage. The Elymaeans possess a larger and more diversified country than the Paraetaceni. Now all of it that is fertile is inhabited by farmers, whereas the mountainous part of it is a nursery of soldiers, mostly bowmen; and since the latter part is extensive, it can furnish so large a military force that their king, since he possesses great power, refuses to be subject to the king of

---

3 Ἐλυμαῖδι, the editors, for Ἐλυμάτιδι.
Strabo

άλλοις ύπόκους εἶται ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ πρὸς τοὺς Μακεδόνας ὑστερον τοὺς τῆς Συρίας ἀρχοῦτας διέκειτο. Ἀντίοχον μὲν οὖν τὸν Μέγαν τὸ τοῦ βῆλου συλῶν ἱερὸν ἐπιχειρήσαντα ἀνείλον ἐπιθέμενοι καθ’ αὐτοὺς οἱ πλησίον βάρβαροι. ἐκ δὲ τῶν ἐκείνων συμβαντών παιδευθεὶς ὁ Παρθυναῖος χρόνοις ὑστερον ἀκούσαν τὰ ἱερὰ πλοῦσια παρ’ αὐτοῖς, ὁρῶν δ’ ἀπειθοῦντας, ἐμβάλλει μετὰ δυνάμεως μεγάλης, καὶ τὸ τε τῆς Ἀθηνᾶς ἱερὸν εἶλε καὶ τὸ τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος, τὰ Ἀξάρα, καὶ ἤρε ταλάντων μυρίων γάζαν ἡρέθη δὲ καὶ πρὸς τῷ Ἡδυφῶντι ποταμῷ Σελεύκεια, μεγάλη πόλις. Σολόκη δ’ ἐκαλεῖτο πρότερον, τρεῖς δ’ εἰσὶν εἰς τὴν χώραν εὑρεθαι εἰσβολαί. ἐκ μὲν τῆς Μηδίας καὶ τῶν περὶ τὸν Ζάγρον τόπων διὰ τῆς Μασσαβατικῆς, ἐκ δὲ τῆς Σουσίδου διὰ τῆς Γαβιανῆς (ἐπαρχίαι δ’ C 745 εἰσὶν αὐταὶ τῆς Ἑλυμαίας ἡ τε Γαβιανὴ καὶ ἡ Μασσαβατικὴ), τρίτη δ’ ἐστὶν ἡ ἐκ τῆς Περσίδος. ἐστὶ δὲ καὶ Κορβιανὴ ἐπαρχία τῆς Ἑλυμαίδος. ὁμοροι δ’ εἰσὶ τούτων Σαγαπηνοῦ τε καὶ Σιλακηνοῦ, δυναστεῖαι μικραί. τοσαῦτα μὲν καὶ τοιαῦτα ἔθυμ πρὸς ἐω τὰ ὑπερκείμενα τῆς Βαβυλωνίας. πρὸς ἄρκτον δὲ τὴν Μηδίαν ἔφαμεν καὶ τὴν Ἀρμενίαν ἀπὸ δὲ δύσεως ἐστὶν ἡ Ἀδιαβηνὴ καὶ ἡ Μεσοποταμία.

1 Kramer conj. that the words καὶ πρὸς τοὺς Πέρσας have fallen out after ὁμοίως δὲ.
2 For τὰ Ἀξάρα F reads τὰ Ἀξάρα; Tzschucke and Corais, from conj. of Casaubon, read τὰ Ζάρα. But see τὰ Ἀξάρα in 11. 14. 3.
the Parthians like the other tribes; and their king was likewise disposed towards the Macedonians, who ruled Syria in earlier times. Now when Antiochus the Great attempted to rob the temple of Belus, the neighbouring barbarians, all by themselves, attacked him and slew him. In later times the king of Parthia, though warned by what had happened to Antiochus, hearing that the temples in that country contained great wealth, and seeing that the inhabitants were disobedient subjects, made an invasion with a great force, and took both the temple of Athena and that of Artemis, the latter called Azara, and carried off treasures valued at ten thousand talents. And Seleuceia near the Hedyphon River, a large city, was also taken. In earlier times Seleuceia was called Solocê. There are three entrances into the country that have been supplied by nature: one from Media and the region of the Zagrus through Massabaticê; another from Susis through Gabianê (these, both Gabianê and Massabaticê, are provinces of Elymaea), and the third from Persis. And Corbianê is also a province of Elymais. And the countries of the Sagapeni and the Silaceni, small domains, border on that of these people. Such is the size and such is the nature of the tribes situated above Babylonia towards the east. But, as I have said, Media and Armenia are situated on the north; and Adiabenê and Mesopotamia are situated on the west.

1 Kramer suggests that the Greek for "the Persians and" has fallen out of the MSS. here (see critical note).

2 ᾲ Κορβιάνη, Kramer, for Κορβίανα F, Κορβιάνδ moz, Κορβιάνδ other MSS.; so Meineke and Müller-Dübner.
19. Τῆς μὲν οὖν Αδιαβήνης ἡ πλείστη πεδίας ἐστί, καὶ αὐτή τῆς Βαβυλωνίας μέρος οὗτα, ἔχοσα δ’ ὄμως ἄρχοντα ἱδιον, ἐστιν ὡτὶ καὶ τῇ Ἀρμενίᾳ προσχωροῦσα. οἱ γὰρ Μῆδοι καὶ οἱ Ἀρμένιοι, τρίτοι δὲ Βαβυλώνιοι τὰ μέγιστα τῶν ἑθῶν τῶν ταύτης διετέλουσι οὕτως ἐξ ἄρχης συνεστῶτες, ὡστ’ ἀλλήλοις ἐπιτίθεσθαι κατὰ καίρους τοὺς οἰκείους ἐκαστοί καὶ πάλιν διαλύεσθαι καὶ τούτῳ καὶ μέχρι τῆς τῶν Παρθναίών ἐπικρατεῖας διέμεινε. τῶν μὲν οὖν Μῆδων καὶ τῶν Βαβυλώνιων ἐπάρχον Παρθναῖοι, τῶν δ’ Ἀρμενίων οὐδ’ ἀπαξ’ ἀλλ’ ἔφοδοι μὲν γεγόνασι πολλάκις, ἀνὰ κράτους δ’ οὖχ ἐάλωσαν, ἀλλ’ ὁ γε Τιγράίης καὶ ἐρωμένως ἀντεπεκράτησεν, ὡς ἐν τοῖς Ἀρμενιακοῖς εὑρηται. ἡ μὲν οὖν Ἀδιαβήνη τοιαύτη καλοῦνται δ’ οἱ Ἀδιαβήνοι καὶ Σακκόποδες: 1 περὶ δὲ τῆς Μεσοποταμίας ἐροῦμεν ἑφέξης καὶ τῶν πρὸς μεσημβρίαν ἑθῶν, ἐπιώντες ἐπὶ μικρὸν πρότερον τὰ λεγόμενα περὶ τῶν ἑθῶν τῶν παρὰ τοῖς Ἀσσυρίοις.

20. Τάλλα μὲν οὖν έοικε τοῖς Περσικοῖς, ἱδιον δὲ τὸ καθεστάναι τρεῖς ἀνδρας σώφρονας ἐκάστης ἄρχοντας φυλῆς, οἱ τὰς ἐπιγάμους κόρας προσώγοντες εἰς τὸ πλῆθος ἀποκηρύττοσιν τοῖς νυμφίοις ἀμείτα τὰς ἐντιμοτέρας πρώτας. οὕτω μὲν αἱ συνξυγια τελοῦνται: οὐσίας δ’ ἀν μιχθῶν ἀλλήλοις, ἐπιθυμίας, 2 ἐξαινώνται ἐκάτερος χωρίς ὀρθρὶ δὲ λούονται πρὶν ἄγγειον τινὸς

---

1 The words καλοῦνται... Σακκόποδες (Σακκόποδες F) are suspected by Kramer and ejected by Meineke.
2 ἐπιθυμίας, Groskurd, for ἐπιθυμίας, for ἐπιθυμίας.
19. Now as for Adiabenê, the most of it consists of plains; and though it too is a part of Babylonia, still it has a ruler of its own; and in some places it borders also on Armenia. For the Medes and the Armenians, and third the Babylonians, the three greatest of the tribes in that part of the world, were so constituted from the beginning, and continued to be, that at times opportune for each they would attack one another and in turn become reconciled. And this continued down to the supremacy of the Parthians. Now the Parthians rule over the Medes and the Babylonians, but they have never once ruled over the Armenians; indeed, the Armenians have been attacked many times, but they could not be overcome by force, since Tigranes opposed all attacks mightily, as I have stated in my description of Armenia.¹ Such, then, is Adiabenê; and the Adiabeni are also called Saccopeides;² but I shall next describe Mesopotamia and the tribes on the south, after briefly going over the accounts given of the customs of Assyria.

20. Now in general their customs are like those of the Persians, but it is a custom peculiar to them to appoint three wise men as rulers of each tribe, who present in public the marriageable girls, and sell them by auction to the bridegrooms, always selling first those who are the more highly prized. Thus marriages are contracted; and every time they have intercourse with one another, they arise and go out, each apart from the other, to offer incense; and in the morning they bathe themselves before

¹ See 11. 14. 15.
² i.e. "Sack-feet." But the name is suspected (see critical note).
STRABO

άψασθαι: παραπλησίως γάρ, ὠςπερ ἀπὸ νεκροῦ τὸ λουτρὸν ἐν ἔθει ἐστίν, οὕτω καὶ ἀπὸ συνοισίας. πάσαις δὲ ταῖς Βαβυλωνίαις ἔθος κατά τι λόγων ἐξεν μίγνυσθαι, πρὸς τι Ἀφροδίσιον ἀφικομέναις μετὰ πολλής θεραπείας καὶ ὄχλουθώμην ἔστεπται ἐκάστη ὁ δὲ προσιών καταθεῖς ἐπὶ τὰ γόνατα, ὅσον καλῶς ἔχει ἀργύριον, συγγίνεται, ἀπώθειν τοῦ τεμένους ἀπαγαγὼν τὸ δ’ ἀργύριον ἵερον τῆς Ἀφροδίτης νομίζεται. ἀρχεία δ’ ἐστὶ τρία, τὸ τῶν ἀφειμένων ἤδη τῆς στρατείας καὶ τὸ τῶν ἐνδοξοτάτων C 746 καὶ τὸ τῶν γερόντων, χωρίς τοῦ ὑπὸ τοῦ βασιλέως καθισταμένου. τούτου δ’ ἐστὶ τὸ τὰς παρθένους ἐκδίδοναι καὶ τὸ τὰς περὶ τῆς μοιχείας δικάζειν δίκας, ἄλλου1 δὲ τὸ τὰς κλοπῆς, τρίτου2 τὸ περὶ τῶν βιαίων. τούς δ’ ἀρρώστους εἰς τὰς τριόδους ἐκτιθέντες πυθάνονται τῶν παριόντων, εἰ τίς τι ἔχοι λέγειν τοῦ πάθους ἄκος οὐδεὶς τέ ἐστιν οὕτω κακὸς τῶν παριόντων, δὲ οὐκ ἐντυχών, εἰ τι φρονεῖ σωτήριον, ὑποτίθεται. ἐσθῆς δ’ αὐτοῖς ἐστὶ χιτῶν λινοῦς ποδήρης καὶ ἐπευδύνηθα ἔρεος, ἰμάτιον λευκόν, κόμη μακρά,3 ὑπόδημα ἐμβάδι ὅμοιον. φοροῦσι δὲ καὶ σφραγίδα καὶ σκήπτρον οὐ λιτών, ἀλλ’ ἐπίσημον, ἔχον ἐπάνω μῆλον ἢ ῥόδον ἢ κρίνον ἢ τι τοιοῦτον ἀλείφονται δ’ ἐκ τοῦ σησάμου θρηνοῦσι δὲ τοὺς ἀποθανόντας, ὡς Αἰγύπτιοι καὶ πολλοὶ τῶν ἄλλων’ θάπτουσι δ’ ἐν μέλιτι, κηρῷ περιπλά-

1 ἄλλῳ CDFhmos.
2 τρίτου, Tschucke, for τρίτον.
3 μακρά, Corais, for μικρά.
they touch any vessel; for just as ablution is customary after touching a corpse, so also it is customary after intercourse. And in accordance with a certain oracle all the Babylonian women have a custom of having intercourse with a foreigner, the women going to a temple of Aphrodite with a great retinue and crowd; and each woman is wreathed with a cord round her head. The man who approaches a woman takes her far away from the sacred precinct, places a fair amount of money upon her lap, and then has intercourse with her; and the money is considered sacred to Aphrodite. They have three tribunals: that of those who are already freed from military service, and that of the most famous, and that of the old men, apart from that appointed by the king. It is the duty of this last to give girls in marriage and to pass judgment in cases of adultery; and the duty of another to pass judgment in cases of theft, and of a third to pass judgment in cases of assault. They place the sick where three roads meet and question those who pass by, on the chance that some one has a cure for the malady; and no one of those who pass by is so base as not to suggest some cure when he falls in with them if he has any in mind. Their clothing consists of a linen tunic reaching to the feet, an upper garment made of wool, and a white cloak; and they wear their hair long, and use a shoe that is like a buskin. They wear also a seal, and carry a staff that is not plain but has a design on it, having on top an apple or rose or lily or something of the kind; and they anoint themselves with sesame; and they bewail the dead, like the Egyptians and many other nations; and they bury their dead in honey, first besmearing
σαντές. τρεῖς δ’ εἰσὶν φρατρίαι τῶν ἀπόρων σίτου· ἐλευθερίας δ’ εἰσίν οὕτως καὶ ἰχθύοφαγοι, διαιτωμένοι παραπλησίως τοῖς κατὰ τὴν Γεδρωσίαν.

21. Μεσοποταμία δ’ ἀπὸ τοῦ συμβεβηκότος ὄνομασται· εἰρήταί δ’, ὅτι κεῖται μεταξὺ τοῦ Ἐυφράτου καὶ τοῦ Τίγριος καὶ διότι οἱ μὲν Τίγριος τὸ ἐσθιόν εὐτῆς μόνον κλυζεί πλευρῶν, τὸ δ’ ἐσπέριον καὶ νότιον ὁ Ἐυφράτης· πρὸς ἄρκτον δὲ ὁ Ταύρος ὁ τοὺς Ἀρμενίους διορίζων ἀπὸ τῆς Μεσοποταμίας. τὸ μὲν οὖν μέγιστον ὁ ἀφίσταναι διάστημα ἀπ’ ἀλλήλων τὸ πρὸς τοῖς ὀρεσίν ἐστὶ· τοῦτο δ’ ἀν εἰς τὸ αὐτὸ, ὅπερ εἰρήκεν Εὐρατοσθένης, τὸ ἀπὸ Θαψάκου, καθ’ ὃ ἦν τὸ ἔδημα τοῦ Ἐυφράτου τὸ παλαιόν, ἐπὶ τὴν τοῦ Τίγριος διάβασιν, καθ’ ἦν διέβη Ἀλέξανδρος αὐτῶν, δισχιλίων τετρακοσίων· τὸ δ’ ἑλάχιστον μικρὸ πλέον τῶν διακοσίων κατὰ Σελεύκειαν ποὺ καὶ Βαβυλῶνα. διαρρεῖ δ’ ὁ Τίγρις τὴν Θωπίτιν καλομένην λίμνην κατὰ πλάτος μέσην· περαιωθεὶς δ’ ἐπὶ θάτερον χεῖλος κατὰ γῆς δύεται μετὰ πολλοῦ ψόφου καὶ ἀναφυσιμάτων· ἐπὶ πολὺ δ’ ἑνεχθεῖς ἀφανῆς, ἀνίσχει πύλιν οὐ πολὺ ἀπώθεν τῆς Γορδυνίας· οὕτω δὲ σφόδρως διεκβάλλει τὴν λίμνην, ὡς φησιν Εὐρατοσθένης, ὡστε ἅλμυρὰν αὐτὴν οὕσαν καὶ ἄνιχθυν γλυκείαν κατὰ τοῦτ’ εἶναι τὸ μέρος καὶ ροώδη καὶ ἰχθύων πλήρη.

22. Ἐπὶ μῆκος δὲ συχνὸν προπέπτωκεν ἡ συναγωγὴ τῆς Μεσοποταμίας, καὶ πλοίῳ πως ἐοίκε· ἐπὶ δὲ τὸ πλείστον τῆς περιφερείας ὁ Ἐυφράτης·

1 ἐοίκε, Corais, for ἐόκει.

1 i.e. "a country between rivers." 2 11.14. 2.
them with wax. But three of their tribes have no grain; and these live in marshes and are fish-eaters, living a life similar to that of the inhabitants of Gedrosia.

21. Mesopotamia has its name from what is the fact in the case. As I have said, it lies between the Euphrates and the Tigris; and the Tigris washes its eastern side only, whereas the Euphrates washes its western and southern sides; and on the north is the Taurus, which separates Armenia from Mesopotamia. Now the greatest distance by which the two rivers are separated is that towards the mountains; and this distance might be the same as that stated by Eratosthenes—I mean that from Thapsacus, where was the old bridge of the Euphrates, to the crossing of the Tigris, where Alexander crossed it—two thousand four hundred stadia; but the shortest distance between the two rivers is somewhere in the neighbourhood of Seleuceia and Babylon, slightly more than two hundred stadia. The Tigris flows through the middle of Lake Thopitis, as it is called, in the direction of its breadth; and, after traversing it to the opposite shore, it sinks underground with upward blasts and a loud noise; and having flowed for a considerable distance invisible, it rises again not far away from Gordyaea; and it traverses the lake so impetuously, as Eratosthenes says, that, although the lake elsewhere is briny and without fish, yet in this part it is fresh, runs like a river, and is full of fish.

22. Mesopotamia contracts in shape, projecting to a considerable length; and the shape of it somewhat resembles that of a boat; and the greatest part of its periphery is formed by the Euphrates. The
καὶ ἐστὶ τὸ μὲν ἀπὸ τῆς Θαψάκου μέχρι Βαβυλώνος, ὡς εἰρήκεν Ἑρατοσθένης, τετρακισχίλιοι καὶ ὀκτακόσιοι στάδιοι. τὸ δὲ ἀπὸ τοῦ κατὰ Κομμαγηνῆν Ζεύγματος, ἦπερ ἐστὶν ἁρχὴ τῆς Μεσοποταμίας, οὐκ ἔλαττον τῶν δισχιλίων σταδίων ἐως ἐπὶ Θάψακου.

23. Ἐστὶ δὴ ἡ μὲν παρόρειος εὐδαίμων ἰκανῶς· ἔχουσι δ᾽ αὐτῆς τὰ μὲν πρὸς τῷ Εὐφράτῃ καὶ τῷ Ζεύγματι, τῷ τε νῦν τῷ κατὰ τὴν Κομμαγηνῆν καὶ τῷ πᾶλαι τῷ κατὰ τὴν Θάψακον, οὐ ¹ Μυγδόνες κατονομασθέντες ὑπὸ τῶν Μακεδόνων· ἐν οἷς ἐστιν ἡ Νίσιβις, ἣν καὶ αὐτὴν Ἀντίοχειαν τὴν ἐν τῇ Μυγδονίᾳ προσηγόρευσαν, ὑπὸ τῷ Μασίῳ ὀρει κειμένην, καὶ Τιγρανόκερτα καὶ περὶ Κάρρας καὶ Νικηφόριον χωρία καὶ Χορδίραζα καὶ Σίννακα, ἐν ἡ Κράσσος διεθάρη, δόλῳ ληφθεὶς ὑπὸ Σουρίνα, τοῦ τῶν Παρθιαίων στρατηγοῦ.

24. Πρὸς δὲ τῷ Τίγρει τὰ τῶν Γορδυαίων ² χωρία, οὕς οἱ πᾶλαι Καρδούχους ἔλεγον, καὶ αἱ πόλεις αὐτῶν ³ Σάρεισά τε καὶ Σάταλκα καὶ Πύνακα, κράτιστον ἐρυμα, τρεῖς ἀκρας ἔχουσα, ἐκάστην ἰδίῳ τείχει τετειχισμένη, ὡστε οἶνον τρίπολιν εἶναι. ἀλλ᾽ ὀμοσ καὶ ὁ Ἀρμένιος ἔχειν ὑπήκουν καὶ οἱ Ῥωμαῖοι βία παρέλαβον, καὶ περ ἐδοξαζαν οἱ Γορδυαίοι διαφερόντως ἀρχιτεκτονικοὶ τινες εἶναι καὶ πολυρκητικῶν ὀργάνων ἐμπειροῦντο ἤσστιν αὐτοῖς εἰς ταύτα ὁ Τιγράνης ἔχρητο. ἐγένετο δὲ καὶ ἡ λοιπὴ Μεσοποταμία ὑπὸ Ῥωμαίοις. Πομπήιος δ᾽ αὐτῆς τὰ πολλὰ τῷ Τιγράνῃ προσέ-

---

1 τε, after οὗ, Groskurd omits; so the later editors.
2 Πορθυαίων, Tzschucke, from conj. of Wesseling (on Diodorus 14. 27), for Παρθυαίων; so the later editors.

230
distance from Thapsacus to Babylon, as Eratosthenes states, is four thousand eight hundred stadia; and that from the Zeugma¹ at Commagenê, where Mesopotamia begins, to Thapsacus, is not less than two thousand stadia.

23. The country alongside the mountains is quite fertile; the parts of it near the Euphrates and the Zeugma, both the present Zeugma at Commagenê and the old Zeugma at Thapsacus, are occupied by the Mygdones, who were so named by the Macedonians. In their country lies Nisibis, which is also called Mygdonian Antiocheia; it lies at the foot of Mt. Masius, and so do Tigranocerta and the regions of Carrhae and Nicephorium, and Chordiraza and Sinnaca, in which last Crassus was slain, being treacherously captured by Surena, the Parthian general.²

24. Near the Tigris lie the places belonging to the Gordyaeans, whom the ancients called Carduchians; and their cities are named Sareisa and Satalca and Pinaca, a very powerful fortress, with three citadels, each enclosed by a separate fortification of its own, so that they constitute, as it were, a triple city. But still it not only was held in subjection by the king of the Armenians, but the Romans took it by force, although the Gordyaeans had an exceptional repute as master-builders and as experts in the construction of siege engines; and it was for this reason that Tigranes used them in such work. But also the rest of Mesopotamia became subject to the Romans. Pompey assigned to Tigranes

¹ Bridge. ² 51 B.C.

³ αἰτῶν, Groskurd, for ἁν; so the later editors.
neimem, ὅσα ἦν ἀξιόλογα· ἔστι γὰρ εὐβοτος ἡ χώρα καὶ εὐεργῆς, ὅστε καὶ τὰ ἀειθαλῆ τρέφειν καὶ ἄρωμα τὸ ἄμωμον· καὶ λεωντοβότος ἔστι· φέρει δὲ καὶ τὸν νάφθαν καὶ τὴν γαγγίτιν λίθον, ἢν φεύγει τὰ ἐρπετά.

25. Δέγεται δὲ Γόρδυς ὁ Τριπτολέμου τὴν Γορδυνῆν οἰκῆσαι, ὦστερον δὲ καὶ Ἐρετηρίας οἱ ἀναρπασθέντες ὑπὸ Περσῶν. περὶ μὲν οὖν Τριπτολέμου δηλώσομεν ἐν τοῖς Συριακοῖς αὐτίκα.

26. Τὰ δὲ πρὸς μεσημβρίαν κεκλιμένα τῆς Μεσοποταμίας καὶ ἀπωτέρω τῶν ὄρων, ἀνυδρα καὶ λυπρὰ οὖντα, ἐχουσιν οἱ Σκηνίται Ὁ Ἀραβες, λῃστρικοὶ τινες καὶ ποιμενικοὶ, μεθυστάμενοι ῥαδίως εἰς ἄλλους τόπους, ὅταν ἑπιλείπωσιν αἱ νομαὶ καὶ αἱ λεησίαι. τοῖς οὖν παρορείοις ὑπὸ τε τούτων κακοῦσθαι συμβαίνει καὶ ὑπὸ τῶν Ἀρμενίων· ὑπέρκειται δὲ καὶ καταδυναστεύονσι διὰ τὴν ἴσχυν· τέλος δὲ ὑπ’ ἐκείνους εἰσὶ τὸ πλέον ἡ τοῖς Παρθαναίοις· ἐν πλευραῖς γὰρ εἰσὶ κάκεινοι, τὴν τε Μηδίαν ἔχοντες καὶ τὴν Βαβυλωνίαν.

27. Μεταξὺ δὲ τοῦ Ἐὐφράτου καὶ τοῦ Τίγριος ἰεὶ καὶ ἄλλος ποταμός, Βασίλειος καλοῦμενος, καὶ περὶ τὴν Ἀνθεμοσύναν ἄλλος, Ἀβόρρας· διὰ δὲ τῶν Σκηνιτῶν, ὑπὸ ἐνίων ¹ Μαλίων νυνὶ λεγομένων, καὶ τῆς κείνων ἐρημίας ἢ ἱδὸς τοῖς ἐκ τῆς Συρίας εἰς Ἑλεύκειαν καὶ Βαβυλῶνα ἐμπορευομένων ἐστίν. ἢ μὲν οὖν διάβασις ² τοῦ

---

¹ ἐνίων, Groskurd, for τῶν.
² διάβασις F, ἀνάβασις other MSS.

---

¹ This stone is called gagetes (i.e. jet) by Pliny (10. 3 and 36. 19).

232
most of the places in this country, I mean all that are worth mentioning; for the country is rich in pasturage, and so rich in plants that it also produces the evergreens and a spice-plant called amomum; and it is a feeding-ground for lions; and it also produces naphtha and the stone called gangitis,\(^1\) which is avoided by reptiles.

25. Gordys, the son of Triptolemus, is said to have taken up his abode in Gordyene, and later also the Eretrians, who were carried off by the Persians. Of Triptolemus, however, I shall soon give a clear account in my description of the Syrians.\(^2\)

26. The parts of Mesopotamia which incline towards the south and are farther from the mountains, which are waterless and barren, are occupied by the Arabian Scenitae, a tribe of brigands and shepherds, who readily move from one place to another when pasture and booty fail them. Accordingly, the people who live alongside the mountains are harassed not only by the Scenitae, but also by the Armenians, who are situated above them and, through their might, oppress them; and at last they are subject for the most part to the Armenians or else to the Parthians, for the Parthians too are situated on the sides of the country and possess both Media and Babylonia.

27. Between the Euphrates and the Tigris there flows another river, called Basileius; and in the neighbourhood of Anthemusia still another, called Aborras. The road for people travelling from Syria to Seleucia and Babylon runs through the country of the Scenitae,\(^3\) now called Malians by some writers, and through their desert. Such travellers cross the

\(2\) 16. 2. 5.  
\(3\) Tent-dwellers.
STRABO

Εὐφράτου κατὰ τὴν Ἀνθεμουσίαν ἐστὶν αὐτοῖς, τὸπον τῆς Μεσοποταμίας: ὑπέρκειται δὲ τοῦ ποταμοῦ, σχοίνους τέτταρας διέχουσα, ἡ Βαμ-βύκη, ἡν καὶ Ἐδεσσαν καὶ Ἰερὰν πόλιν καλοῦσιν, ἐν ἡ τιμῶσι τὴν Συρίαν θεον τὴν Ἀταργάτιν. διαβάντων γὰρ ὁ ὄδος ἐστὶ διὰ τῆς ἑρήμου μέχρι Σκηνῶν, ἀξιολόγου πόλεως ἔπε τοὺς τῆς Βαβυ-λωνίας ὁροὺς ἐπὶ τινος διώρυγος ἱδρυμένης. ἐστὶ δ’ ἀπὸ τῆς διαβάσεως μέχρι Σκηνῶν ἡμερῶν πέντε καὶ εἴκοσιν ὄδός. καμηλίται δ’ εἰσὶ, κατα-γωγὰς ἠχοντες τοτε μὲν ύδρείων εὐτόρους, τῶν λακκαίων τὸ πλέον, τοτε δ’ ἐπακτοῖς χρώμενοι τοῖς ὑδασὶ. παρέχοσι δ’ αὐτοῖς οἱ Σκηνίται τὴν τε εἰρήνην καὶ τὴν μετριότητα τῆς τῶν τελῶν πράξεως, ἣς χάριν φεύγοντες τὴν παρα-ποταμίαν διὰ τῆς ἑρήμου παραβύλλονται, κατα-λιπόντες ἐν δεξιᾷ τὸν ποταμὸν ἡμερῶν σχεδὸν τὰ τρὶῶν ὄδον. οἱ γὰρ παροικοῦντες ἐκατέρωθεν τὸν ποταμὸν φύλαρχοι, χώραν οὐκ εὐτὸρον ἠχοντες, ἦττον δὲ ἀπορον νεμόμενοι, δυναστείαν ἐκαστος ἰδίᾳ περιβεβλημένος ὁ ἰδιον καὶ τελῶνιον ἔχει, καὶ τούτ’ οὐ μέτριον. χαλεπὸν γὰρ ἐν τοῖς τοσούτοις καὶ τούτοις ἀυθάδεις κοινὸν ἀφορισθῆναι μέτρον τὸ τῶ ἐμπόρῳ λυστελές. διέχουσι δὲ τῆς Σελενεκίας αἰ Σκηναί σχοίνους ὀκτωκαίδεκα.

28. Ὁριον δ’ ἐστὶ τῆς Παρθναίων ἀρχῆς ὁ Εὐφράτης καὶ ἡ περαιὰ: τὰ δ’ ἐντὸς ἠχοσὶ Ἐρμαίοι καὶ τῶν Ἀράβων οἱ φύλαρχοι μέχρι Βαβυλωνίας, οἱ μὲν μᾶλλον ἐκεῖνοι, οἱ δὲ τοῖς

1 περιβεβλημένος DFh, παραβεβλημένος other MSS.
2 τούτοις, Corais, for τοῖς.
Euphrates near Anthemusia, a place in Mesopotamia; and above the river, at a distance of four schoeni, lies Bambyce, which is also called Edessa and Hierapolis, where the Syrian goddess Atargatis is worshipped; for after they cross the river, the road runs through the desert to Scenae, a noteworthy city situated on a canal towards the borders of Babylonia. The journey from the crossing of the river to Scenae requires twenty-five days. And on that road are camel-drivers who keep halting-places, which sometimes are well supplied with reservoirs, generally cisterns, though sometimes the camel-drivers use waters brought in from other places. The Scenitae are peaceful, and moderate towards travellers in the exaction of tribute, and on this account merchants avoid the land along the river and risk a journey through the desert, leaving the river on the right for approximately a three days' journey. For the chieftains who live along the river on both sides occupy country which, though not rich in resources, is less resourceless than that of others, and are each invested with their own particular domains and exact a tribute of no moderate amount. For it is hard among so many peoples, and that too among peoples that are self-willed, for a common standard of tribute to be set that is advantageous to the merchant. Scenae is eighteen schoeni distant from Seleucia.

28. The Euphrates and the land beyond it constitute the boundary of the Parthian empire. But the parts this side the river are held by the Romans and the chieftains of the Arabs as far as Babylonia, some of these chieftains preferring to give ear to the

1 Holy City.
Ρωμαίοις προσέχοντες, οίς περ καὶ πλησιόχωροι εἰςιν· ʰήττον μὲν Σκηνίται οἱ νομάδες οἱ τῷ ποταμῷ πλησίον, μᾶλλον δ᾽ οί ἀπωθεν καὶ πρὸς τῇ εὔδαιμον Ἀραβία. οἱ δὲ Παρθιαίοι καὶ πρὸτερον μὲν ἐφροντίζον τῆς πρὸς Ἱρακλὶον γιγάντω· καὶ αὐτοὶ ἠρξαντες τῆς μάχης τῶν ἱσων ἐτυχον, ἦνικα ἐπεμψαν ἐπὶ τὴν Ἁσίαν Πάκορον. Ἀντώνιος δὲ, συμβούλῳ τῷ Ἀρμενίῳ χρώμενος, προοδόθη καὶ κακως ἐπολέμησεν· ὁ δ᾽ ἐκείνον διαδεξάμενος Φραάτης, τοσοῦτον ἐσποῦδας πεπιταμενος· καὶ ἡμείς τῷ ἐπὶ τὴν σύνεται τοῖς Συρίασ, τέτταρας παῖδας γνησίους ἐνεχειρίσεν ὄμηρα αὐτῷ, Σερασπαδάνην2 καὶ Ἡρωδάσπην3 καὶ Φραάτην4 καὶ Βούνωνην, καὶ γυναικας τοῦτον δυο καὶ νείς τέτταρας, δεδίως τὰς στάσεις καὶ τοὺς ἐπιτιθεμένους αὐτῷ· ἵδει γὰρ μηδένα ἵσχυσοντα C 749 καθ᾽ ἑαυτόν, ἀν μὴ τινα ὑπολάβῃ5 τοῦ Ἀρσακίου γένους διὰ τοῦ εἶναι σφόδρα φιλαρσάκας τούς Παρθιαίους· ἐκποδῶν οὖν ἐποίησε τοὺς παῖδας,

1 Something like the words τῶν τοῦ Ὠράδου παῖδα appears to have fallen out after Πάκορον.
2 Σερασπαδάνη, Tzschucke, for Σατραπάδην D, Σαρασπάδην other MSS.
3 Ἡρωδάσπην, Tzschucke, for Κεροσπάδην D, Κεροσπάδην other MSS.
4 Φραάτην καὶ Ἡρωδάσπην other MSS.
5 ὑπολάβη, all MSS. except μος, which read προσλάβη, Jones restores to the text. Corais reads προσλάβη; Meineke following Kramer, ἐπιλάβη; and Casaubon conj. ὑποβάλη.

236
GEOGRAPHY, i6. r. 28

Parthians and others to the Romans, to whom they are neighbours; less so the nomad Scenitae who are near the river, but more so those that are far away and near Arabia Felix. The Parthians were also in former times eager for friendship with the Romans, but they defended themselves against Crassus, who began war with them; and then, having begun the battle themselves, met with equal reverses when they sent Pacorus against Asia. But Antony, using the Armenian as counsellor, was betrayed and fared badly in his war. Phraates, his successor, was so eager for friendship with Caesar Augustus that he even sent him the trophies which the Parthians had set up as memorials of their defeat of the Romans. And, having called Titius to a conference, who was at that time praefect of Syria, he put in his hands as hostages four of his legitimate sons, Seraspadanes and Rhodaspes and Phraates and Bonones, and two wives and four sons of these, for fear of seditions and attempts upon his life; for he knew that no person could prevail against him unless that person supported some member of the house of Arsaces, because of the fact that the Parthians were extremely fond of the house. Accordingly, he got rid of his children,

1 i.e. less inclined to give ear to the Romans.  
2 54 B.C.  
3 Pacorus (son of King Orodes) and Labienus overran Syria and part of Asia Minor, but were defeated (39 B.C.) by Ventidius, a legate of Antony. Pacorus again invaded Syria (38 B.C.), but was again defeated and fell in battle (see 16. 2. 8).  
4 Artavasdes, king of the Armenians (see 11. 13. 4).  
5 Phraates IV, who succeeded his father Orodes as king and commenced his reign by murdering his father, his thirty brothers, and his own son.  
6 Cf. 6. 4. 2.
ἀφελέσθαι ξητῶν τὴν ἐλπίδα ταύτην τοὺς κακουργοῦντας. τῶν μὲν οὖν παιδῶν ὁσοὶ περίεισιν ἐν Ῥώμῃ δημοσία βασιλικῶς τημελοῦνται· καὶ οἱ λοιποὶ δὲ βασιλεῖς προσβευόμενοι καὶ εἰς συλλόγους ἀφικνούμενοι διατετελέσκασιν.

II

1. Ἡ δὲ Συρία πρὸς ἄρκτον μὲν ἀφώρισται τῇ Κιλικίᾳ καὶ τῷ Ἀμανῷ· ἀπὸ θαλάττης δὲ ἐπὶ τὸ ξεύγμα τοῦ Ἐβράτου στάδιοι εἶσιν (ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἰσσικοῦ κόλπου μέχρι τοῦ ξεύγματος τοῦ κατὰ Κομμαγηνῆν) ὁι τὸ λεχθὲν πλευρὸν ἀφορίζοντες οὐκ ἐλάττουσι τῶν χιλίων καὶ τετρακοσίων· πρὸς εἶν τῷ Ἐβράτῃ καὶ τοῖς ἐντὸς τοῦ Ἐβράτου Σκηνίταις Ἀραβίᾳ πρὸς δὲ νότον τῇ εὐδαίμονι Ἀραβίᾳ καὶ τῇ Ἀιγύπτῳ· πρὸς δὲ γύρων τῷ Αἰγυπτίῳ τε καὶ Συριακῷ πελάγει μέχρι Ἰσσοῦ.

2. Μέρη δὲ αὐτῆς τίθεμεν ἀπὸ τῆς Κιλικίας ἀρξάμενοι καὶ τοῦ Ἀμανοῦ τῆς τοῦ Κομμαγηνῆν καὶ τῆς Σελευκίδας καλουμένης τῆς Συρίας, ἔπειτα τῆς Κοιλήθρα Συρίαν, τελευταίαν δὲ ἐν μὲν τῇ παραλίᾳ τῆς Φωκίνην, ἐν δὲ τῇ μεσογαίᾳ τῆς Ἰουδαίαν. ἐνοι δὲ τῆς Συρίαν ὅλην εἰς τὸ Κοιλοσύρους καὶ Σύρους καὶ Φοίνικας διελόγισεν τούτως ἀναμεμιχθαὶ φασὶ τέταρτα ἔθνη, Ἰουδαίους, Ἰδουμαίους, Γαζαίους, Ἀζωτίους, γεωργικοὺς μὲν, ὡς τοὺς Σύρους καὶ Κοιλοσύρους, ἐμπορικοὺς δὲ, ὡς τοὺς Φοίνικας.

3. Καθόλου μὲν οὖτω, καθ' ἐκαστα δὲ ἡ Κομ-

1 The words in parenthesis are suspected by Kramer and ejected by Meineke.
seeking thus to deprive evil-doers of that hope. Now all his surviving children are cared for in royal style, at public expense, in Rome, and the remaining kings have also continued to send ambassadors and to go into conferences.

II

1. Syria is bounded on the north by Cilicia and Mt. Amanus; and the distance from the sea to the bridge of the Euphrates (from the Gulf of Issus to the bridge at Commagenê), which forms the boundary of that side, is not less than fourteen hundred stadia. It is bounded on the east by the Euphrates and by the Arabian Scenitae this side the Euphrates; and on the south by Arabia Felix and Aegypt; and on the west by the Aegyptian and Syrian Seas as far as Issus.

2. We set down as parts of Syria, beginning at Cilicia and Mt. Amanus, both Commagenê and the Seleucis of Syria, as the latter is called; and then Coelê-Syria, and last, on the seaboard, Phoenicia, and, in the interior, Judaea. Some writers divide Syria as a whole into Coelo-Syrians and Syrians and Phoenicians, and say that four other tribes are mixed up with these, namely, Judaeans, Idumaeans, Gazaeans, and Azotians, and that they are partly farmers, as the Syrians and Coelo-Syrians, and partly merchants, as the Phoenicians.

3. So much for Syria in general. But in detail:

\[1 \text{ i.e. his successors.} \quad 2 \text{ i.e. with Roman praefects.}\]

\[2 \text{ χιλιων καλ, Tzschucke inserts, citing Pliny 5. 12. 13; so the later editors.} \quad 3 \text{ καλ Ζυρων, omitted by all MSS. except D.} \]
μαγηνή μικρά τίς ἐστιν. ἔχει δ' ἐρυμνήν πόλιν Σαμόσατα, ἐν ἢ τὸ βασιλείον ὑπήρχε· νῦν δ' ἐπαρχία γέγονε. χώρα δε' περίκειται σφόδρα εὐδαίμων, ὀλίγη δε'. ἑνταύθα δε' νῦν ἔστι τὸ ξεύγμα τοῦ Εὐφράτου· κατὰ τοῦτο δε' Σελέύκεια ἱδρυται, φρούριον τῆς Μεσοποταμίας, προσωρι-μένον ὑπὸ Πομπηίου τῇ Κομμαγηνῇ.1 ἐν ᾧ τῇ Σελήνῃ ἐπικληθεῖσαν Κλεοπάτραν Τεγράνης ἀνείλε, καθείρξας χρόνων τινά, ἤνικα τῆς Συρίας ἐξέπεσεν.

4. Ἡ δὲ Σελευκίς ἀρίστη μὲν ἐστὶ τῶν λεχθε-σῶν μερίδων, καλεῖται δὲ Τετράπολις καὶ ἐστὶ κατὰ τὰς ἐξεχούσας ἐν αὐτῇ πόλεις, ἐπιλείψως γε' εἰσι: μέγισται δὲ τέταρτας, Ἀντιόχεια ἢ ἐπὶ Δάφνη καὶ Σελεύκεια ἢ ἐν Πιερία καὶ Ἀπάμεια δὲ καὶ Λαοδίκεια, αὕτερ καὶ ἐλέγοντο ἄλληλων ἀδελφαί διὰ τὴν ὁμόνοιαν, Σελεύκου τοῦ Νικά-τορος κτίσματα· ἢ μὲν οὖν μεγίστη τοῦ πατρὸς αὐτοῦ ἐπώνυμος, ἢ δ' ἐρυμνοτάτη αὐτοῦ· αἱ δ' C 750 ἀλλαί, ἡ μὲν Ἀπάμεια τῆς γυναικὸς αὐτοῦ Ἀπάμας, ἡ δὲ Λαοδίκεια τῆς μητρός. ὀικεῖος δὲ τῇ τετραπόλει καὶ εἰς σατραπεῖας διήρητο2 τέταρτας ἡ Σελευκίς, ὡς φησὶ Ποσειδώνιος, εἰς ὅσας καὶ ἡ Κοίλη Συρία, εἰς μίαν δ' ἡ Μεσοπο-ταμία.3 ἐστὶ δ' ἡ μὲν Ἀντιόχεια καὶ αὐτὴ 4

1 τῇ Κομμαγηνῇ μοι, for τῷ Κομμαγηνῷ other MSS.; so Tschucke, Corais, and Meineke.

2 διήρητο, first hand in D, for διήρητο; so the editors.

3 The editors suspect this clause. Groskurd conj. that Strabo wrote either εἰς μίαν δ' ἡ Κομμαγηνή καθάπερ καὶ ἡ Μεσοποταμία or εἰς μίαν δ' ἡ Κομμαγηνή καὶ δύοίς ἡ Παρα-ποταμία. Perhaps, too, some verb like ἐτέστακτο has fallen out after Μεσοποταμία.

4 αὐτῆ, Jones, for αὐτή.

240
Commagenê is rather a small country; and it has a city fortified by nature, Samosata, where the royal residence used to be; but it has now become a province; and the city is surrounded by an exceedingly fertile, though small, territory. Here is now the bridge of the Euphrates; and near the bridge is situated Seleucia, a fortress of Mesopotamia, which was included within the boundaries of Commagenê by Pompey; and it was here that Tigranes slew Selenê, surnamed Cleopatra, after imprisoning her for a time, when she had been banished from Syria.

4. Seleucis is not only the best of the above-mentioned portions of Syria, but also is called, and is, a Tetrapolis, owing to the outstanding cities in it, for it has several. But the largest are four: Antiocheia near Daphnê, Seleucia in Pieria, and also Apameia and Laodiceia; and these cities, all founded by Seleucus Nicator, used to be called sisters, because of their concord with one another. Now the largest of these cities was named after his father and the one most strongly fortified by nature after himself, and one of the other two, Apameia, after his wife Apama, and the other, Laodiceia, after his mother. Appropriately to the Tetrapolis, Seleucis was also divided into four satrapies, as Poseidonius says, the same number into which Coelê-Syria was divided, though Mesopotamia formed only one satrapy. Antiocheia is likewise

1 *i.e.* a Roman province.
2 Antiocheia.
3 The text seems to be corrupt. Groskurd conjectures that Strabo wrote either "Commagenê, like Mesopotamia, formed one satrapy," or "Commagenê, and likewise Parapotamia, formed one satrapy" (see critical note).
tetrápolis, èk tettárrwn syνeṣtòssa mèròu te-
teίχισται δὲ καὶ κοινῷ τείχει καὶ ἰδίῳ καθ' ἐκαστὸν τὸ κτίσμα. τὸ μὲν οὖν πρῶτον αὐτῶν ὁ Νικάτωρ συνῆφισε, μεταγαγών ἐκ τῆς 'Ἀντιγονίας τοὺς οἰκήτορας, ἥν πλησίον ἐτείχισεν 'Ἀντίγονος ὁ Φιλίππου μικρών πρότερον, τὸ δὲ δεύτερον τοῦ πλήθους τῶν οἰκήτωρών ἐστὶ κτίσμα, τὸ δὲ τρίτον Σελεύκου τοῦ Καλλινίκου, τὸ δὲ τέταρτον 'Ἀντίοχου τοῦ Ἐπιφανοῦς.

5. Καὶ δὴ καὶ μητρόπολις ἐστὶν αὐτὴ τῆς Συρίας, καὶ τὸ βασίλειον ἐνταῦθα ἱδρυτο τοῖς ἄρχουσι τῆς χώρας· οὐ πολὺ τε λείπεται καὶ δυνάμει καὶ μεγέθει Σελευκείας τῆς ἐπὶ τῷ Τίγρει καὶ 'Αλεξάνδρειας τῆς πρὸς Λυγύπτω. συνῆφισε δ' ὁ Νικάτωρ ἐνταῦθα καὶ τοὺς ἀπογόνους ὁ Τριπτολέμου, περὶ οὐ μικρῷ 2 πρόσθεν ἐμνήσθη-μεν. διότερ 'Ἀντιοχεῖς ὡς ἥρωα τιμῶσι καὶ ἀγονίζονται ἐν τῷ Κασίῳ ὅρει τῷ περὶ Σελεύκειαν. φασὶ δ' αὐτὸν ὑπ' Ἀργείων πεμφθέντα ἐπὶ τὴν Ἰους ξήτησιν, ἐν Τύρῳ πρῶτον ἄφανος γενηθείσης, πλανᾶσθαι κατὰ τὴν Κιλικίαν ἐνταῦθα δὲ τῶν σὺν αὐτῷ τινας 'Ἀργείων κτίσαι τὴν Ταρσὸν ἀπελθόντας παρ' αὐτῶν τοὺς δ' ἄλλους συνακολουθήσαντας εἰς τὴν ἦξις παραλίαν, ἀπογνόντας τῆς ξητήσεως, ἐν τῇ ποταμίᾳ τοῦ Ὀρῶντο καταμεῖναι σὺν αὐτῶ· τῶν μὲν οὖν νῦν τῶν Τριπτολέμου Γόρδουν, ἔχοντά τινας τῶν σὺν τῷ πατρὶ λαῶν, εἰς τὴν Γορδυνίαν ἀποικίσαν· τῶν δ' ἄλλων τοὺς ἀπογόνους συνοίκους γενέσθαι τοῖς 'Ἀντιοχείσιν.

1 ἀπογόνους Εἰ, ἀπογόνοις ὁ, ἀπὸ γένους other MSS.

242
a Tetrapolis, since it consists of four parts; and each of the four settlements is fortified both by a common wall and by a wall of its own. Now Nicator founded the first of the settlements, transferring thither the settlers from Antigonia, which had been built near it a short time before by Antigonus; the second was founded by the multitude of settlers; the third by Seleucus Callinicus; and the fourth by Antiochus Epiphanes.

5. Furthermore, Antiocheia is the metropolis of Syria; and here was established the royal residence for the rulers of the country. And it does not fall much short, either in power or in size, of Seleucia on the Tigris or Alexandria in Aegypt. Nicator also settled here the descendants of Triptolemus, whom I mentioned a little before. And it is on this account that the Antiocheians worship him as a hero and celebrate a festival in his honour on Mt. Casius in the neighbourhood of Seleuceia. It is said that he was sent by the Argives in search of Io, who disappeared first in Tyre, and that he wandered through Cilicia; and that there some of his Argive companions left him and founded Tarsus, but the others accompanied him into the next stretch of seashore, gave up the search in despair, and remained with him in the river-country of the Orontes; and that Gordys, the son of Triptolemus, along with some of the peoples who had accompanied his father, emigrated to Gordyaea, whereas the descendants of the rest became fellow-inhabitants with the Antiocheians.

1 16. 1. 25.

2 μικρόν F; so Meineke.
6. 'Τπέρκειται δὲ τετταράκοντα στάδιοι ἡ Δάφνη, κατοικία μεγά δὲ καὶ συνηρεφές ἀλςος, διαρρεόμενοι πηγαίοις ὕδασιν, ἐν μέσῳ δὲ ἀσυλον τέμενος καὶ νεῶς 'Απόλλωνος καὶ 'Αρτέμιδος. ἐνταῦθα δὲ πανηγυρίζειν ἔθος τοῖς 'Αντιοχεύσι καὶ τοῖς ἀστυνυμείτοσι: κύκλος δὲ τοῦ ἀλσους ογδοήκοντα στάδιοι.

7. 'Ρεῖ δὲ τῆς πόλεως πλησίον Ὀρόντης ποταμός οὗτος δ' ἐκ τῆς Κοίλης Συρίας τὰς ἀρχὰς ἔχων, εἰδ' ὑπὸ γῆν ἐνεχθεῖς, ἀναδίδωσι πάλιν τὸ ρέμμα, καὶ διὰ τῆς Ἀπαμέων εἰς τὴν Ἀντιοχείαν προελθὼν, πλησιάσας τῇ πόλει πρὸς τὴν θάλατ- ταν καταφέρεται τὴν κατὰ Σελεύκειαν τὸ δ' ὄνομα τοῦ γεφυρώσαντος αὐτοῦ Ὀρόντου μετέ- λαβε, καλούμενος πρότερον Τυφών. μυθεύονσι δ' ἐνταῦθα ποι̉ τὰ περὶ τὴν κεραύνωσιν τοῦ Τυφώνος καὶ τοὺς Ἀρίμους, περὶ ὃν εἰπομεν καὶ πρότερον φασί δὲ τυπτόμενον τοῖς κεραυνοῖς (εἶναι δὲ δράκοντα) φεύγειν κατάδυσιν ξητοῦντα- τοῖς μὲν οὖν ὅλκοις ἐντεμεῖν τὴν γῆν καὶ ποιήσαι τὸ ρεῖθρον τοῦ ποταμοῦ, καταδύντα δ' εἰς γῆν ἀναρρήξαι τὴν πηγήν' ἐκ δὲ τούτον γενέσθαι τούνομα τῷ ποταμῷ. πρὸς δύσιν μὲν οὖν θάλαττα ὑπόκειται τῇ Ἀντιοχείᾳ κατὰ Σελεύ- κείαν, πρὸς ἦ καὶ τὰς ἐκβολὰς ὁ Ὀρόντης ποιεῖται, διεχούση τῶν μὲν ἐκβολῶν στάδιον τετταράκοντα, τῆς δ' Ἀντιοχείας ἐκατὸν εἴκοσιν. ἀνάπλους δ' ἐκ θαλάτης ἐστὶν εἰς τὴν Ἀντιο- χείαν αὐθημερὸν. πρὸς ἦ ὡ δ' ὁ Εὐφράτης ἐστὶ καὶ ἡ Βαμβύκη καὶ ἡ Βέροια καὶ ἡ Ἡράκλεια

---

1 12. 8. 19, 13. 4. 6.
6. Lying above Antiocheia, at a distance of forty stadia, is Daphnê, a settlement of moderate size; and also a large, thickly-shaded grove intersected by fountain-streams, in the midst of which there is an asylum-precinct and a temple of Apollo and Artemis. Here it is the custom for the Antiocheians and the neighbouring peoples to hold a general festival. The grove is eighty stadia in circuit.

7. The Orontes River flows near the city. This river has its sources in Coelê-Syria; and then, after flowing underground, issues forth again; and then, proceeding through the territory of the Apameians into that of Antiocheia, closely approaches the latter city and flows down to the sea near Seleuceia. Though formerly called Typhon, its name was changed to that of Orontes, the man who built a bridge across it. Here, somewhere, is the setting of the mythical story of Typhon's stroke by lightning and of the mythical story of the Arimi, of whom I have already spoken. They say that Typhon (who, they add, was a dragon), when struck by the bolts of lightning, fled in search of a descent underground; that he not only cut the earth with furrows and formed the bed of the river, but also descended underground and caused the fountain to break forth to the surface; and that the river got its name from this fact. Now on the west, below Antiocheia and Seleuceia, lies the sea; and it is near Seleuceia that the Orontes forms its outlets, this city being forty stadia distant from the outlets, and one hundred and twenty from Antiocheia. Inland voyages from the sea to Antiocheia are made on the same day one starts. To the east of Antiocheia are the Euphrates, as also Bambycê and Beroea and Hera-
8. Εἶτα ἡ Κυρρηστικὴ μέχρι τῆς Ἀντιοχίδος· ὑπὸ δὲ τῶν ἄρκτων ἐστὶ τὸ τὸ Ἀμανὸν πλησίον καὶ ἡ Κομμαγηνή· συνάπτει δὲ τούτοις ἡ Κυρρηστικὴ μέχρι δεύτερο παρατείνουσα. Εὐταὐθα δὲ ἐστὶ πόλεως Γίνδαρος, ἀκρότολις τῆς Κυρρηστικῆς καὶ ληστήριον εὐφυές, καὶ Ἡράκλειον τι καλοῦμενον πλησίον. Πάρθιον δὲ Γίνδάρφῳ συνάπτουσιν αἱ Πάγραι τῆς Ἀντιοχίδος, χωρίων ἐρημικῶν κατὰ τὴν ὑπέρθεσιν τοῦ Ἀμανοῦ τὴν ἐκ τῶν Ἀμανίδων πυλῶν εἰς τὴν Συρίαν κείμενον. ὑποστάθηκε μὲν οὖν ταῖς Πάγραις τὸ τῶν Ἀντιοχέων πεδίων, δι’ οὐ λέγεται ὁ Ἀρκευθὸς ποταμὸς καὶ ὁ Ὀρόντης καὶ ὁ Λαβώτας. ἐν δὲ τούτῳ ἐστὶ τῷ πεδίῳ καὶ ὁ Μελεάγρου χάραξι καὶ ὁ Οὐνοπάρας ποταμός· ἐφ’ οὗ τὸν Βάλαν Ἀλέξανδρον μάχη νικήσας ὁ Φιλομήτωρ Πτολεμαῖος ἐτελεύτησεν ἐκ τραύματος. ὑπέρκειται δ’ αὐτῶν λόφος Τραπεζῶν ἀπὸ τῆς ὁμοιότητος καλοῦμενος, ἐφ’ ὁ Οὐντίδιος πρὸς Φρανίκατην, τὸν Παρθιανὸν

1 Κυρρηστικὸς, Ἐξαλανέρ, γιὰ τὸ Καριστίδος ὑπ’ ἔκτος Κυρρηστίδος ὀπίσθεν τῶν Μηναίων.  
2 Κυρρηστική, Ἐξαλανέρ, γιὰ τὸ Κυρρηστικὴ; καὶ οὕτως ὀπίσθεν τῶν Μηναίων.  
3 Θὰ διάβαζεν τὸν Παρθιανὸν εἰς τὸν Καριστίδος ὑπ’ ἔκτος Κυρρηστίδος ὀπίσθεν τῶν Μηναίων.  
4 Γίνδάρφῳ, τοὺς ἐπιδιόρθωτος, γιὰ τὸν δάρον Α, τόθεν ὀπίσθεν τῶν Μηναίων.  
5 Ε’ ἔγραψεν καὶ οὕτως ὀπίσθεν τῶν Μηναίων.  
6 Πρὸς Ἐραδίκατην, τὸν Παρθιανὸν.
GEOGRAPHY, 16. 2. 7-8

cleia, small towns once ruled by the tyrant Dionysius, the son of Heracleon. Heracleia is twenty stadia distant from the temple of Athena Cyrrhestis.

8. Then one comes to Cyrrhesticê, which extends as far as the territory of Antiocheia. On the north, near it, lie both Mt. Amanus and Commagenê. Cyrrhesticê borders on these, extending as far as that. Here is Gindarus, a city, which is the acropolis of Cyrrhesticê and a natural stronghold for robbers; and near it is a place called Heracleium.¹ It was in the neighbourhood of these places that Pacorus, the eldest of the sons of the Parthian king, was killed by Ventidius, when he made an expedition against Syria.² On the borders of Gindarus lies Pagrae, which is in the territory of Antiocheia and is a natural stronghold situated near the top of the pass over Mt. Amanus, which leads from the Gates of Amanus into Syria. Now below Pagrae lies the plain of the Antiocheians, through which flow the Arceuthus and Orontes and Labotas Rivers; and in this plain is the palisade of Meleagrus, as also the Oenoparas River, on the banks of which Ptolemy Philometor conquered Alexander Balas but died from a wound.³ Above these places lies a hill which, from its similarity,⁴ is called Trapezon, whereon Ventidius had the fight with Phranicates,⁵

¹ "Heracleium" implies a temple of Heracles.
² See 16. 1. 28.
³ In 146 B.C. He fell from his horse.
⁴ i.e. from its table-like shape.
⁵ The correct spelling is probably "Pharnapates," as in Dio Cassius (48. 41) and Plutarch (Antony 33).

⁶ Φρανακάτην, emended to Φαρναπάτης by Tzschucke and Corais.
στρατηγών, ἐσχε τὸν ἀγώνα. πρὸς θαλάττῃ δὲ τούτων ἐστὶν ἡ Σελεύκεια καὶ ἡ Πιερία, ὅρος συνεχές τῷ 'Αμαντῷ, καὶ ἡ 'Ρωσός, μεταξὺ 'Ἰσσοῦ καὶ Σελευκείας ἱδρυμένη. ἐκαλεῖτο δ’ ἡ Σελεύκεια πρότερον ‘Ἰδατος Ποταμοῦ ἐρυμα δὲ ἐστὶν ἄξιόλογον καὶ κρείττων1 βίας ἡ πόλις. διόπερ καὶ ἐλευθέραν αὐτὴν ἔκρινε Πομπήιος, ἀποκλείσας Τιγράνην. πρὸς νότου δ’ ἐστὶ τοῖς μὲν Ἀντιοχείσιν Ἀπάμεια, ἐν μεσογαίᾳ κειμένη, τοῖς δὲ Σελευκεύσι τὸ Κάσιον ὅρος καὶ τὸ Ἀντικάσιον. ἐτί δὲ πρότερον μετὰ τὴν Σελεύκειαν αἱ ἐκβολαι τοῦ Ὀρόντου εἶτα τὸ Νυμφαίον, σπήλαιον τι ἱερόν εἶτα τὸ Κάσιον. ἐφεξῆς δὲ Ποσείδιον πολίχνη καὶ Ἰράκλεια.

9. Εἶτα Λαοδίκεια, ἐπὶ τῇ θαλάττῃ κάλλιστα ἐκτισμένη καὶ εὐλίμενος πόλις, χῶραν2 τε ἔχουσα C 752 πολύνοιν πρὸς τῇ ἄλλῃ εὐκαρπίᾳ τοῖς μεν οὖν Ἀλεξανδρεύσιν αὐτὴ παρέχει τὸ πλείστον τοῦ οἴνου, τὸ ὑπερκείμενον τῆς πόλεως ὅρος πάν κατάμπελον ἔχουσα μέχρι σχεδὸν τι τῶν κορυφῶν· αἱ δὲ κορυφαὶ τῆς μὲν Λαοδίκειας πολὺ ἀπωθέν εἰσι, ἢρέμα ἀπ’ αὐτῆς καὶ κατ’ ὁλίγον ἀνακλινόμεναι τῆς Ἀπάμειας δ’ ὑπερκύπτουσιν ἐπ’ ὀρθίον υψὸς ἀνατεταμέναι. ἐλύπησε δ’ οὐ μετρίως Δολυβέλλας καταφυγῶν εἰς αὐτὴν καὶ ἐμπολιορκηθεῖς ὑπὸ Κασιών μέχρι θανάτου, συνδιαφθείρας ἐαυτοῦ καὶ τῆς πόλεως πολλὰ μέρη.

1 κρείττων CDhmoxz, κρείττων other MSS.
2 χῶραν, Corais, for χῶρον.
the Parthian general. Near the sea in this region lie Seleucia, and Pieria, a mountain continuous with Mt. Amanus, and Rhosus, which is situated between Issus and Seleucia. Seleucia was in earlier times called Hydatos-Potamoi. The city is a notable fortress and is too strong to be taken by force; and for this reason Pompey, after shutting Tigranes off from it, adjudged it a free city. To the south of the Antiocheians is Apameia, which is situated in the interior; and to the south of the Seleuceians are Mts. Casius and Anticasius; and still further after Seleucia one comes to the outlets of the Orontes; and then to the Nymphaeum, a kind of sacred cave; and then to Casium; and next to Poseidium, a small town, and to Heracleia.

9. Then one comes to Laodiceia, situated on the sea. It is a city most beautifully built, has a good harbour, and has territory which, besides its other good crops, abounds in wine. Now this city furnishes the most of the wine to the Alexandreians, since the whole of the mountain that lies above the city and is possessed by it is covered with vines almost as far as the summits. And while the summits are at a considerable distance from Laodiceia, sloping up gently and gradually from it, they tower above Apameia, extending up to a perpendicular height. Laodiceia was afflicted in no moderate degree by Dolabella, when he fled to it for refuge, was besieged in it by Cassius till death, and destroyed, along with himself, many parts of the city.2

2 Tigranes had tried for fourteen years (84–70 B.C.) to capture the city.
3 To avoid being captured by Cassius, Dolabella ordered one of his soldiers to kill him (43 B.C.).
10. 'H δ' Ἄπαμεια καὶ πόλις 1 ἔχει τὸ πλέον ἐνεργή: λόφος γάρ ἐστίν ἐν πεδίῳ κάλω τετειχισμένος καλῶς, ὃν ποιεῖ χερσονησίζουτα ὁ Ὄροντης καὶ λίμνη περικειμένη μεγάλη καὶ εἰς ἐλή πλατέα λειμώνες τε βουβότους καὶ ἰπποβότους διαχεομένη 2 ὑπερβάλλοντας τὸ μέγεθος· ἢ τε ἡ πόλις οὕτως ἀσφαλῶς κεῖται, καὶ ἡ καὶ Χερρόνησος ἐκλήθη διὰ τὸ συμβεβηκός, καὶ χώρας εὐπορεῖ παμπόλλης εὐδαιμόνως, δι' ἧς ὁ Ὄροντης ἰεῖ καὶ περιπόλια 3 συγνὰ ἐν ταύτῃ. ἐνταῦθα δὲ καὶ ὁ Νικάτωρ Σέλευκος τοὺς πεντακοσίους ἑλέφαντας ἐτρεφε καὶ τὸ πλέον τῆς στρατιᾶς, καὶ οἱ ύστεροι βασιλεῖς. ἐκαλεῖτο δὲ καὶ Πέλλα ποτὲ ὑπὸ τῶν πρώτων Μακεδόνων διὰ τὸ τοὺς πλείους τῶν Μακεδόνων ἐνταῦθα οἰκήσαι τῶν στρατευμένων, τὴν δὲ Πέλλαν ὁσπέρ μητρόπολιν γεγονέναι τῶν Μακεδόνων, τὴν Φιλίππου καὶ Ἀλεξάνδρου πατρίδα. ἐνταῦθα δὲ καὶ τὸ λογιστήριον τὸ στρατωτικὸν καὶ τὸ ἰπποτρόφιον· θῆλειαι μὲν ἰπποι βασιλικαὶ πλείους τῶν τρισμυρίων, ὅχεια δὲ τούτων τριακόσια· ἐνταῦθα δὲ καὶ πωλοδάμαι καὶ ὀπλομάχου καὶ ὅσοι παίδευται τῶν πολεμικῶν ἐμισθοδοτοῦντο. δηλοὶ δὲ τὴν δύναμιν ταύτην ἢ τε τοῦ Τρύφωνος ἔπικληθέντος Διοδότου παραύξησις καὶ ἐπίθεσις τῇ βασιλείᾳ τῶν Σύρων, ἐντεύθεν ὀρμη- 

1 Corais emends πόλιν to ἀκρόπολιν.

2 The MSS. read λίμνῃ ... καὶ ἐλη ... διαχεομένου. Corais alters as above. Leetrone conj. εἰς λίμνῃ; Kramer κατὰ λίμνῃν. B. Niese (Emend. Str. 14) would parenthesise λόφος ... Ὅροντης and emend λίμνη περικειμένη to λίμνην παρακειμένην: and so A. Vogel (Philologus 41, p. 32).

250
10. Apameia also has a city that is in general well fortified; for it is a beautifully fortified hill in a hollow plain, and this hill is formed into a peninsula by the Orontes and by a large lake which lies near by and spreads into broad marshes and exceedingly large cattle-pasturing and horse-pasturing meadows. So the city is thus securely situated; and so, too, it was called Cherronesus, because of the fact in the case; and it is well supplied with a very large and fertile territory, through which the Orontes flows; and in this territory there are numerous dependent towns. Here, too, Seleucus Nicator kept the five hundred elephants and the greater part of the army, as did also the later kings. It was also called Pella at one time, by the first Macedonians, because the majority of the Macedonians who made the expedition took up their abode there, and because Pella, the native city of Philip and Alexander, had become, as it were, the metropolis of the Macedonians. Here, too, were the war-office and the royal stud. The royal stud consisted of more than thirty thousand mares and three hundred stallions. Here, too, were colt-breakers and instructors in heavy-armed warfare, and all instructors who were paid to teach the arts of war. The power of this city is clearly shown by the ascendancy of Tryphon, surnamed Diodotus, and by his attack upon the kingdom of the Syrians, when he made this city the base of his operations.

1 For "city" Groskurd conjectures "acropolis."
2 The text is corrupt (see critical note).
3 Peninsula.
4 Usurper of the throne of Syria, reigning 142-139 B.C.
θέντος. ἐγεγένητο μὲν γὰρ ἐν Κασιανοῖς,1
φρουρίῳ τινὶ τῆς Ἀπαμέων γῆς, τραφείς δ᾽ ἐν τῇ
Ἀπαμείᾳ καὶ συσταθεὶς τῷ βασιλεί καὶ τοῦ peri
αὐτοῦ, ἐπειδὴ νεωτέρις ἤρμησεν, ἐκ τῆς πόλεως
ταῦτα ἔσχε τὰς ἀφορμὰς καὶ τῶν περιοικίδων,
Δαρίσθος ὑπερ τῶν Κασιανῶν2 καὶ Μεγάρων καὶ
Ἀπολλωνίας καὶ ἄλλων τοιούτων, οἱ συνετέλουν
εἰς τὴν Ἀπάμειαν ἀπασάρει ἐκεῖνόις τε δὴ βασιλεὺς
τήσε κῆ χώρας ἀνεδείχθη καὶ ἀντέσχε πολλῶν
χρόνων. Βάσσος τε Κεκίλιος μετὰ δυνῶν ταγμάτων
ἀποστήσας τὴν Ἀπάμειαν διεκαρτήσησε τοσοῦτον
χρόνον πολιορκοῦμενος ὑπὸ δυνῶν στρατοπέδων
μεγάλων Ἡρωμαϊκῶν, ὡστ' οὐ πρότερον εἰς τὴν
C 753 ἐξοσίαν ἤκε, πρὶν ἐκών ἐνεχείρισεν ἀνατον, ἐφ'
οἰς ἐβεβούλητο καὶ γὰρ τὴν στρατιὰν ἀπέτρεφεν
ἡ χώρα καὶ συμμάχων εὐπόρει3 τῶν πλησίων
φυλάρχων, ἐχοῦτων εὐερκή χωρία. ὅν ἔστι καὶ ἡ
Λυσίας, ὑπὲρ τῆς λίμνης κειμένη τῆς πρὸς Ἀπα-
μείᾳ, καὶ Ἀρέθουσα ἡ Σαμψικεράμου καὶ Ἰαμβλί-
χου, τοῦ ἐκείνου παιδὸς, φυλάρχων τοῦ Ἐμισηνῶν
ἐθνοὺς, οὐ πόρρῳ δ’ οὐδ’ Ἑλιούπολις καὶ Χαλκίς
ἡ ὑπὸ Πτολεμαίῳ τῷ Μενναίῳ, τῷ τῶν Μασσαίν4
κατέχοντι καὶ τὴν Ἰτούραιὼ ὀρεινή. τῶν δὲ
συμμαχοῦντων τῷ Βάσσῳ ἤ καὶ Ἀλχαίδαμων,5
ὁ τῶν Ῥαμβαίων βασιλεὺς τῶν ἐντός τοῦ
Εὐφράτου νομάδων ἦν δὲ ϕίλος Ἡρωμαϊῶν,
adikeištai δὲ νομίσας ὑπὸ τῶν ἡγεμόνων, ἐκπεσὼν

1 Κασιανῶι, Groskurd, for Κασιανοῖς.
2 Κασιανῶι στρ., Κασιανῶι other MSS.
3 ἔπορει Cmoxz.
4 Μασσαίν Δι, Μασσαίν τά, Μασσαίν moxz (Polybius 5. 45. 61)
and editors before Kramer.
252
For he was born at Casiana, a fortress of the Apameian country, and, having been reared at Apameia and closely associated with the king and the king's court, when he set out to effect a revolution, he got his resources from this city and also from its dependencies, I mean Larisa and Casiana and Megara and Apollonia and other places like them, all of which were tributary to Apameia. So Tryphon was proclaimed king of this country and held out for a long time. Cecilius ¹ Bassus, with two cohorts, caused Apameia to revolt and, though besieged by two large Roman armies, strongly resisted them for so long a time that he did not come under their power until he voluntarily put himself in their hands upon his own terms; for the country supplied his army with provisions, and he had plenty of allies, I mean the neighbouring chieftains, who possessed strongholds; and among these places was Lysias, which is situated above the lake that lies near Apameia, as also Arethusa, belonging to Sampsiceramus and his son Iamblichus, chieftains of the tribe of the Emeseni; and at no great distance, also, were Heliupolis and Chalcis, which latter was subject to Ptolemaeus the son of Mennaeus, who possessed Massyas and the mountainous country of the Ituraeans. Among the allies of Bassus was also Alchaedamnus, king of the Rhambaeans, who were nomads this side the Euphrates River; and he was a friend of the Romans, but upon the belief that he was being treated unjustly by the Roman governors

¹ Apparently an error for "Caecilius."

5 'Αλχαϊδάμνος Dmox 'Αλχανδάνιος Dio Cassius (47. 27).
eis tην Μεσοποταμίαν ἐμισθοφόρει τότε τῷ Βάσσῳ. ἐντείθεν δ' ἐστὶ Ποσειδώνος ὁ Στωικός, ἀνὴρ τῶν καθ' ἡμᾶς φιλοσόφων πολυμαθέστατος. 11. ὁμορος δ' ἐστὶ τῇ Απαμέων πρὸς ἐω μὲν ἡ τῶν φυλάρχων ἀράβων καλουμένη Παραπο- 

tamía καὶ η Χαλκιδική ἀπὸ τοῦ Μασούνου καθήκουσα καὶ πᾶσα ἡ πρὸς νότον τοῖς Ἀπαμεύ-

σίων, ἀνδρῶν Σκηνιτῶν τὸ πλέον παραπλήσιον δ' εἰσὶ τοῖς ἐν τῇ Μεσοποταμίᾳ νομάσιν ἀεὶ δ' ὁι πλησιαίτεροι τοῖς Σύροις ἡμερώτεροι καὶ ἢττον ἀραβέων καὶ Σκηνίται, ἡγεμονίας ἕχοντες συν-
tetagménavs μᾶλλον, καθάπερ ἡ Σαμψικεράμου ἀρέθουσα καὶ ἡ Γαμβάρου καὶ ἡ Θέμελλα καὶ ἄλλων τοιούτων. 12. Τουαύτη μὲν ἡ μεσόγαια τῆς Σελευκίδος, ὁ δὲ παράπλους ὁ λοιπός ἀπὸ τῆς Λαοδικείας ἐστὶ τοιούτος τῇ γαρ Λαοδικεία πλησιάζει πολίχνια, τὸ τε Ποσείδιον καὶ τὸ Ἡράκλειον καὶ τὰ Γάβαλα· εἴτ' ἡδὴ ἡ τῶν ἀράβων παραλία, Πάλτος καὶ Βαλανία καὶ Κάρνος, τὸ ἐπίνειον τῆς ἀράδου λιμένιον ἄνυμ' εἴτ' ἐνυδρα καὶ Μάραθος, πόλις Φοινίκων ἄρχαία κατεσπασμένη. τὴν δὲ χώραν ἀράδιοι κατεκληροῦχσαν καὶ τὰ Σίμυρα τὸ ἐφεξῆς χώριον τούτοις δ' ἡ Ὠρθωσία συνεχής ἐστὶ καὶ ὁ Ἑλεύθερος ὁ πλησίον ποταμός, ὁποῖο

1 Masolou F, Marilou i, Kossoun x, Marsou mōz. 2 Σαμψικεράμου CD. 3 καὶ ἦ, Casaubon, Corais, and Groskurd would delete, making "Themella" the abode of Gambarus. C. Müller conj. that Θέμελλα is an error for Θέλεδα, a place about 25 miles east of Arethusa.

1 See critical note.
he retired to Mesopotamia and then went into the service of Bassus as a mercenary. Poseidonius, the Stoic, the most learned of all philosophers of my time, was a native of Apameia.

11. Bordering on the country of the Apameians, on the east, is the Paropotamia, as it is called, of the Arabian chieftains, as also Chalcedice, which extends down from Massyas, and all the country to the south of the Apameians, which belongs for the most part to Scenitae. These Scenitae are similar to the nomads in Mesopotamia. And it is always the case that the peoples are more civilised in proportion to their proximity to the Syrians, and that the Arabians and Scenitae are less so, the former having governments that are better organised, as, for example, that of Arethusa under Sampsiceramus, and that of Gambarus, and that of Themel-\textsuperscript{las},\textsuperscript{1} and those of other chieftains like them.

12. Such is the interior of the territory of Seleucceia. But the remainder of the coast from Laodiceia is as follows: near Laodiceia are three towns, Poseidium and Heracleium and Gabala; and then forthwith one comes to the seaboard of the Aradians,\textsuperscript{2} where are Paltus and Balanoea and Carnus, this last being the naval station of Aradus and having a harbour; and then to Enydra and Marathus, the latter an ancient city of the Phoenicians, now in ruins. Aradians divided up this country among themselves, as also Simyra, the place that comes next thereafter; and continuous with these places is Orthosia, as also Eleutherus, the river near by, which some writers make the boundary of the

\textsuperscript{2} i.e. the seaboard on the \textit{mainland} belonging to the Aradians, who inhabited the island called Aradus.
13. Πρόκειται δ' ἐν Ἀράδος δραχμάδους τινὸς καὶ ἀλμένου παραλίας, μετάξυ τοῦ τε ἐπινείου αὐτῆς μάλιστα καὶ τῆς Μαράθου, διέχουσα τῆς γῆς σταδίους εἰκοσιοί. ἔστι δὲ πέτρα περίκλυστος, ὡσον ἐπτὰ τὸν κύκλον σταδίων, πλήρης κατοικίας· τοσαύτη δ' εὐανδρία κέχρηται μέχρι καὶ νῦν, ὡστε πολυσχέδες οἰκοῦσι τὰς οἰκίας. ἔκτισαν δ' αὐτὴν φυγάδες, ὡς φασίν, ἐκ Σιδόνως. τὴν δ' ὕδειαν τὴν μὲν ἐκ τῶν ὀμβρίων καὶ λακκαίων ὕδατων ἐχουσί, τὴν δ' ἐκ τῆς περαίας. ἐν δὲ τοῖς πολέμωις ἐκ τοῦ πόρου μικρὸν πρὸ τῆς πόλεως ὕδευνται, πηγὴν ἔχοντος ἀφθόνου ὕδατος· εἰς ἥν περικαταστρέφεται κλίβανος, καθεθείς ἀπὸ τοῦ ὕδρευσέν τού σκάφους, μολέβοις, εὐρύστομοι, εἰς πυθμένα συνηγμένοι στενῶν, ἔχοντα τρῆμα μέτριον τῷ δὲ πυθμένι περιέσφεγκται σωλήν σκύτνοις, εἰτε ἁσκωμα δεῖ λέγειν, ὁ δεχόμενος τὸ ἀναθλιβόμενον ἐκ τῆς πηγῆς διὰ τοῦ κλιβάνου ὕδωρ. τὸ μὲν οὖν πρῶτον ἀναθλιβέν τὸ τῆς θαλάττης ἐστὶ περιμείναντες δὲ τῆς τοῦ καθαροῦ καὶ ποτίμου ὕδατος ρύσιν, ὑπολαμβάνουσιν εἰς ἀγγεία παρεσκευαζόμενα, ὡσον ἀν δῆν, καὶ πορθ-μεύσουσιν εἰς τὴν πόλιν.

14. Τὸ παλαιὸν μὲν οὖν οἱ Ἀράδιοι καθ' αὐτοὺς ἐβασιλεύοντο παραπλησίως ὡσπερ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἐκάστη πόλεως τῶν Φοινικῶν ἔπειτα τὰ μὲν οἱ Πέρσαι, τὰ δ' οἱ Μακεδόνες, τὰ δὲ νῦν Ῥωμαίοι μετέθηκαν εἰς τὴν παροῦσαν τάξιν. οἱ δ' οὖν Ἀράδιοι μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων Φοινικῶν ὑπή-
territory of Seleuceia on the side towards Phoenicia and Coelê-Syria.

13. Aradus lies off a surfy and harbourless seaboard; it lies approximately between its naval station and Marathus, and is twenty stadia distant from the mainland. It consists of a rock washed all round by the sea, is about seven stadia in circuit, and is full of dwellings; and it has had such a large population, even down to the present time, that the people live in houses with many stories. It was founded, as they say, by exiles from Sidon. They get their water-supply partly from the rains and cisterns and partly from their territory on the mainland. In war-times they get water from the channel at a short distance in front of the city. This channel has an abundant spring; and into this spring the people let down from the water-fetching boat an inverted, wide-mouthed funnel made of lead, the upper part of which contracts into a stem with a moderate-sized hole through it; and round this stem they fasten a leathern tube (unless I should call it bellows), which receives the water that is forced up from the spring through the funnel. Now the first water that is forced up is sea-water, but the boatmen wait for the flow of pure and potable water and catch all that is needed in vessels prepared for the purpose and carry it to the city.

14. Now in ancient times the Aradians were governed independently by kings, as was also the case with each of the other Phoenician cities; but afterwards the Persians, and then the Macedonians, and to-day the Romans, have reduced them to their present order of government. The Aradians, however, together with the other Phoenicians, subjected
κοινοι τῶν Συριακῶν βασιλέων, ἀτε φίλων ἔπειτα στασιασάμενοι ἀδελφῶν δυνῆν, τοῦ τέκνου Καλλινίκου Σελεύκου καὶ Ἀντιόχου τοῦ Ἰέρακος προσαγορευθέντος, προσθέμενοι τῷ Καλλινίκῳ ποιοῦνται συμβάσεις, ὡστ' ἐξείναι δέχεσθαι τοὺς καταφεύγοντας ἐκ τῆς βασιλείας παρ’ αὐτούς, καὶ μὴ ἐκδιδόναι ἄκουντας· μὴ μέντοι μηδ’ εκπλείν ἐὰν ἂνεν τοῦ ἐπιτρέψαι βασιλέα. συνέβη δὲ ἐκ τούτου μεγάλα αὐτοῖς πλεονεκτήματα· οἱ γὰρ καταφεύγοντες ἐπ’ αὐτοὺς οὐχ οἱ τυχόντες ἦσαν, ἀλλ’ οἱ τὰ μέγιστα πεπιστευμένοι καὶ περὶ τῶν μεγίστων δεδιότες· ἐπιξενούμενοι δ’ αὐτοῖς εὐεργέτας ἠγούντο καὶ σωτῆρας τοὺς ὑποδεξαμένους, ἀπεμημόνευν τις τὴν χάριν, καὶ μάλιστα ἐπανελθόντες εἰς τὴν οἰκείαν ὡστ’ ἐκ τούτου χώραν τε ἐκτήσαντο τῆς περαιάς πολλήν, ἂς τὴν πλείστην ἔχουσι καὶ νῦν, καὶ πάλαι εὐθήνουν. προσέθεσαν δὲ τῇ εὐτυχίᾳ ταύτῃ καὶ πρόνοιαν καὶ φιλοπονίαν πρὸς τὴν θαλαττουργίαν ὀρόντες τε τοὺς γειτονεύοντας Κίλικας τὰ πειρατήρια συνιστάμενοι οὐδ’ ἀπαξ ἐκοινώνουν αὐτοῖς τῆς τοιαύτης ἐπιτηδεύσεως.

15. Μετὰ δὲ Ὄρθωσίαν ἐστὶ καὶ τῶν Ἐλευθερον Τρίπολις, ἀπὸ τοῦ συμβεβηκότος τὴν ἐπίκλησιν εἰληφθεὶα· τρίων γὰρ ἐστὶ πόλεων κτίσμα, Τύρου, Σιδώνος, Ἀράδου τῇ δὲ Τριπόλει συνεχές ἐστὶ τὸ τοῦ Θεοῦ πρόσωπον, εἰς ὁ τελευτᾷ ὁ Λίβανος τὸ ὄρος· μετάξι δὲ Τριήρης, χωρίων τι.

16. Δύο δὲ ταύτ’ ἐστὶν ὅρη τὰ ποιοῦντα τὴν

1 "Tri-city."
2 "Face-of-God."
themselves to the Syrian kings as friends of theirs; and then, when a quarrel broke out between two brothers, Callinicus Seleucus and Antiochus Hierax, as he was called, the Aradians joined with Callinicus and made an agreement with him whereby they were to be permitted to receive refugees from the kingdom and not to give them up against their will; they were not, however, to permit refugees to sail from the island without permission from the king. From this agreement they got great advantages; for those who fled for refuge to their country were not ordinary people, but men who had held the highest trusts and were in fear of the direst consequences; and, being received as guests, they regarded their hosts as their benefactors and saviours, and requited the favour, in particular when they went back to their homeland; and it is from this fact, therefore, that the Aradians got possession of a considerable territory on the mainland, most of which they hold even at present, and otherwise have prospered. To this good fortune they added both prudence and industry in their maritime affairs; and when they saw that the neighbouring Cilicians were organising piratical adventures they would not even once take part with them in a business of that kind.

15. After Orthosia and the Eleutherus River one comes to Tripolis, which has taken its name from what is the fact in the case, for it is a foundation consisting of three cities, Tyre and Sidon and Aradus. Contiguous to Tripolis is Theuprosopon, where Mt. Libanus terminates; and between the two lies Trieres, a kind of stronghold.

16. Here are two mountains, Libanus and Antili-
STRABO

Κοίλην καλομέμην Συρίαν, ὅς ἀν παράλληλα, ὃ τε Λίβανος καὶ ὁ 'Αντιλίβανος, μικρὸν ὑπερθεν C 755 τῆς θαλάττης ἀρχόμενα ἄμφω' ὁ μὲν Λίβανος τῆς κατὰ Τρίπολιν, κατὰ τὸ τοῦ Θεοῦ μάλιστα πρὸ- σωπον, ὃ δ' Ἀντιλίβανος τῆς κατὰ Σιδόνα· τελευτῶσι δ' ἔγγυς πως τῶν 'Αραβίων ὀρῶν τῶν ὑπὲρ τῆς Δαμασκηνῆς καὶ τῶν Τραχώνων ἡ ἑκεῖ λεγομένων εἰς ἀλλὰ ὅρη γεώλοφα καὶ καλλίκαρπα. ἀπολείπουσι δὲ μεταξὺ πεδίων κοιλὸν πλάτος μὲν τὸ ἐπὶ τῆς θαλάττης διακο- σίων σταδίων, μῆκος δὲ τὸ ἀπὸ τῆς θαλάττης εἰς τὴν μεσόγαιαν ὄμοῦ τι διπλάσιον. διαρρεῖται δὲ ποταμοῖς ἀρδουσὶ χώραν ευδαίμονα καὶ πάμ- φορον, μεγίστῳ δὲ τῷ Ἰορδάνῃ. ἔχει δὲ καὶ λίμνην, ἢ φέρει τὴν ἀρωματίτιν σχινὸν καὶ κάλαμον, ὡς δ' αὐτῶς καὶ ἐλη: καλεῖται δ' ἡ λίμνη Γεννησαρίτης. φέρει δὲ καὶ βάλσαμον. τῶν δὲ ποταμῶν ὁ μὲν Χρυσορρόας, ἀρξάμενος ἀπὸ τῆς Δαμασκηνῶν πόλεως καὶ χώρας, εἰς τὰς ὁχετείας ἀναλίσκεται σχεδὸν τῇ πολλῇ γὰρ ἕπαρδει καὶ βαθείαν σφόδρα τὸν δὲ Δύκον καὶ τὸν Ἰορδάνην ἀναπλέουσι φορτίοις, Ἀράβιοι δὲ μάλιστα.

17. Τὸν δὲ πεδίον τὸ μὲν πρῶτον, τὸ ἀπὸ τῆς θαλάττης, Μάκρας καλεῖται καὶ Μάκρα πεδίον· ἐν τούτῳ δὲ Ποσειδώνιος ἱστορεῖ τὸν δράκοντα πεπτωκότα ὀραθήναι νεκρῶν, μῆκος.

1 Συρίαν FE, Γωνίαν and Γωνίαν other MSS. and in margin of F.
2 Τραχώνων, Tzschucke, for Τραχακών.
3 Instead of ὄμοῦ, E reads σχεδὸν.
4 σχινὸν ("rush"), Tzschucke and Corais emend to σχινὸν (the mastich-tree).
260
GEOGRAPHY, 16. 2. 16–17

banus, which form Coelê-Syria, as it is called, and are approximately parallel to each other. They both begin slightly above the sea—Libanus above the sea near Tripolis and nearest to Theuprosopon, and Antilibanus above the sea near Sidon; and somewhere in the neighbourhood of the Arabian mountains above Damascenê and the Trachones, as they are called, the two mountains terminate in other mountains that are hilly and fruitful. They leave a hollow plain between them, the breadth of which, near the sea, is two hundred stadia, and the length, from the sea into the interior, is about twice that number. It is intersected by rivers, the Jordan being the largest, which water a country that is fertile and all-productive. It also contains a lake, which produces the aromatic rush and reed; and likewise marshes. The lake is called Gennesaritis. The plain also produces balsam. Among the rivers is the Chrysorrhœas, which begins at the city and country of the Damasceni and is almost wholly used up in the conduits, for it irrigates a large territory that has a very deep soil; but the Lycus and the Jordan are navigated inland with vessels of burden, mostly by the Aradians.

17. As for the plains, the first, beginning at the sea, is called Macras, or Macra-Plain. Here, as reported by Poseidonius, was seen the fallen dragon,

1 "Trachones" means "Rugged, strong tracts" (see 16. 2. 20).
2 See critical note.

5 Instead of σφόδρα, E reads χθόνα.
6 After μῆκος Dhi read μέν; so Corais.
σχεδόν τι καὶ πλεθριαίον, πάχος δ', ὦσθ' ἵππεας ἐκατέρωθεν παραστάντας ἀλλήλους μὴ καθορᾶν, χάσμα δὲ, ὦστ' ἐφίππων δὲξασθαί, τῇς δὲ φολίδος λεπίδα ἐκάστην ὑπεραιροῦσαν θυρεοῦ.

18. Μετὰ δὲ τὸν Μάκραν ἐστίν ὁ Μασσύας, ἔχων τινὰ καὶ ὅρεινά, ἐν οἷς ἡ Χαλκίς, ὥσπερ ἀκρόπολις τοῦ Μασσύου· ἀρχὴ δ' αὐτοῦ Λαοδίκεια ἡ πρὸς Λιβάνω. τὰ μὲν οὖν ὅρειν ἔχουσι πάντα Ἰτουραίοι τε καὶ Ἀραβεῖς, κακοῦργοι πάντες, οἱ δ' ἐν τοῖς πεδίοις γεωργοί· κακοῦμενοι δ' ὑπ' ἐκείνων ἄλλοτε ἄλλης βοηθείας δέονται. ὀρμητηρίοις δ' ἔρμυνοις χρώνται, καθάπερ οἱ τὸν Λίβανον ἔχοντες ἀνω μὲν ἐν τῷ ὅρει Σιμνάν καὶ Βόρραμα καὶ ἄλλα τοιαύτα ἔχουσι τείχη, κἀτ' ἐν Βότρυν καὶ Γέγαρτον καὶ τὰ ἐπὶ τῆς θαλάττης σπῆλαια καὶ τὸ ἐπὶ τῷ Θεοῦ προσώπῳ φρούριον ἐπιτεθεῖν, ἀ κατέσπασε Πομπήιος, ἀφ' ὧν τὴν τε Βύβλον κατέτρεχον καὶ τὴν ἐφεξῆς ταῦτῃ Βηρουτῷ, αἱ μεταξὶ κεῖται Σιδώνος καὶ τοῦ Θεοῦ προσώπου. ἡ μὲν οὖν Βύβλος, τὸ τοῦ Κινύρου βασίλειον, ιερὰ ἐστὶ τοῦ Ἀδώνιδος· ἡν τυραννουμένῃ ἠλευθερώσε Πομπήιος πελεκίσας ἐκείνων· κεῖται δ' ἐφ' ὕψους τινὸς μικρὸν ἄπωθεν τῆς θαλάττης.

19. Εἶτα μετὰ ταύτην Ἀδώνις ποταμὸς καὶ ὅρος Κλῖμαξ καὶ Παλαϊβύβλος· εἴδ' ὁ Λύκος C 756 ποταμὸς καὶ Βηρουτός· αὕτη δὲ κατεσπάσθη μὲν ὑπὸ Τρύφωνος, ἀνελήφθη δὲ νῦν ὑπὸ Ρωμαιῶν,

1 κατέτρεχον F, κατέτρεχε other MSS.

1 About 100 feet.  2 Now Beyrout.
the corpse of which was about a plethrum \(^1\) in length, and so bulky that horsemen standing by it on either side could not see one another; and its jaws were large enough to admit a man on horseback, and each flake of its horny scales exceeded an oblong shield in length.

18. After Macras one comes to the Massyas Plain, which contains also some mountainous parts, among which is Chalcis, the acropolis, as it were, of the Massyas. The beginning of this plain is the Laodiceia near Libanus. Now all the mountainous parts are held by Ituraeans and Arabians, all of whom are robbers, but the people in the plains are farmers; and when the latter are harassed by the robbers at different times they require different kinds of help. These robbers use strongholds as bases of operation; those, for example, who hold Libanus possess, high up on the mountain, Sinna and Borrama and other fortresses like them, and, down below, Botrys and Gigartus and the caves by the sea and the castle that was erected on Theuprosopon. Pompey destroyed these places; and from them the robbers overran both Byblus and the city that comes next after Byblus, I mean the city Berytus,\(^2\) which lie between Sidon and Theuprosopon. Now Byblus, the royal residence of Cinyras, is sacred to Adonis; but Pompey freed it from tyranny by beheading its tyrant with an axe; and it is situated on a height only a slight distance from the sea.

19. Then, after Byblus, one comes to the Adonis River and to Mt. Climax and to Palaebyblus; and then to the Lycus River and Berytus. But though Berytus was razed to the ground by Tryphon, it has now been restored by the Romans; and it
STRABO

dezamēnē dúo tāγmatā, ἄ ἱδρυσέν Ἄγριππας ἐυταῦθα, προσθεὶς καὶ τοῦ Μασσύου πολλὴν μέχρι καὶ τῶν τοῦ Ὄροντοὺ πηγῶν, αἱ πλησίον τοῦ τε Διβάνου καὶ τοῦ Παραδείσου καὶ τοῦ Αἰγυπτίου τείχους περὶ τὴν Ἀπαμέων γῆν εἰσὶν ταύτα μὲν οὖν τὰ ἐπὶ θαλάττη.

20. Ὁπέρ δὲ τοῦ Μασσύου ἐστὶν ὁ καλούμενος Αὐλῶν βασιλικὸς καὶ ἡ Δαμασκὴν χώρα, διαφερόντως ἐπαινομένην ἔστι δὲ καὶ ἡ Δαμασκὸς πόλις ἁξιόλογος, σχεδὸν τι καὶ ἐπιφανεστάτη τῶν ταύτης κατὰ τὰ Πέρσικα· ὑπέρκειται δὲ αὐτῆς δύο λεγόμενοι Ἀγαμήων· ἔπειτα πρὸς τὰ Ἄραβων μέρη καὶ τῶν Πούραϊν ἀναμένεται ὅρη δύσβατα, ἐν ὑς καὶ σπῆλαια βαθύστομα, ὅπως καὶ τετρακισχισίους ἀνθρώπους δέξασθαι δυνάμενον ἐν κατάρομαίς, αἰ τοῖς Δαμασκηνοῖς ἡγίστοι πολλαχόθεν. τὸ μέντοι πλέον τοὺς ἀπὸ τῆς εὐδαίμονος Ἀραβίας ἐμπόρους λεηλατούσιν οἱ βάρβαροι· ἦττον δὲ συμβαίνει καταλυθέντων νυνὶ τῶν περὶ Ζηνόδωρον ἱστόν διὰ τὴν ἐκ τῶν Ῥωμαίων εὐνομίαν καὶ διὰ τὴν ἐκ τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἀσφάλειαν τῶν ἐν τῇ Συρίᾳ τρεφόμενων.

21. Ἀπασα μὲν οὖν ἡ ὑπὲρ τῆς Σελευκίδος ὡς ἐπὶ τὴν Αἰγυπτίων καὶ τὴν Ἄραβιαν ἀνίσχουσα χώρα Κοίλη Συρία καλεῖται, ἱδίως δὲ ἡ τῶ Διβάνῳ καὶ τῷ Ἀντιλυμαγῷ ἀφωρισμένη. τῆς δὲ λυπῆς ἡ μὲν ἀπὸ Ὀρθωσίας μέχρι Πηλουσίου παραλία Φοινίκη καλεῖται, στενῆς τις

1 See 16. 2. 16 and footnote.
2 i.e. the remainder of Coelê-Syria in the broad sense of the term.

264
received two legions, which were settled there by Agrippa, who also added to it much of the territory of Massyas, as far as the sources of the Orontes River. These sources are near Mt. Libanus and Paradiseus and the Aegyptian fortress situated in the neighbourhood of the land of the Apameians. So much, then, for the places on the sea.

20. Above Massyas lies the Royal Valley, as it is called, and also the Damascene country, which is accorded exceptional praise. The city Damascus is also a noteworthy city, having been, I might almost say, even the most famous of the cities in that part of the world in the time of the Persian empire; and above it are situated two Trachones, as they are called. And then, towards the parts inhabited promiscuously by Arabians and Ituraeans, are mountains hard to pass, in which there are deep-mouthed caves, one of which can admit as many as four thousand people in times of incursions, such as are made against the Damasceni from many places. For the most part, indeed, the barbarians have been robbing the merchants from Arabia Felix, but this is less the case now that the band of robbers under Zenodorus has been broken up through the good government established by the Romans and through the security established by the Roman soldiers that are kept in Syria.

21. Now the whole of the country above the territory of Seleuceia, extending approximately to Aegypt and Arabia, is called Coelé-Syria; but the country marked off by the Libanus and the Antilibanus is called by that name in a special sense. Of the remainder the seaboard from Orthosia to Pelusium is called Phoenicia, which is a narrow
καὶ ἀληθεῖς, ἡ δ' ύπερ ταύτης μεσόγαια μέχρι τῶν Ἀράβων ἢ μεταξύ Γάζης καὶ Ἄντιλβάνου Ἰουδαία λέγεται.

22. Ἐπεὶ οὖν τὴν ἰδίως λεγομένην Κοίλην Συρίαν ἐπεληλύθαμεν, ἐπὶ τὴν Φοινίκην μέτιμεν ταύτης δὲ τὰ μὲν ἀπὸ Ὄρθωσίας μέχρι Βηρυτοῦ λόγου τετύχηκε μετὰ δὲ Βηρυτοῦ ἐστὶ Σιδών ὅσον ἐν τετρακοσίοις σταδίοις μεταξὺ δὲ ὁ Ταμύρας ποταμὸς καὶ τὸ τοῦ Ἀσκληπιοῦ ἄλσος καὶ Λεόντων πόλις, μετὰ δὲ Σιδώνα μεγίστη τῶν Φοινίκων καὶ ἀρχαιότάτη Τύρος ἐστίν, ἡ ἐνάμιλλος αὐτῆς κατὰ τε μέγεθος καὶ κατὰ τὴν ἐπιφάνειαν καὶ τὴν ἀρχαιότητα ἐκ πολλῶν μύθων παραδεδομένην. οἱ μὲν οὖν ποιηταὶ τὴν Σιδώνα τεθρυλήκασι μᾶλλον ("Ομηρος δὲ οὔδε μέμνηται τῆς Τύρου), αἱ δ' εἰς τὴν Διβύνην καὶ τὴν Ἰβηρίαν ἀνοικίαν μέχρι καὶ ἔξω Στηλῶν τὴν Τύρου πλέον ἐξυμνοῦσι. ἀμφότεραι δ' οὖν ἐνδόξοι καὶ λαμπραὶ καὶ πάλαι καὶ νῦν ὀποτέραν δ' ἂν τις εἴποι μητρόπολιν Φοινίκων, ἔρις ἐν ἀμφότεραις ἐστίν. μὲν οὖν Σιδών ἐπὶ εὐφυεὶ λιμένι τῆς ἥπερ ὁ Τύρος ἑτοιμασθεὶς.

23. Τύρος δ' ἐστίν ὅλη νήσος σχεδὸν τι συνφιλισμένη παραπλησίως, ὁσπερ ἡ "Ἀραδος, συνήπται C 757 δὲ χώματι πρὸς τὴν ἥπερ, ὁ κατεσκεύασε πολιορκῶν Ἀλέξανδρος. δύο δ' ἔχει λιμένας, τὸν

1 τετρακοσίοις (ὑ') clearly seems to be an error for διακοσίοις (σ').

2 ἡ is omitted by Corais and Meineke.

3 παραδεδομένην, Corais, for παραδεδομένη; so the later editors.

4 μᾶλλον, after ἐξυμνοῦσι, is omitted by Exz, Corais, and Meineke.

266
country and lies flat along the sea, whereas the interior above Phoenicia, as far as the Arabians, between Gaza and Antilibanus, is called Judaea.

22. Since, then, I have traversed Coele-Syria in the special sense of that name, I shall pass on to Phoenicia. Of this country, I have already described the parts extending from Orthosia to Berytus; and after Berytus one comes to Sidon, at a distance of about four hundred 1 stadia; but between the two places are the Tamyras River and the grove of Asclepius and a city of Leones. After Sidon one comes to Tyre, the largest and oldest city of the Phoenicians, which rivals Sidon, not only in size, but also in its fame and antiquity, as handed down to us in numerous myths. Now although the poets have referred more repeatedly to Sidon than to Tyre (Homer does not even mention Tyre), yet the colonies sent into Libya and Iberia, as far even as outside the Pillars, hymn rather the praises of Tyre. At any rate, both cities have been famous and illustrious, both in early times and at the present time; and no matter which of the two one might call the metropolis of the Phoenicians, there is a dispute in both cities. Now Sidon is situated on the mainland near a harbour that is by nature a good one.

23. But Tyre is wholly an island, being built up nearly in the same way as Aradus; and it is connected with the mainland by a mole, which was constructed by Alexander when he was besieging it; and it has two harbours, one that can be closed

1 Apparently an error for “two hundred.”
2 i.e. of “Lions.” Cf. the “Leontopolis” in Aegypt (17. 1. 19), where the inhabitants worshipped a lion (17. 1. 4).
3 e.g. Carthage and Gadeira.
μὲν κλειστῶν, τοῦ δ' ἀνειμένον, ὅν Αἰγυπτίων καλοῦσιν. ἐνταῦθα δὲ φασὶ πολυστέγους τὰς οἰκίας ὡστε καὶ τῶν ἐν 'Ῥώμη μᾶλλον' διὸ καὶ σεισμοὺς γενομένους ἀπολυπεῖν μικρὸν τοῦ ἁρδην ἀφανίσαι τὴν πόλιν. ἠτύχος δὲ καὶ ὑπ' Ἀλεξάνδρου πολιορκία ληφθεῖσα· ἀλλὰ τῶν τοιούτων συμφορῶν κατέστη κρείττων καὶ ἀνέλαβεν αὐτὴν τῇ τε ναυτιλίᾳ, καθ' ἦν ἀπάντων τῶν ἀεὶ κρείττους εἰσὶ κοινῇ Φοίνικες, καὶ τοῖς πορφυρείοις· πολὺ γὰρ ἐξήτασται πασῶν ἡ Τύρια καλλίστη πορφύρα· καὶ ἡ θῆρα πλησίον καὶ τάλλα εὐπορα τὰ πρὸς βαφήν ἐπιτήδεια· καὶ δυσδιάγωγον μὲν ποιεῖ τὴν πόλιν ἡ πολυπληθία τῶν βαφείων, πλουσίων δὲ διὰ τὴν τοιαύτην ἀνδρείαν. οὐχ ύπὸ τῶν βασιλέων δ' ἐκρίθησαν αὐτόνομοι μόνον, ἀλλὰ καὶ ύπὸ τῶν Ἑρωμαίων μικρὰ ἀναλώσαντες, βεβαιωσάντων τὴν ἐκείνων γυνώμην. τιμᾶται δὲ καθ' ὑπερβολὴν Ἡρακλῆς υπ' αὐτῶν. τῆς δὲ περὶ τὰς ναυστολίας δυνάμεως τὸ πλῆθος καὶ τὸ μέγεθος τῶν ἀποικίδων ἐστὶ πόλεως τεκμήριον· οὕτω μὲν οὖν τοιούτοι.

24. Σιδώνιοι δὲ πολύτεχνοι τίνες παραδέδονται καὶ καλλίτεχνοι, καθάπερ καὶ ὁ ποιητὴς δηλοῖ· πρὸς δὲ καὶ φιλόσοφοι περί τε ἀστρονομίαν καὶ ἁριθμητικὴν, ἀπὸ τῆς λογιστικῆς ἁρξάμενοι καὶ τῆς νυκτιπλοίας· ἐμπορικὸν γὰρ καὶ ναυκληρικὸν ἐκάτερον· καθάπερ καὶ τῶν Αἰγυπτίων εὑρέμα

---

1 mox read σεισμῶν γενομένων.
2 ναυστολίας, the editors, for ναυστολογιας.

1 See 5. 3. 7.
2 The Phoenician Melcharth.

268
and the other, called "Aegyptian" harbour, open. The houses here, it is said, have many stories, even more than the houses at Rome, and on this account, when an earthquake took place, it lacked but little of utterly wiping out the city. The city was also unfortunate when it was taken by siege by Alexander; but it overcame such misfortunes and restored itself both by means of the seamanship of its people, in which the Phoenicians in general have been superior to all peoples of all times, and by means of their dye-houses for purple; for the Tyrian purple has proved itself by far the most beautiful of all; and the shell-fish are caught near the coast; and the other things requisite for dyeing are easily got; and although the great number of dye-works makes the city unpleasant to live in, yet it makes the city rich through the superior skill of its inhabitants. The Tyrians were adjudged autonomous, not only by the kings, but also, at small expense to them, by the Romans, when the Romans confirmed the decree of the kings. Heracles is paid extravagant honours by them. The number and the size of their colonial cities is an evidence of their power in maritime affairs. Such, then, are the Tyrians.

24. The Sidonians, according to tradition, are skilled in many beautiful arts, as the poet also points out; and besides this they are philosophers in the sciences of astronomy and arithmetic, having begun their studies with practical calculations and with night-sailings; for each of these branches of knowledge concerns the merchant and the ship-owner; as, for example, geometry was invented, it

3 "Since the Sidonians, skilled in cunning handiwork had wrought it (the silver mixing bowl) well" (Iliad 23. 743).
γεωμετρίαν φασίν ἀπὸ τῆς χωρομετρίας, ὃν Νεῖλος ὁπεργάζεται, συγχέων τοὺς ὄρους κατὰ τὰς ἀναβάσεις. τούτῳ μὲν οὖν παρ’ Αἰγυπτίων ἢκείν εἰς τοὺς Ἑλληνας πεπιστεύκασιν, ἀστρονομίαν δὲ καὶ ἀριθμητικὴν παρὰ Φωνίκων. νυνὶ δὲ πάσης καὶ τῆς ἀλλης φιλοσοφίας εὐπορίαν πολὺ πλείστην λαβεῖν ἐστίν ἐκ τούτων τῶν πόλεων εἰ δὲ δὲι Ποσειδωνῖος πιστεύσαι, καὶ τὸ περὶ τῶν ἀτόμων δόγμα παλαιὸν ἐστὶν ἀνδρὸς Σιδόνιος Μώχου πρὸ τῶν Τρωικῶν χρόνων γεγονότος. τὰ μὲν οὖν παλαιὰ ἐάσθω· καθ’ ἡμᾶς δὲ Ξιδόνος μὲν ἐνδοξοὶ φιλόσοφοι γεγόνασι Βοηθός τε, ὁ συνεφίλοσοφήσαμεν ἤμεις τὰ Ἀριστοτέλεια, καὶ Διόδοτος, ἀδελφὸς αὐτοῦ· ἐκ Τύρου δὲ Ἀντίπατρος, καὶ μικρὸν πρὸ ἡμῶν Ἀπολλώνος ὁ τὸν πίνακα ἐκθεῖς τῶν ἀπὸ Ζήνωνος φιλοσόφων καὶ τῶν βιβλίων. διέχει δὲ τῆς Ξιδόνος ἡ Τύρος οὐ πλείους τῶν διακοσίων στα- C 758 δίων· ἐν δὲ τῷ μεταξὺ πολίχνιον, Ὀρνίθων πόλις λεγόμενη· εἰτὰ πρὸς Τύρῳ ποταμὸς ἐξῆσθι· μετὰ δὲ τὴν Τύρον ἡ Παλαιτύρος ἐν τριάκοντα στα- δίοις.

25. Εἴθ’ ἡ Πτολεμαίσις ἐστι μεγάλη πόλις, ἣν Ἀκην ὁνόμαζον πρότερον· ἦ ἐχρώντο όρμητηρίῳ πρὸς τὴν Ἑλλάδα οἱ Πέρσαι. μεταξύ δὲ τῆς Ἀκῆς καὶ Τύρου θινώδης αἰγιαλὸς ἐστὶν ὁ φέρου τὴν υαλίτιν ἄμμον. ἐνταύθα μὲν οὖν φάσι μὴ χεῖσθαι, κομισθείσαν εἰς Σιδόνα δὲ τὴν χωνείαν δέχεσθαι· τινὲς δὲ καὶ τοῖς Σιδόνιοις εἶναι τὴν

---

1 Cf. 17. 1. 3.
2 Whether Strabo and Boethus studied together under 270
is said, from the measurement of lands which is made necessary by the Nile when it confounds the boundaries at the time of its overflows. This science, then, is believed to have come to the Greeks from the Aegyptians; astronomy and arithmetic from the Phoenicians; and at present by far the greatest store of knowledge in every other branch of philosophy is to be had from these cities. And if one must believe Poseidonius, the ancient dogma about atoms originated with Mochus, a Sidonian, born before the Trojan times. However, let us dismiss things ancient. In my time there have been famous philosophers from Sidon; Boethus, with whom I studied the Aristotelian philosophy, and his brother Diodotus; and from Tyre, Antipater, and, a little before my time, Apollonius, who published a tabulated account of the philosophers of the school of Zeno and of their books. Tyre is distant from Sidon not more than two hundred stadia; and between them lies a town called City of Ornithes; and then one comes to a river which empties near Tyre, and after Tyre, to Palae-Tyre, at a distance of thirty stadia.

25. Then one comes to Ptolemaïs, a large city, in earlier times named Acê; this city was used by the Persians as a base of operations against Aegypt. Between Acê and Tyre is a sandy beach, which produces the sand used in making glass. Now the sand, it is said, is not fused here, but is carried to Sidon and there melted and cast. Some say that the Sidonians, among others, have the glass-sand

Andronicus of Rhodes (see 14. 2. 13), or under Xenarchus of Seleucia in Cilicia (see 14. 5. 4), or both, is uncertain.

3 Ornithopolis, "City of Birds." 4 Old Tyre.
STRABO

υάλιτιν ψάμμων ἐπιτηδείαν εἰς χύσιν, οἱ δὲ πᾶσαι πανταχοῦ χεῖσθαί 1 φασιν. ἤκουσα δ’ ἐν τῇ Ἀλεξανδρείᾳ παρὰ τῶν ἐμφυγόν, εἰναὶ τίνα καὶ κατ’ Ἀιγυπτίων υάλιτιν γῆν, ἥς χωρὶς οὐχ οἶν τε τὰς πολυχρόσιν καὶ πολυτέλεις κατασκευασμένας ἀποτελεσθῆναι, καθάπερ καὶ ἄλλως ἄλλων μιγμάτων δεῖν· καὶ ἐν Ἄρώμη δὲ πολλὰ παρευρίσκεσθαι φασί καὶ πρὸς τὰς χρόσις καὶ πρὸς τὴν ῥαστώνην τῆς κατασκευῆς, καθάπερ ἐπὶ τῶν κρυσταλλοφανῶν· ὀποὺν γε καὶ τρυβλίων χαλκοῦ πρίασθαι καὶ ἐκπωμάτιον ἔστιν.

26. Ἡστορεῖται δὲ παράδοξον πάθος τῶν πάνω σπανίων, κατὰ τὸν αἰγιαλὸν τοῦτον τοῦ μεταξύ τῆς τε Τύρου καὶ τῆς Πτολεμαίδος. καθ’ ὅν γὰρ καίρον οἱ Πτολεμαῖοι, μάχιμα συναψακτες πρὸς Σαρπηδόνα τὸν στρατηγὸν, ἐλεύθησαν 2 ἐν τῷ τόπῳ τούτῳ, τροπῆς γενομένης λαμπρᾶς, ἐπέκλυσεν ἐκ τοῦ πελάγους κύμα τοῦς φεύγουται δῆμοιν πλημμυρίδι, καὶ τοὺς μὲν εἰς τὸ πέλαγος ἀφήντας καὶ διέφθειρεν, οἱ δ’ ἐν τοῖς κοίλοις τόπον ἔμειναν νεκροί· διαδεξαμένη δὲ ἡ ἀμπωτις πάλιν ἀνεκάλυψε καὶ ἐδέξιε τὰ σώματα τῶν κειμένων ἀναμίξ ἐν νεκροῖς ἰχθύσι. τοιαῦτα δὲ καὶ περί τὸ Κάσιον συμβαίνει τὸ πρὸς Ἀιγυπτίων, σπασμῷ των ὁμοί καὶ ἀπλῶς 3 περιττουσθης τῆς τῆς καὶ εἰς ὑκάτερον μεταβαλλομένης ἀπαξ· ὡστε τὸ μὲν μετεωρισθὲν αὐτῆς μέρος ἀπαγαγεῖν 4 τὴν θάλατ-

1 χεῖσθαί F, κινεῖσθαί other MSS.
3 For ἀπλῶ Corais reads παλμῶ (vibration).
4 ἀπαγαγεῖν, Jones, following suggestion of Capps, for ἐπαγαγεῖν F, ἐπάγειν other MSS.

272
that is adapted to fusing, though others say that any sand anywhere can be fused. I heard at Alexandria from the glass-workers that there was in Aegypt a kind of vitreous earth without which many-coloured and costly designs could not be executed, just as elsewhere different countries require different mixtures; and at Rome, also, it is said that many discoveries are made both for producing the colours and for facility in manufacture, as, for example, in the case of glass-ware, where one can buy a glass beaker or drinking-cup for a copper.

26. A marvellous occurrence of a very rare kind is reported as having taken place on this shore between Tyre and Ptolemaïs: at the time when the Ptolemaeans, after joining battle with Sarpedon the general, were left in this place, after a brilliant rout had taken place, a wave from the sea, like a flood-tide, submerged the fugitives;¹ and some were carried off into the sea and destroyed, whereas others were left dead in the hollow places; and then, succeeding this wave, the ebb uncovered the shore again and disclosed the bodies of men lying promiscuously among dead fish. Like occurrences take place in the neighbourhood of the Mt. Casius situated near Aegypt, where the land undergoes a single quick convulsion, and makes a sudden change to a higher or lower level, the result being that, whereas the elevated part repels the sea and

¹ The account of Athenaeus (8. 2, p. 333), quoted from Poseidonius, is clearer: the opposing generals were Tryphon the Apameian (see 16. 2. 10) and Sarpedon the general of Demetrius; it was Tryphon who won the fight and his soldiers who were submerged.
ιν, τὸ δὲ συνιζήσαν ἃ δέξασθαι, τραπομένης δὲ τὴν ἀρχαίαν πάλιν ἔδραν ἀπολαβεῖν τὸν τόπον, τοτε μὲν οὖν καὶ ἐξαλλάξαν τίνος γενομένης, τοτε δ᾽ οὐ τάχα καὶ περίοδοι τίσιν ἐνδεδεμένων τῶν τοιούτων παθῶν ἀδήλους ἥμιν, καθάπερ τούτῳ καὶ ἐπί τῶν κατὰ τὸν Ἰερολῶν ἀναβάσεων λέγεται ἀγαθέρων γινομένων, ἄδηλου δὲ τὴν τάξιν ἑξουσίων.

27. Μετὰ δὲ τὴν Ἅγιαν Στράτωνος πύργος, πρόσορμον ἔχον. μεταξὺ δὲ ὁ τε Κάρμηλος τὸ ὅρος καὶ πολυχνίων όνοματα, πλέον δ᾽ οὐδέν, Συκαμίνων πόλεις, Βουκόλων καὶ Κροκοδείλων πόλεις καὶ ἄλλα τοιαῦτα: εἰτὰ δρυμὸς μέγας τις.

C 759 28. Εἴτα Ἰόσπη,² καθ' ἦν ἡ ἀπὸ τῆς Αἰγύπτου παραλία σημειώδως ἐπὶ τὴν ἄρκτον κάμπτεται, πρότερον ἐπὶ τὴν ἐώς τεταμένη. ἐνταῦθα δὲ μυθεύουσι τινες τὴν Ἀνδρομέδαν ἐκτεθῆκεν τῷ κόσμῳ ἐν ψεῖ γὰρ ἐστὶν ικανὸς τὸ χωρίον, ὅστ᾽ ἀφοράσθαι φασίν ἀπ᾽ αὐτοῦ τὰ Ἰεροσόλυμα, τὴν τῶν Ἰουδαίων μητρόπολιν καὶ δὴ καὶ ἐπινεώσε οὕτω κέχρησται καταβάντες μέχρι θαλάττης οἱ Ἰουδαῖοι τὰ δ᾽ ἐπίνεια τῶν ληστῶν ἀντικρισία δηλούντι ἐστὶν. τούτων δὲ καὶ ὁ Κάρμηλος ὑπῆρξε καὶ ὁ δρυμὸς καὶ δὴ καὶ εὐάνθρωποι οὕτως ὁ τόπος, ὡστ᾽ ἐκ τῆς πλησίον κόμης Ιαμνείας καὶ τῶν κατοικίων τῶν κύκλω τέτταρας μυρίάδας

¹ συνιζήσαν, Xylander, for συνιζήσων.
² Ἰόσπη Εμος, Ἰόσπη other MSS.

¹ For an extended discussion of this and similar problems, see l. 3–4, 10. 13.
² This place was magnificently built up by Herod and named Caesarea in honour of Augustus.
³ “Mulberry City.”

274
the sunken part receives it, yet, the land makes a reverse change and the site resumes its old position again, a complete interchange of levels sometimes having taken place and sometimes not.\(^1\) Perhaps such disturbances are subject to periodic principles unknown to us, as is also said to be the case of the overflows of the Nile, which prove to be variant but follow some unknown order.

27. After Acê one comes to the Tower of Strato,\(^2\) which has a landing-place for vessels. Between the two places is Mt. Carmel, as also towns of which nothing more than the names remain—I mean Sycaminopolis,\(^3\) Bucolopolis,\(^4\) Crocodeilopolis,\(^5\) and others like them. And then one comes to a large forest.\(^6\)

28. Then one comes to Iopê,\(^7\) where the seaboard from Aegypt, though at first stretching towards the east, makes a significant bend towards the north. Here it was, according to certain writers of myths, that Andromeda was exposed to the sea-monster; for the place is situated at a rather high elevation—so high, it is said, that Jerusalem, the metropolis of the Judeans, is visible from it; and indeed the Judeans have used this place as a seaport when they have gone down as far as the sea; but the seaports of robbers are obviously only robbers' dens.\(^8\) To these people belonged, not only Carmel, but also the forest; and indeed this place was so well supplied with men that it could muster forty thousand men from the neighbouring village Iamneia and

\(^1\) "Herdsman City."
\(^2\) Josephus (14. 13. 3) speaks of a place near Mt. Carmel as \(\Delta \rho \iota \mu \omicron \) ("Forests").
\(^3\) Now Jaffa.
\(^4\) "Crocodile City."
\(^5\) See § 37 following.
όπλισθαν. εἰσὶ δὲ ἐντεῦθεν εἰς τὸ Κάσιον τὸ πρὸς Πηλούσιον μικρὸ πλείους ἡ χίλιοι στάδιοι, τριακόσιοι δὲ ἄλλοι πρὸς αὐτὸ τὸ Πηλούσιον.

29. Ἐν δὲ τῷ μεταξὺ καὶ ἡ Γαδαρίς ἐστίν, ἴν καὶ αὐτὴν ἐξιδιάσαντο οἱ Ἰουδαῖοι εἰς Ἀξωτὸς καὶ Ἀσκάλων, ἀπὸ δὲ Ἱαμνείας εἰς Ἀξωτὸν καὶ Ἀσκάλων ἐςιν ὅσον διακόσιοι στάδιοι. κρομ-μυών τ' ἀγαθὸς ἐστίν ἡ χώρα τῶν Ἀσκαλώντων, πόλισμα δὲ μικρὸν. ἐντεῦθεν ἴν Ἀντίοχος ὁ φιλόσοφος, μικρὸν πρὸ ἢμῶν γεγονός. ἐκ δὲ τῶν Γαδάρων Φιλόδημος τε ὦ Ἐπικούρειος καὶ Μελέαγρος καὶ Μένιππος ὁ σπουδογέλοιος καὶ Θεόδωρος ὁ καθ' ἡμᾶς ρήτωρ.

30. Εἰθ' ὁ τῶν Γαζάιων λιμὴν πληθών ὑπέρκειται δὲ καὶ ἡ πόλις ἐν ἐπτὰ σταδίοις, ἐνδοχός ποτε γενομένη, κατεστασμένη δ' ὑπὸ Ἀλεξάνδρου καὶ μένουσα ἔρημος. ἐντεῦθεν δ' ὑπερβασίης λέγεται χείλων διακοσίων ἐξήκοντα σταδίοις εἰς Ἀἴλαν 3 πόλιν ἐπὶ τῷ μυχῷ τοῦ Ἀραβίου κόλπου κειμένην διττὸς δ' ἐστὶν ὁ μὲν ἑχὼν εἰς τὸ 4 πρὸς τῇ Ἰραβίᾳ καὶ τῇ Γάζῃ μέρος, ὅπερ Ἀιλαύτην προσαγορεύοσιν ἀπὸ τῆς ἐν αὐτῷ πόλεως, ὁ δ' εἰς τὸ πρὸς Ἅγιοντῳ κατὰ τὴν Ἡρώων πόλιν, εἰς ὅπερ εἰς Πηλούσιον ὑπέρθεσις ἐπιτομωτέρα. δι' ἐρήμων δὲ καὶ ἄμμωδον χωρίων αἱ ὑπερβάσεις ἐπὶ καμάλων πολύν δὲ καὶ τῶν ἐρποτῶν εἰς αὐταῖς πλῆθος.

31. Μετὰ δὲ Γάζαν Ῥαφία, ἐν ἡ μάχη συνέβη

1 κρομμύων, Meineke; κρομμύων MSS.; κρομμύοις τ' ἀγαθή moz, Tzschucke and Corais.
2 After 'Επικούρειος the MSS. add γεγονός.
3 Ἀἴλαν, Meineke emends to Ἀἰλανα.
4 ὁ μὲν ἑχὼν εἰς τό, Kramer, for ὁ μὲν εἰς ἑχὼν τό.
the settlements all round. Thence to Mt. Casius near Pelusium the distance is a little more than one thousand stadia; and, three hundred stadia farther, one comes to Pelusium itself.

29. But in the interval one comes to Gadāris, which the Judaeans appropriated to themselves; and then to Azotus and Ascalon. The distance from Iamneia to Azotus and Ascalon is about two hundred stadia. The country of the Ascalonitae is a good onion-market, though the town is small. Antiochus the philosopher, who was born a little before my time, was a native of this place. Philo-demus, the Epicurean, and Meleager and Menippus, the satirist, and Theodorus, the rhetorician of my own time, were natives of Gadāris.

30. Then, near Ascalon, one comes to the harbour of the Gazaeans. The city of the Gazaeans is situated inland at a distance of seven stadia; it became famous at one time, but was rased to the ground by Alexander and remains uninhabited. Thence there is said to be an overland passage of one thousand two hundred and sixty stadia to Aela, a city situated near the head of the Arabian Gulf. This head consists of two recesses: one extending into the region near Arabia and Gaza, which is called Aelan-ites, after the city situated on it, and the other, extending to the region near Aegypt in the neighbourhood of the City of Heroes,¹ to which the overland passage from Pelusium is shorter; and the overland journeys are made on camels through desert and sandy places; and on these journeys there are also many reptiles to be seen.

31. After Gaza one comes to Rhaphia, where a

¹ Herōonpolis.
Πτολεμαίων τε τῷ τετάρτῳ καὶ Ἀντίοχῳ τῷ Μεγάλῳ. εἶτα Ὀρυσσέα, ἀπὸ τῶν εἰσοδευσμένων ἔκει τὸ παλαιόν ἀνθρώπων ἥκρωτηριασμένων τὰς ρίνας οὕτω καλουμένης τῶν γὰρ Λιθίστην τις, ἐπελθὼν ἐπὶ τὴν Αἰγυπτίων, αὕτη τοῦ ἀναρέθαν τοὺς κακοῦργους ἀποτέμνων τὰς ρίνας ἐντάθη κατάκιζεν, ὡς οὖκ ἂν ἦτο τολμήσοντας κακουργεῖν διὰ τὴν αἰσχύνην τῆς ὄψεως.

32. Καὶ αὕτη μὲν οὖν ἦ ἀπὸ Γάζης λυπρὰ πᾶσα καὶ ἀμμώδης· ἔτι δὲ μάλλον τοιαύτη ἡ C 760 ἐφεξῆς ὑπερκειμένη, ἔχουσα τὴν Σιρβωνίδα λίμνην παραλληλῶν πως τῇ θαλάσσῃ μικρὰν δίοδον ἀπολείπουσαν μεταξὺ μέχρι τοῦ Ἐκρήγματος καλουμένου, μήκος ὡς ὅσον διακοσίων σταδίων, πλάτος δὲ τὸ μέγιστον πεντήκοντα· τὸ δ' Ἐκρήγμα συγκέχομαι. εἶτα συμεχῆς ἀλλὰ τοιαύτη ἡ ἔτο τὸ Κάσιον, κάκειθεν ἐπὶ τὸ Πηλούσιον.

33. Ἡστὶ δὲ τὸ Κάσιον θινώδης τις λόφος ἀκρωτηρίαξων ἀνυόρος, ὅπου τὸ Πομπηίου τοῦ Μάγνου σῶμα κείται καὶ Διός ἔστιν ιερὸν Κασίων-πλησίον δὲ καὶ ἐσφάγῃ ὁ Μάγνος, δολοφονηθεῖς ὑπὸ τῶν Αἰγυπτίων. εἴθ' ἦ ἐπὶ Πηλούσιον ὄδος, ἐὰν ἦ τὰ Γέρρα καὶ ὁ Χαβρίον λεγόμενος χάραξι καὶ τὰ πρὸς τῷ Πηλούσιῳ βάραθρα, ἄ ποιεὶ παρεκχεόμενος ὁ Νεῖλος, φῦσει κοίλων καὶ ἐλωδῶν

1 Ὀρυσσέα: the spelling of the MSS. except E, which has Ὀρυσσέα (cp. readings in 16. 1, 12 and 16. 4, 24).
2 The words ἔκει . . . ἥκρωτηριασμένων are omitted in EF.
3 ἀναρέθαν τοὺς, ἀνελθεῖν Χύλανδρον, κατελθεῖν Corais; -εῖν, with the other letters erased, other MSS.
4 τοιαύτην ἦ ἐφεξῆς ὑπερκειμένη, the editors, for τοιαύτην ἐφεξῆς ὑπερκειμένην.

278
battle was fought between Ptolemaeus the Fourth and Antiochus the Great. Then to Rhinocolura, so called from the people with mutilated noses that had been settled there in early times; for some Aethiopian invaded Aegypt and, instead of killing the wrongdoers, cut off their noses and settled them at that place, assuming that on account of their disgraceful faces they would no longer dare do people wrong.

32. Now the whole of this country from Gaza is barren and sandy, but still more so is the country that lies next above it, which contains Lake Sirbonis, a lake which lies approximately parallel to the sea and, in the interval, leaves a short passage as far as the Ecregma, as it is called; the lake is about two hundred stadia in length and its maximum breadth is about sixty stadia; but the Ecregma has become filled up with earth. Then follows another continuous tract of this kind as far as Casius; and then one comes to Pelusium.

33. Casius is a sandy hill without water and forms a promontory; the body of Pompey the Great is buried there; and on it is a temple of Zeus Casius. Near this place Pompey the Great was slain, being treacherously murdered by the Aegyptians. Then comes the road to Pelusium, on which lie Gerrha and the Palisade of Chabrias, as it is called, and the pits near Pelusium. These pits are formed by side-flows from the Nile, the region being by nature

---

1 "Docked-nose-ville."
2 See 1. 3. 4 and 17. 1. 35.
3 *i.e.* "Outbreak" to the sea.
δοντών τῶν τόπων. τοιαύτη μὲν ἡ Φοινίκη. φησὶ δ' Ἀρτεμίδωρος εἰς τὸ Πηλοῦσιον ἐκ μὲν Ὄρθωσίας εἶναι σταδίουσ πρισχιλίουσ ἐξακοσίουσ πεντήκοντα κατακολπίζοντι· ἐκ δὲ Μελαιών ἡ Μελαιών τῆς Κιλικίας τῶν πρὸς Κέλενδεριν ἐπὶ μὲν τὰ μεθόρια τῆς Κιλικίας καὶ Συρίας χιλίουσ καὶ ἐννακοσίουσ· ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπὶ τῶν Ὄροντιν πεντακοσίουσ εἰκοσίων εἶτ' ἐπὶ Ὄρθωσίαν χιλίουσ ἐκατον τριάκοντα.

34. Τῆς δ' ὸουδαίας τὰ μὲν ἐσπέρια ἀκρὰ τὰ πρὸς τῷ Κασίῳ κατέχουσιν Ἰδουμαίοι τε καὶ ἡ λύμνη. Ἕλαβαται δ' εἰσὶν οἱ Ἰδουμαίοι· κατὰ στάσιν δ' ἐκπεσόντες ἐκείθεν προσεχώρησαν τοῖς ὸουδαίοις καὶ τῶν νομίμων τῶν αὐτῶν ἐκείνως ἐκουσώνησαν· πρὸς θαλάττῃ δὲ ἡ Σιρβώνις τὰ πολλὰ κατέχει1 καὶ ἡ συνεχὴς μέχρι Ἰεροσολύμων· καὶ γὰρ ταῦτα πρὸς θαλάττῃ ἐστίν· ἀπὸ γὰρ τὸν ἐπινείον τῆς Ἰόπης2 εἴρηται ὅτι ἐστὶν ἐν ὅψει. ταῦτα μὲν προσάρκτια· τὰ πολλὰ δ' ὡς ἐκαστὰ εἰσὶν ὑπὸ φύλων οἰκούμενα μικτῶν ἐκ τε Ἀιγυπτίων ἐθνῶν καὶ Ἁραβίων καὶ Φοινίκων τοιούτων γὰρ οἱ τὴν Γαλιλαίαν ἔχοντες καὶ τὸν Ἰερικούντα καὶ τὴν Φιλαδέλφιαν καὶ Σαμαρείαν, ἴν 'Ἡρώδης Ἐσβαστὴν ἐπωνόμασεν. οὕτω δ' ὄντων μυγάδων; ἡ κρατοῦσα μάλιστα φήμη τῶν περὶ τὸ ἱερὸν τὸ ἐν τοῖς Ἰεροσολύμοις πιστευομένων Ἀιγυπτίους ἀποφαίνει τοὺς προγόνους τῶν νῦν ὸουδαίων λεγομένων.

1 κατέχει, Casaubon, for κατέχε. 2 Ἰόπης CF.

1 See 14. 5. 3 and footnote.
GEOGRAPHY, 16. 2. 33-34

hollow and marshy. Such is Phoenicia. Artemidorus says that the distance to Pelusium from Orthosia is three thousand six hundred and fifty stadia, including the sinuosities of the gulfs; and from Melaenae, or Melaniae, in Cilicia, near Celen-deris, to the common boundaries of Cilicia and Syria, one thousand nine hundred; and thence to the Orontes River, five hundred and twenty; and then to Orthosia one thousand one hundred and thirty.¹

34. As for Judaea, its western extremities towards Casius are occupied by the Idumaeans and by the lake. The Idumaeans are Nabataeans,² but owing to a sedition they were banished from there,³ joined the Judeans, and shared in the same customs with them. The greater part of the region near the sea is occupied by Lake Sirbonis and by the country continuous with the lake as far as Jerusalem; for this city is also near the sea; for, as I have already said,⁴ it is visible from the seaport of Iopê. This region lies towards the north; and it is inhabited in general, as is each place in particular, by mixed stocks of people from Aegyptian and Arabian and Phoenician tribes; for such are those who occupy Galilee and Hiericus⁵ and Philadelphia and Samaria, which last Herod surnamed Sebastê.⁶ But though the inhabitants are mixed up thus, the most prevalent of the accredited reports in regard to the temple at Jerusalem represents the ancestors of the present Judeans, as they are called, as Aegyptians.

² An Arabian people (see 16. 4. 21).
³ Arabia Petraea (see 16. 4. 21).
⁴ 16. 2. 28.
⁵ Jericho.
⁶ i.e. in Latin, “Augusta,” in honour of Augustus Caesar.
35. Μοσῆς γάρ τις τῶν Αἰγυπτίων ιερέων, ἔχων τι μέρος τῆς κάτω⁴ καλουμένης χώρας, ἀυτῷ δἐν ἐκεῖσε ἐνθεῦδε, δυσχεράνας τὰ καθεστώτα, καὶ συνεξήραν αὐτῷ πολλοὶ τιμῶντες τὸ θείον. ἐφ' ὅλα ἐκεῖνος καὶ ἐδίδασκεν, ὡς οὐκ οὕρδως φρονοῖον οἱ Αἰγύπτιοι θηρίοις εἰκάζωντες καὶ βοσκῆμασι τὸ θείον, οὐδ' οἱ Αἴβνες. οὐκ εὖ δὲ εὖ δὲν οὐδ' οἱ "Ελληνες, ἀνθρωπομόρφοις τυποῦντες· εἰσὶ γὰρ ἐν τούτῳ μόνον θεός τὸ περεύχον ἡμᾶς ἀπαντάς καὶ γῆν καὶ θάλατταν, ὁ καλοῦμεν οὐρανὸν καὶ κόσμον καὶ τῶν τῶν οὐρανῶν φύσιν. τούτου δὴ τίς ἄν εἰκόνα πλάττειν θαρρήσει εὐνυ ἔχων όμοίαν τινὶ τῶν παρ' ἡμῖν; ἀλλ' εὖν δὲν ἐὰν πᾶσαν ξοανοποιαίν, τέμενος δὲ ἀφορίσαντας καὶ σηκῶν ἡξίολογον τιμᾶν ἔδως χωρίς· ἐγκού-μᾶσθαι δὲ καὶ αὐτοὺς ὑπὲρ ἕαντων καὶ ὑπὲρ τῶν ἀλλων ἄλλους τοὺς εὐονεῖρους· καὶ προσδοκῶν δὲν ἁγαθὸν παρὰ τοῦ θεοῦ καὶ δώρον ἅν τι καὶ σημείου τούς σωφρόνος ζώντας καὶ μετὰ δίκαιον-σύνης, τοὺς δ' ἄλλους μὴ προσδοκῶν.

36. Ἐκεῖνος μὲν οὖν τοιαῦτα λέγων ἐπεισεν εὐγνώμονας ἀνδρας οὐκ ὄλγους καὶ ἀπῆγαγεν ἐπὶ τὸν τόπον τοῦτον, ὅπου ὑν ἐστὶ τὸ ἐν τοῖς Ἰεροσολύμωις κτίσμα. κατέσχε δὲ ῥαδίως, οὐκ ἐπίθυμων ὃν τὸ χωρίον, οὐδ' ὑπὲρ οὐ ἂν τις ἐσποταμεύως μαχεσιτο. ἐστὶ γὰρ πετρώδες,

---

1 κάτω, Corais inserts.  
2 τινὶ, Casaubon, for τινὰ.  
3 δὲν, Corais, for δεὶ.  
4 δ', Corais inserts.  
5 ἔδως ἥ, αἴδοις FD, ἔδους other MSS.

1 Strabo evidently has in mind, among other forms of worship, the bull-worship of the Aegyptians. The bull was
GEOGRAPHY, 16. 2. 35–36

35. Moses, namely, was one of the Aegyptian priests, and held a part of Lower Aegypt, as it is called, but he went away from there to Judaea, since he was displeased with the state of affairs there, and was accompanied by many people who worshipped the Divine Being. For he said, and taught, that the Aegyptians were mistaken in representing the Divine Being by the images of beasts and cattle,¹ as were also the Libyans; and that the Greeks were also wrong in modelling gods in human form; for, according to him, God is this one thing alone that encompasses us all and encompasses land and sea—the thing which we call heaven, or universe, or the nature of all that exists. What man, then, if he has sense, could be bold enough to fabricate an image of God resembling any creature amongst us? Nay, people should leave off all image-carving, and, setting apart a sacred precinct and a worthy sanctuary, should worship God without an image; and people who have good dreams should sleep in the sanctuary, not only themselves on their own behalf, but also others for the rest of the people; and those who live self-restrained and righteous lives should always expect some blessing or gift or sign from God, but no other should expect them.

36. Now Moses, saying things of this kind, persuaded not a few thoughtful men and led them away to this place where the settlement of Jerusalem now is; and he easily took possession of the place, since it was not a place that would be looked on with envy, nor yet one for which anyone would make a serious fight; for it is rocky, and, although it itself worshipped by them as a symbol of the might and fatherhood of God.
αὐτὸ μὲν εὐνύδρον, τὴν δὲ κύκλῳ χώραν ἔχουν λυπρὰν καὶ ἀνυδρον, τὴν δ’ ἐντὸς ἐξήκοντα σταδίων καὶ υπόπετρον. ἀμα δ’ ἀντὶ τῶν ὅπλων τὰ ἱερὰ προβάλλετο καὶ τὸ θείον, Ἰδρυσιν τοῦτον ξητεῖν ἄξιῶν, καὶ παραδώσεων ὑπισχυούμενος τοιοῦτον σεβασμόν καὶ τοιαύτην ιεροποιίαν, ἦτις οὐτε δαπάναις ὁχλήσει τοὺς χρωμένους οὔτε θεοφορίαις οὔτε ἄλλαις πραγματείαις ἀτόποις.

οὗτος μὲν οὖν εὐδοκιμήσας τούτοις συνεστήσατο ἀρχὴν οὐ τὴν τυχοῦσαν, ὑπάντων προσχωρησάντων ῥαδίως τῶν κύκλῳ διὰ τὴν ὦμιλίαν καὶ τὰ προτεινόμενα.

37. Οἱ δὲ διαδεξάμενοι χρόνοις μὲν τινας ἐν τοῖς αὐτοῖς διέμενον δικαιοπραγούντες καὶ θεο-σεβεῖς ὡς ἀληθῶς οὔτε. ἔπειτ’ ἐφισταμένων ἐπὶ τὴν ἱερωσύνην τὸ μὲν πρῶτον δεσιδαιμόνων, ἔπειτα τυραννικῶν ἀνθρώπων, ἐκ μὲν τῆς δεσιδαιμονίας αἱ τῶν βρωμάτων ἀποσχέσεις, ὑπερ καὶ νῦν ἔθος ἑστὶν αὐτοῖς ἀπέχεσθαι, καὶ αἱ περιτομαὶ καὶ αἱ ἐκτομαὶ καὶ οἱ τινα τοιαύτα ἐνομίζθεν, ἐκ δὲ τῶν τυραννιδῶν τὰ ληστήρια. οἱ μὲν γὰρ ἀφιστάμενοι τὴν χώραν ἐκάκουν καὶ αὐτὴν καὶ τὴν γειτνίσιαν, οἱ δὲ συμπράττοντες τοῖς ἀρχουσί καθήρπαιξαν τὰ ἀλλότρια καὶ τῆς Συρίας κατεστρέφοντο καὶ τῆς Φοινίκης πολλὴν. ἦν δ’ ὡμος εὐπρέπεια τις περὶ τὴν ἀκρόπολιν αὐτῶν, οὐχ ὡς τυραννεῖον βδελυττομένων, ἀλλ’ ὡς ἵερον σεμνυνόντων καὶ σεβομένων.

1 ἐκτομαὶ Fl.;
2 τύραννον CDFhi; corrected in margin of DF.

1 So Tozer interprets. The Greek could mean that “the territory inside” the city, “sixty stadia” (in circumference) “is also rocky beneath the surface.”
is well supplied with water, its surrounding territory is barren and waterless, and the part of the territory within a radius of sixty stadia is also rocky beneath the surface.\(^1\) At the same time Moses, instead of using arms, put forward as defence his sacrifices and his Divine Being, being resolved to seek a seat of worship for Him\(^2\) and promising to deliver to the people a kind of worship and a kind of ritual which would not oppress those who adopted them either with expenses or with divine obsessions or with other absurd troubles. Now Moses enjoyed fair repute with these people, and organised no ordinary kind of government, since the peoples all round, one and all, came over to him, because of his dealings with them and of the prospects he held out to them.

37. His successors for some time abided by the same course, acting righteously and being truly pious toward God; but afterwards, in the first place, superstitious men were appointed to the priesthood, and then tyrannical people; and from superstition arose abstinence from flesh, from which it is their custom to abstain even to-day, and circumcisions and excisions\(^3\) and other observances of the kind. And from the tyrannies arose the bands of robbers;\(^4\) for some revolted and harassed the country, both their own country and that of their neighbours, whereas others, co-operating with the rulers, seized the property of others and subdued much of Syria and Phoenicia. But still they had respect for their acropolis, since they did not loathe it as the seat of tyranny, but honoured and revered it as a holy place.

---

\(^1\) i.e. a city and temple dedicated to His worship.

\(^2\) i.e. a city and temple dedicated to His worship.

\(^3\) i.e. of females (see 16. 4. 9).

\(^4\) See 16. 2. 28.
38. Πέφυκε γάρ οὕτω, καὶ κοινών ἐστὶ τοῦτο καὶ τοῖς "Ελλησι καὶ τοῖς βαρβάροις. πολιτικὸν γὰρ ὄντες ἀπὸ προστάγματος κοινοῦ ξώσιν: ἀλ-
λως γὰρ οὐχ οἶνον τε τοὺς πολλοὺς ἐν τι καὶ ταῦτο¹ ποιεῖν ἠμοσμένως ἀλλήλοις, ὥσπερ ἄν τὸ πολιτεύεσθαι, καὶ ἀλλὰς πως νέμειν βίον κοινὸν. ἦ τὸ δὲ πρόσταγμα διττὸν: ἢ γάρ παρὰ θεῶν ἢ
παρὰ ἀνθρώπων καὶ οἴ τε ἀρχαῖοι τὸ παρὰ τῶν 
θεῶν ἐπρέσβευσιν μᾶλλον καὶ ἐσέμνυσιν, καὶ διὰ 
τοῦτο καὶ ὁ χρηστηριαζόμενος ἥν τὸ τε πολὺς καὶ 
τρέχων εἰς μὲν Δωδώνην, ὅπως
ἐκ δρυὸς υψικόμοιο Δίος βουλήν ἐπακούσῃ,² 
συμβούλω τῷ Δίῳ χρώμενος, εἰς δὲ Δελφοῦς,
τὸν ἐκτεθέντα παῖδα μαστεύων μαθεῖν,
ei μηκέτε, ἔτη
αὐτῶς ὃ ὁ παῖς
ἐστειχε τοὺς τεκόντας ἐκμαθεῖν θέλων 
πρὸς ὅμων Φοῖβον.
καὶ ὁ Μίνως παρὰ τοῖς Κρήσιν
ἐννέωρος βασίλευε Δίος μεγάλον ὀαριστὴς:
δι᾽ ἐννέα ἑτῶν, ὡς φησι Πλάτων, ἀναβαίνων ἔπὶ 
τὸ ἄντρον τοῦ Δίου καὶ παρ᾽ ἐκεῖνον τὰ προσ-
τάγματα λαμβάνων καὶ παρακομίζων εἰς τοὺς 
ἀνθρώπους. τὰ δὲ ὅμως ἐποίει καὶ Δυκούργος
ὁ ξηλώτης αὐτοῦ: πυκνὰ γὰρ, ὡς ἐσικεῖν, ἀπο-
δημῶν ἐπυνθάνετο παρὰ τῆς Πυθίας, ἃ προσήκεν 
παραγγέλλειν τοῖς Δακεδαιμονίοις.

¹ κατ᾽ αὐτο, CDFhir, κατὰ ταῦτα moxe; emended by Corais. 286
38. For this is natural; and it is common to the Greeks and the barbarians; for, being members of states, they live under common mandates; for otherwise it would be impossible for the mass of people in any country to do one and the same thing in harmony with one another, which is precisely what life in a free state means, or in any other way to live a common life. And the mandates are twofold; for they come either from gods or from men; and the ancients, at least, held those from the gods in greater honour and veneration; and on this account men who consulted oracles were much in evidence at that time—men who ran to Dodona "to hear the will of Zeus from the high-tressed oak," 1 thus using Zeus as their counsellor, and also to Delphi, "seeking to learn whether the child which had been exposed to die was no longer alive;" 2 but the child himself "was on his way to the home of Phoebus, wishing to discover his parents." 3 And among the Cretans Minos "reigned as king, who held converse with great Zeus every ninth year," 4 every nine years, as Plato says, when he would go up to the cave of Zeus and receive decrees from him and carry them to the people. And Lycurgus, 5 his emulator, did likewise; for oftentimes, as it appears, he would go abroad to inquire of the Pythian priestess what ordinances it was proper for him to report to the Lacedaemonians.

1 Odyssey 14. 328.  2 Euripides, Phoen. 36.  3 Ibid. 34.  4 See 10. 4. 8 and footnote.  5 See 10. 4. 18.

2 ἐπακούσῃ, Corais, for ἐποκούσῃ.
39. Ταῦτα γὰρ ὅπως ποτὲ ἀληθείας ἔχει, παρὰ γε τοῖς ἀνθρώποις ἐπεπτυκτευτὸ καὶ ἐνενόμιστο, καὶ διὰ τοῦτο καὶ οἱ μάντεις ἑτερόντο, ὡστε καὶ βασιλείας ἀξιούσθαι, ὡς τὰ παρὰ τῶν θεῶν ἡμῖν ἐκφέροντες παραγγέλματα καὶ ἐπανορθώματα καὶ ξόντες καὶ ἀποθανόντες· καθάπερ καὶ ὁ Τειρεσίας,

tῶ καὶ τεθνητῶν νόσων πόρε Περσεφόνεια
οἵω πεπνύσθαι· τοι δὲ σκιαὶ ἀίσσουσι.

τοιούτος δὲ καὶ ὁ Ἀμφιάρεως καὶ ὁ Τροφώνιος καὶ ὁ Ὀρφεὺς καὶ ὁ Μονταίος καὶ ὁ παρὰ τοῖς Γέταις θεός, τὸ μὲν παλαιὸν Ζάμολξις, Πυθαγόρειος τις, καθ’ ἡμᾶς δὲ ὁ τῶν Βυρεβίστας θεσπίζων, Δεκάνεος· παρὰ δὲ τοῖς Βοσπορηνοῖς Ἀχαίκαρος, παρὰ δὲ τοῖς Ἰνδοῖς οἱ γυμνοσφισταὶ, παρὰ δὲ τοῖς Πέρσαις οἱ Μάγοι καὶ νεκυομάντεις καὶ ἐτὶ οἱ λεγόμενοι λεκανομάντεις καὶ ὕδρομάντεις, παρὰ δὲ τοῖς Ἀσσυρίοις οἱ Χαλδαῖοι, παρὰ δὲ τοῖς Ῥωμαίοις οἱ Τυρρηνικοὶ ὠροσκόποι.

τοιούτος δὲ τις ἦν καὶ ὁ Μωσῆς καὶ οἱ διαδεξάμενοι ἐκεῖνον, τὰς μὲν ἀρχὰς λαβόντες οὐ φαῦλας, ἐκτραπόμενοι δ’ ἐπὶ τὸ χείρον.

40. Ἡδὴ δ’ οὖν φανερῶς τυραννουμένης τῆς Ἰουνίας, πρῶτος ἄνθ’ ἱερέως ἀνέδειξεν ἑαυτὸν βασιλέα Ἀλέξανδρος· τοῦτον δ’ ἦσαν νῦι τοῦ Τοκανὸς τε καὶ Ἀριστόβουλος· διαφερομένων δὲ περὶ τῆς ἀρχῆς, ἐπῆλθε Πομπύριος καὶ κατέλυσεν αὐτούς καὶ τὰ ἔρυματα αὐτῶν κατέσπασε καὶ αὐτὰ

1 Meineke ejects the words καθάπερ . . . ἀίσσουσι.
2 Βυρεβίσθα CDFh, Βυρεβίθα i (see critical note, 7. 3. 5).

288
39. For these things, whatever truth there may be in them, have at least been believed and sanctioned among men; and for this reason the prophets too were held in so much honour that they were deemed worthy to be kings, on the ground that they promulgated to us ordinances and amendments from the gods, not only when they were alive, but also when they were dead, as, for example, Teiresias, "to whom even in death Persephone granted reason, that he alone should have understanding, whereas the others flit about as shadows." 1 Such, also, were Amphiaraus, Trophonius, Orpheus, Musaeus, and the god among the Getae, who in ancient times was Zamolxis, 2 a Pythagorean, and in my time was Decaeneus, 3 the diviner of Byrebistas; and, among the Bosporeni, Achaearus; and, among the Indians, the Gymnosophists; and, among the Persians, the Magi and the necromancers, as also the dish-diviners and water-diviners, as they are called; and, among the Assyrians, the Chaldaeans; and, among the Romans, the Tyrrenian nativity-casters. 4 Moses was such a person as these, as also his successors, who, with no bad beginning, turned out for the worse.

40. At any rate, when now Judaea was under the rule of tyrants, Alexander was first to declare himself king instead of priest; and both Hyrcanus and Aristobulus were sons of his; and when they were at variance about the empire, Pompey went over and overthrew them and rased their fortifica-

---

1 Odyssey 10. 494.  
2 See 7. 3. 5.  
3 7. 3. 5.  
4 Cf. 17. 1. 43.

---

3 ἱεροσκόποι, Corais emends to οἰωνοσκόποι; Letronne conj. ἱεροσκόποι.
ἐν πρώτοις τὰ Ἱεροσόλυμα βία καταλαβών· ἦν γὰρ πετρῶδες καὶ εὐερκεῖς ἔρυμα, ἐντὸς μὲν C 763 εὐνύδρον, ἐκτὸς δὲ παυτελῶς δυσηροῦν, τάφρον λατομητὴν ἔχον βάθος μὲν ἔξηκοντα ποδῶν, πλάτος δὲ πεντήκοντα καὶ διακοσίων· ἐκ δὲ τοῦ λίθου τοῦ λατομηθέντος ἐπετύργωτο τὸ τείχος τοῦ ἱεροῦ. κατελάβετο δ’, ὡς φασί, τηρήσας τὴν τῆς νηστείας ἧμεραν, ἣνίκα ἀπείχοντο οἱ Ἰου- δαίοι παντὸς ἐργοῦ, πληρώσας τὴν τάφρον καὶ ἐπιβαλὼν τὰς διαβάθρας· καταστάσαι δ’ οὖν ἐκέλευσε τὰ τείχη πάντα καὶ ἀνέβησαν εἰς δύναμιν τὰ ληστήρια καὶ τὰ γαζοφυλάκια τῶν τυράννων. ἦν δὲ δύο μὲν τὰ ταῖς εἰσβολαῖς ἐπικείμενα τοῦ Ἱερικοῦντος Ὀρήξ τε καὶ Ταῦρος, ἀλλὰ δὲ Ἀλε- ξανδρίων τε καὶ Ἡρκάυνον καὶ Μαχαιρών 2 καὶ Λυσίας 3 καὶ τὰ περὶ τὴν Φιλαδέλφιαν καὶ ἦ περὶ Γαλιλαίαν Σκυθόπολις.

41. Ἱερικόος δ’ ἔστι πεδίων κύκλῳ περιεχόμενου ὀρενή τυι καὶ ποῦ καὶ θεατροειδῶς πρὸς αὐτὸ κεκλιμένη· ἐνταῦθα δ’ ἔστιν οἱ φοινικῶν, μεμε- γμένην ἔχων καὶ ἀλλήν ὑλὴν ἡμερον καὶ ἐὔκαρ- πον, πλεονάζων δὲ τὸ φοινικὸ, ἐπὶ μῆκος σταδίων ἐκατόν, διάρρυτος ἄπας καὶ μεστὸς κατοικίων· ἔστι δ’ αὐτοῦ καὶ βασίλειον καὶ ὁ τοῦ βασάμων παράδεισος· ἔστι δὲ τὸ φυτὸν θαμνῶδες, κυτίσφ ἐοικὸς καὶ τερμίνθψ, ἀρωματίζον· οὐ τὸν φλοίον ἐπισχίσαντες ὑπολαμβάνουσιν ἀγγείοις τὸν ὅτὸν,

1 καταλαβῶν, Casaubon, for καταβαλῶν.
2 After Maxairopous w adds Λύδας.
3 After Λυσίας F adds καὶ Λύδας.

1 i.e. Palm-grove. 2 Built by Herod the Great.
tions, and in particular took Jerusalem itself by force; for it was a rocky and well-walled fortress; and though well supplied with water inside, its outside territory was wholly without water; and it had a trench cut in rock, sixty feet in depth and two hundred and sixty feet in breadth; and, from the stone that had been hewn out, the wall of the temple was fenced with towers. Pompey seized the city, it is said, after watching for the day of fasting, when the Judaeans were abstaining from all work; he filled up the trench and threw ladders across it; moreover, he gave orders to rase all the walls and, so far as he could, destroyed the haunts of robbers and the treasure-holds of the tyrants. Two of these were situated on the passes leading to Hiericus, I mean Threx and Taurus, and others were Alexandrium and Hyrcanium and Machaerus and Lysias and those in the neighbourhood of Philadelphia and Scythopolis in the neighbourhood of Galilaea.

41. Hiericus is a plain surrounded by a kind of mountainous country, which, in a way, slopes towards it like a theatre. Here is the Phoenicon,¹ which is mixed also with other kinds of cultivated and fruitful trees, though it consists mostly of palm trees; it is one hundred stadia in length, and is everywhere watered with streams and full of dwellings. Here are also the palace ² and the balsam park. The balsam is of the shrub kind, resembling cytisus ³ and terminthus,⁴ and has a spicy flavour. The people make incisions in the bark and catch the juice in vessels. This juice is a glutinous, milk-

³ *Medicago Arborea.*
⁴ *The terebinth tree, Pistacia terebinthus (cf. 15. 2. 10).*


STRABO

γλίσχρφ γάλακτι παραπλήσιον· ἀναληθεῖς δ' εἰς κογχάρια λαμβάνει πῆξιν· λύει δὲ κεφαλαλγίας θανμαστῶς καὶ υποχύσεις ἀρχομένας καὶ ἀμβλυωπίας· τίμιος οὖν ἐστι, καὶ διότι ἐνταθα μόνον γεννᾶται· καὶ οὐ φοινικῶς δὲ τοιοῦτος, ἔχων τὸν καρυωτὸν φόνικα ἐνταθὰ μόνον, πλὴν τοῦ Βαβυλώνιου καὶ τοῦ ἐπέκεινα πρὸς τὴν ἑώ· μεγάλη οὖν ἂν αὐτῶν ἡ πρόσοδος· καὶ τῷ ξυλοβαλάμῳ δὲ ὡς ἀρόματι χρῶνται.

42. Ἡ δὲ Σιρβωνίς λίμη πολλῇ μὲν ἐστι· καὶ γὰρ χελών σταδίων εἰρήκασί τινες τὸν κύκλον· τῇ μέντοι παραλία παρεκτέταται μικρῷ τι πλέον τῶν διακοσίων σταδίων μήκος ἐπὶλαμβάνουσα, ἀγχιβάθης, βαρύτατον ἔχουσα ὑδωρ, ὡςτε μὴ δείν κολύμβου, ἀλλὰ τὸν ἐμβάντα καὶ μέχρις ὀμφαλοῦ προβάντα ἕυθὺς ξειρεσθαί· μεστή δὲ ἐστὶν ἀσφάλτου· αὕτη δὲ ἀναφυσάται κατὰ καιροὺς ἀτάκτους ἐκ μέσου τοῦ βάθους μετὰ πομφολύγων, ὡς ἂν ζέοντος ὑδατος· κυρτουμένη δὲ ἐπιφάνεια λόφου φαντασίαν παρέχει· συναναφέρεται δὲ καὶ ἀσβόλος πολλή, κατνώδης μέν, πρὸς δὲ τὴν ὤψιν ἅδηλος, ύφ' ἢς κατιοῦται καὶ χαλκὸς καὶ ἄργυρος καὶ πάν τὸ στιλπνὸν μέχρι καὶ χρυσοῦ· ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ κατιοῦσθαι τὰ σκεύη γνωρίζουσιν οἱ περιοικοῦντες ἀρχομένη τὴν ἀναβολὴν τοῦ ἀσφάλτου, καὶ παρασκευάζονται πρὸς τὴν μεταλλείαιν αὐτοῦ, ποιησάμενοι σχεδίας

1 προεμβάντα CDFhi, προελθόντα x. προβάντα is omitted by the Epit. and Meineke.
2 τοῦτο, after αὕτη, is ejected by Groskurd and Meineke.
3 Instead of ἀσβόλος, E reads ἀσβαλος, F ἀσβῶλος, and the Epit. βῶλος.

292
white substance; and when it is put up in small quantities it solidifies; and it is remarkable for its cure of headache and of incipient cataracts and of dimness of sight. Accordingly, it is costly; and also for the reason that it is produced nowhere else. Such is also the case with the Phoenicon, which alone has the caryotic palm, excepting the Babylonian and that beyond Babylonia towards the east. Accordingly, the revenue derived from it is great. And they use the xylo-balsam as spice.

42. Lake Sirbonis is large; in fact some state that it is one thousand stadia in circuit; however, it extends parallel to the coast to a length of slightly more than two hundred stadia, is deep to the very shore, and has water so very heavy that there is no use for divers, and any person who walks into it and proceeds no farther than up to his navel is immediately raised afloat. It is full of asphalt. The asphalt is blown to the surface at irregular intervals from the midst of the deep, and with it rise bubbles, as though the water were boiling; and the surface of the lake, being convex, presents the appearance of a hill. With the asphalt there arises also much soot, which, though smoky, is imperceptible to the eye; and it tarnishes copper and silver and anything that glistens, even gold; and when their vessels are becoming tarnished the people who live round the lake know that the asphalt is beginning to rise; and they prepare to collect

1 Palma caryota, with walnut-like fruit.

2 Apparently the liquid obtained from the branches when cut off.

3 Strabo seems obviously to be confusing the Asphaltites Lacus (the Dead Sea) with Lake Sirbonis, which latter "broke through to the Mediterranean Sea" (see 1. 3. 4 and 1. 4. 7).
On a recent visit to the Dead Sea (December, 1929), the translator found that Strabo's whole account is substantially correct. As for floating, a very corpulent person could walk out only up to the navel before floating, but a very lean person up to the shoulders.
it by means of rafts made of reed. The asphalt is a clod of earth, which at first is liquefied by heat, and is blown up to the surface and spreads out; and then again, by reason of the cold water, the kind of water the lake in question has, it changes to a firm, solidified substance, and therefore requires cutting and chopping; and then it floats, because of the nature of the water, owing to which, as I was saying, there is no use for divers; and no person who walks into it can immerse himself either, but is raised afloat. They reach the asphalt on rafts and chop it and carry off as much as they each can.

43. Such, then, is the fact in the case; but according to Poseidonius the people are sorcerers and pretend to use incantations, as also urine and other malodorous liquids, which they first pour all over the solidified substance, and squeeze out the asphalt and harden it, and then cut it into pieces; unless there is some suitable element of this kind in urine, such, for example, as chrysocolla, which forms in the bladder of people who have bladder-stones and is derived from the urine of children. It is reasonable that this behaviour should occur in the middle of the lake, because the source of the fire and also the greater part of the asphalt is at the middle of it; but the bubbling up is irregular, because the movement of the fire, like that of many other subterranean blasts, follows no order known to us. Such, also, are the phenomena at Apollonia in Epeirots.

2 Literally, "gold-solder." The translator does not know what the word means in the above passage, whether malachite (carbonate of copper), or borate of soda, or what.

3 See 7. 5. 8.
44. Τοῦ δ’ ἐμπυροῦ τὴν χώραν εἶναι καὶ ἄλλα τεκμηρία φέρουσι πολλά καὶ γὰρ πέτρας τυνὰς ἐπικεκαμένας δεικνύουσι τραχείας περὶ Μοασάδα καὶ σήραγγας πολλαχοῦ καὶ γῆν τεθρώδη, σταγόνας τε πίσσης ἐκ λισσάδων λειβομένας καὶ δυσώδεις πόρρωθεν ποταμοὺς ζέοντας, κατοικίας τε ἀνατετραμμένας σποράδην ὅστε πιστεύειν τοὺς θρυλουμένους ὑπὸ τῶν ἐγχωρίων, ὡς ἄρα ὕκοντό ποτε τρισκαϊδέκα πόλεις ἐνταῦθα, ὃν τῆς μητροπόλεως Σοδόμων σῶξοιτο κύκλος ἔξηκοντα ποὺ σταδίων ὑπὸ δὲ σεισμῶν καὶ ἀναφυσιμάτων πυρός καὶ θερμῶν ὑδάτων ἀσφαλτωδῶν τε καὶ θειωδῶν ἡ λίμνη προπέσου καὶ πέτραι πυρίληπτοι γένοιτο, αἰ τε πόλεις αἰ μὲν καταποθείει, ὃς δ’ ἐκλίποιεν οἱ δυνάμειοι φυγεῖν. Ἔρατοσθένης δὲ φησὶ τάναντία, λιμναζύσης τῆς χώρας, ἐκρήγμασιν ἀνακαλυφθῆναι τὴν πλείστην, καθ’ ἄπερ τὴν θάλατταν.\footnote{C 765} Εστὶ δὲ καὶ ἐν τῇ Γαδαρίδι ὑδωρ μοχθηρὸν λιμναῖον, οὐ τὰ γενσάμενα κτήνη τρίχας καὶ ὀπλάς καὶ κέρατα ἀποβάλλει. ἐν δὲ ταῖς καλουμέναις Ταριχέαις\footnote{2 Tαριχεῖας} ἡ λίμνη μὲν ταριχείας ἰχθύων ἄστειας παρέχει, φύει δὲ δένδρα καρποφόρα, μηλέαις ἐμφερὴ χρῶνται δ’ Αἰγύπτιοι τῇ ἀσφάλτῳ πρὸς τὰς ταριχείας τῶν νεκρῶν.

45. Ἅρματα ἂν οὖν περικόψας τινὰ τῶν

1 Θάλατταν, Corais emends to Θετταλίαν.
2 Ταριχεῖας F, Ταριχείας; emended by Tzschucke.
44. Many other evidences are produced to show that the country is fiery; for near Moasada are to be seen rugged rocks that have been scorched, as also, in many places, fissures and ashy soil, and drops of pitch dripping from smooth cliffs, and boiling rivers that emit foul odours to a great distance, and ruined settlements here and there; and therefore people believe the oft-repeated assertions of the local inhabitants, that there were once thirteen inhabited cities in that region of which Sodom was the metropolis, but that a circuit of about sixty stadia of that city escaped unharmed; and that by reason of earthquakes and of eruptions of fire and of hot waters containing asphalt and sulphur, the lake burst its bounds, and rocks were enveloped with fire; and, as for the cities, some were swallowed up and others were abandoned by such as were able to escape. But Eratosthenes says, on the contrary, that the country was a lake, and that most of it was uncovered by outbreaks, as was the case with the sea.¹

45. In Gadaris, also, there is noxious lake water; and when animals taste it they lose hair and hoofs and horns. At the place called Taricheae the lake supplies excellent fish for pickling; and on its banks grow fruit-bearing trees resembling apple trees. The Aegyptians use the asphalt for embalming the bodies of the dead.

46. Now Pompey clipped off some of the territory that had been forcibly appropriated by the Judaeans,

¹ i.e. the lake burst its bounds in a number of places, as did the Mediterranean at the Pillars (see 1. 2. 31), if the text is correct. But it is most probable that Strabo wrote “as was the case with Thessaly” (see 9. 5. 2, and Herodotus 7. 129), as suggested by Corais and Kramer (see critical note).
απεδειξεν Ἡρώδη 1 τὴν ἱερωσύνην τῶν δ' ἀπὸ γένους τις 2 ύστερον Ἡρώδης, ἀνήρ ἑπιχώριος, παραδός εἰς τὴν ἱερωσύνην, τοσοῦτον διήνεγκε τῶν πρὸ αὐτοῦ, καὶ μάλιστα τῇ πρὸς Ῥωμαίοις ὀμιλίᾳ καὶ πολιτείᾳ, ὡστε καὶ βασιλεὺς ἐχρημάτισε, δόντος τὸ μὲν πρῶτον Ἀντωνίου τὴν ἐξουσίαν, ύστερον δὲ καὶ Καίσαρος τοῦ Σεβαστοῦ τῶν δ' υἱῶν τους μὲν αὐτὸς ἀνείλεν, ὡς ἐπιβουλευσάντας αὐτῷ, τοὺς δὲ τελευτῶν διαδόχους ἀπέλιπτε, μερίδας αὐτοῖς ἀπὸδοὺς. Καίσαρ δὲ καὶ τοὺς υἱοὺς ἐτίμησε τοῦ Ἡρώδου καὶ τὴν ἀδελφὴν Σαλώμην καὶ τὴν ταύτης θυγατέρα Βερενίκην· οὐ μέντοι εὐτύχησαν οἱ παιδεῖς, ἀλλ' ἐν αὐτίας ἐγένοντο, καὶ ὁ μὲν ἐν φυγῇ διετέλει, παρὰ τοὺς Ἀλλόβριξ Γαλάταις λαβὼν οἰκήσων, οἱ δὲ θεραπεία πολλὴ μόλις εὔροντο κάθοδον, τετραρχίας ἀποδειχθείσης ἐκατέρω.

III

1. Ἐπερκείται δὲ τῆς Ιουδαίας καὶ τῆς Κοίλης Συρίας μέχρι Βαβυλωνίας καὶ τῆς τοῦ Εὐφράτου ποταμίας πρὸς νότον Ἀραβία πᾶσα χωρίς τῶν ἐν τῇ Μεσοποταμία Σκηνίτων. περὶ μὲν οὖν τῆς Μεσοποταμίας καὶ τῶν νεομένων αὐτὴν ἐθνῶν εἰρηναι· τὰ δὲ πέραν τοῦ Εὐφράτου τὰ μὲν πρὸς ταῖς ἐκβολαῖς αὐτοῦ νέμονται Βαβυλώνιοι καὶ τὸ τῶν

1 Ἡρώδη, Corais emends to Ἰρκανψ.
2 τις ἵς, τισίν, other MSS.
and appointed Herod to the priesthood; but later a certain Herod, a descendant of his and a native of the country, who slinked into the priesthood, was so superior to his predecessors, particularly in his intercourse with the Romans and in his administration of affairs of state, that he received the title of king, being given that authority first by Antony and later by Augustus Caesar. As for his sons, he himself put some of them to death, on the ground that they had plotted against him; and at his death left others as his successors, having assigned to them portions of his kingdom. Caesar also honoured the sons of Herod and his sister Salomê and her daughter Berenicê. However, his sons were not successful, but became involved in accusations; and one of them spent the rest of his life in exile, having taken up his abode among the Allobroges Galatae, whereas the others, by much obsequiousness, but with difficulty, found leave to return home, with a tetrarchy assigned to each.

III

1. Above Judaea and Coelê-Syria, as far as Babylonia and the river-country of the Euphrates towards the south, lies the whole of Arabia, with the exception of the Scenitae in Mesopotamia. Now I have already spoken of Mesopotamia and the tribes that occupy it; but as for the parts on the far side of the Euphrates, those near its outlets are occupied by Babylonians and the tribe of the

1 Hyrcanus, apparently. 2 Archeläus. 3 Antipas and Philip. 4 16. 1. 26 ff.
Χαλδαίων ἕθνος (εἴρηται δὲ καὶ ¹ περὶ τούτων), τὰ δ’ ἐξής τῆς Μεσοποταμίας μέχρι Κοίλης Συρίας, τὸ μὲν πλησιάζον τῷ ποταμῷ καὶ τὴν Μεσοποταμίαν. Σκηνίται κατέχουσιν Ἀραβὲς, δυναστείας ἀποτετμημένοι μικρὰς ἐν λυπρῶις χωρίοις διὰ τὰς ἀνυδρίας, γεωργοῦντες μὲν ἡ ῥοῖν ἡ μικρά, νομᾶς δὲ ἔχουν ταυτοδαπῶν θρεμμάτων, καὶ μάλιστα καμήλων ὑπὲρ δὲ τούτων ἔρημος ἐστὶ πολλῆς τὰ δὲ τούτων ἐτὶ νοτιώτερα ἔχουσιν οἱ τὴν εὐδαίμονα καλουμένην Ἀραβίαν οἰκούντες. ταύτης δὲ τὸ μὲν προσάρκιον πλευρὸν ἡ λεχθεισά ἐστιν ἔρημος, τὸ δ’ ἐφὸν ὁ Περσικὸς κόλπος, τὸ δὲ ἐστήριον ὁ Ἀράβιος, τὸ δὲ νότιον ἡ μεγάλῃ θάλαττα ἡ ἔξω τῶν κόλπων ἁμφοῖν, ἢν ἀπασάν Ἐρυθρὰν καλοῦσιν.  

2. Ὁ μὲν οὖν Περσικὸς κόλπος λέγεται καὶ ἡ κατὰ Πέρσας θάλαττα: φησὶ δὲ περὶ αὐτῆς Ἐρατοσθένης οὕτως, ὅτι τὸ μὲν στόμα φησίν εἶναι στενὸν οὕτως, ὥστ’ ἐξ Ἀρμόζων, τοῦ τῆς Καρμανίας ἀκρωτηρίου, τῆς Ἀραβίας ἀφοράται τὸ ἐν Μάκαισ ἀπό δὲ τοῦ στόματος ἡ ἐν δεξιᾷ παραλίᾳ περιφερής οὕσα κατ’ ἀρχὰς μὲν ἀπὸ τῆς Καρμανίας πρὸς ἐω μικρόν, εἶτα πρὸς ἄρκτον νεῦει, καὶ μετὰ τάντα πρὸς τὴν ἐσπέραν μέχρι Τερηδόνου καὶ τῆς ἐκβολῆς τοῦ Ἐυφράτου περιέχει δὲ τὴν τε Καρμανίων παραλίαν καὶ τὴν

C 766 Περσῶν καὶ Σουσίων καὶ Βαβυλώνιων ἀπὸ μέρους, ὅσον μυρίων οὕσα ² σταθὼν περὶ δὲν καὶ ἡμεῖς εἰρήκαμεν τὸ δ’ ἐντεῦθεν ἔξης ἐπὶ τὸ στόμα πάλιν ἅλλω τοσοῦτοι, καθάπερ καὶ Ἀνδροσθένη

¹ καὶ is omitted by all MSS. except x.

300
GEOGRAPHY, 16. 3. 1–2

Chaldaeans, of whom I have already spoken; and of those parts that follow after Mesopotamia as far as Coelê-Syria, the part that lies near the river, as well as Mesopotamia, is occupied by Arabian Scenitae, who are divided off into small sovereignties and live in tracts that are barren for want of water. These people till the land either little or none, but they keep herds of all kinds, particularly of camels. Above these people lies an extensive desert; but the parts lying still farther south than their country are held by the people who inhabit Arabia Felix, as it is called. The northern side of Arabia Felix is formed by the above-mentioned desert, the eastern by the Persian Gulf, the western by the Arabian Gulf, and the southern by the great sea that lies outside both gulfs, which as a whole is called Erythra.

2. Now the Persian Gulf is also called the Persian Sea; and Eratosthenes describes it as follows: its mouth, he says, is so narrow that from Harmozi, the promontory of Carmania, one can see the promontory at Macae in Arabia; and from its mouth the coast on the right, being circular, inclines at first, from Carmania, slightly towards the east, and then towards the north, and, after this, towards the west as far as Teredon and the outlet of the Euphrates; and it comprises the coast of the Carmanians and in part that of the Persians and Susians and Babylonians, a distance of about ten thousand stadia. I have already spoken of these peoples. And thence next to its mouth it extends another ten thousand stadia, as stated, Eratosthenes says, by

16. 1. 6.  i.e. "Red" Sea.  15. 2. 14 ff.

2 oδσα D, oδσαν other MSS.
λέγειν φησὶ τὸν Θάσιον, τὸν καὶ Νεάρχῳ συμπλεύσαντα καὶ ἕκαστὸν ὅστε δῆλον ἐκ τούτων εἶναι, διότι μικρὸν ἀπολείπεται τῷ μεγέθει τῆς κατὰ τὸν Εὐξεινὸν θαλάσσης αὐτή ἡ θαλάττα· λέγειν δὲ φησὶν ἐκεῖνον περιπτεπλευκότα στόλῳ τὸν κόλπον, ὅτι ἀπὸ Τερηδόνος ἔξῆς ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχοντι τὴν ἥπειρον ὁ παράπλους ἔχει προκειμένην νῆσον Ἰκαρὸν, καὶ ἱερὸν Ἀπόλλωνος ἁγιον ἐν αὐτῇ καὶ μαντείον Ταυροπόλου.

3. Παραπλέυσαντι δὲ τὴς Ἀραβίας εἰς δισχελίους καὶ τετρακόσιους σταδίους ἐν βαθεί κόλπῳ κείται πόλις Θέρρα, Χαλδαίων φυγάδων ἐκ Βαβυλῶνος οἰκούντων γῆν ἀλμυρίδα καὶ ἐχόντων ἄλινας τὰς οἰκίας, ἂς, ἐπειδὴ λεπίδες τῶν ἄλων ἀφιστάμεναι κατὰ τὴν ἐπίκαυσιν τὴν ἕκ τῶν ἠλίων συνεχεῖς ἀποπίπτουσι, καταρραίνοντες ύδασι πυκνά τῶν τοίχων συνέχουσι· διέχει δὲ τῆς θαλάσσης διακόσιους σταδίους ἡ πόλις· πεζέμποροι δ' εἰσών οἱ Γερραίοι τὸ πλέον τῶν Ἀραβίων φορτίων καὶ ἀρομάτων. Ἀριστόβουλος δὲ τούναυτίον φησὶ τοὺς Γερραίους τὰ πολλά σχεδίαις εἰς τὴν Βαβυλωνίαν ἐμπορεύεσθαι, ἐκείθεν δὲ τῷ Εὐφράτῃ τὰ φορτία ἀναπλεῖν εἰς Θάψακον, ἐτα πεζῆ κομιδείσθαι πάντη.

4. Πλεύσαντι δ' ἐπὶ πλέον ἄλλαι νῆσοι, Τύρος καὶ Ἁραδός, εἰςίν, ἱερὰ ἐχουσι τοῖς Φοινικικοῖς ὑμοια· καὶ φασὶ γε οἱ ἐν αὐτοῖς οἰκούντες τὰς ὀμοιόμοις τῶν Φοινικῶν νῆσοις καὶ πόλεις ἀποίκους ἑαυτῶν. διέχουσι δὲ αἱ νῆσοι αὐταί

1 καὶ, Tyrwhitt inserts before καθ'.
2 Ἰκαρον E. Ἰκαρον other MSS.
3 γῆν, Meineke, for τὴν.
4 ἀρομάτων i, ἀροματικῶν other MSS.
Androstenes the Thasian, who made the voyage, not only with Nearchus but also on his own account; so that it is clear from this that this sea is but little short of the Euxine in size; and Eratosthenes says that Androstenes, who sailed round the gulf with a fleet, states that in making the coasting voyage, with the continent on the right, one sees next after Teredon the island Icarus and a temple sacred to Apollo in it and an oracle of Tauropolus.¹

3. After sailing along the coast of Arabia for a distance of two thousand four hundred stadia, one comes to Gerrha,² a city situated on a deep gulf; it is inhabited by Chaldaeans, exiles from Babylon; the soil contains salt and the people live in houses made of salt; and since flakes of salt continually scale off, owing to the scorching heat of the rays of the sun, and fall away, the people frequently sprinkle the houses with water and thus keep the walls firm. The city is two hundred stadia distant from the sea; and the Gerrhaeans traffic by land, for the most part, in the Arabian merchandise and aromatics, though Aristobulus says, on the contrary, that the Gerrhaeans import most of their cargoes on rafts to Babylonia, and thence sail up the Euphrates with them, and then convey them by land to all parts of the country.

4. On sailing farther, one comes to other islands, I mean Tyre and Aradus, which have temples like those of the Phoenicians. It is asserted, at least by the inhabitants of the islands, that the islands and cities of the Phoenicians which bear the same name are their own colonies. These islands are

¹ *i.e.* Artemis Tauropolus.  
² Now Adjer.

---

⁵ φοινικοῖς CDh, φοινικικοίς o, φοινικίοις xx.
Τερηδόνος μὲν δεχήμερον πλοῦν, τῆς δὲ κατὰ τὸ στόμα ἄκρας τῆς ἐν Μάκαις ἡμερήσιον.

5. 'Απὸ δὲ τῆς Καρμανίας εἰρήκασι καὶ Νέαρχος καὶ Ὀρθαγόρας νῆσον "Ωγυρίν"1 κείσθαι πρὸς νότον πελαγίαν ἐν δισχιλίοις στάδιοις, ἐν ἂν τάφος Ἕρυθρα δείκνυται, χῶμα μέγα ἀγρίως φοίνιξι κατάφυτον τοῦτον ἑπὶ βασιλεύει καὶ τοὺς τόπους καὶ ἀπ' αὐτοῦ τὴν θάλασσαν ἐπώνυμον καταλιπεὶν δηλῶσαι δὲ ταύτα φήσιν αὐτοῖς Μιθρωπάστην τὸν Ἀρσίτου2 τοῦ Φυγίας σατράπον, φυγόντα μὲν Δαρείων, διατρίβαντα δ' ἐν τῇ νῆσῳ, συμμίξαντα δὲ αὐτοῖς καταχθείσιν εἰς τὸν Περσικὸν κόλπον καὶ ζητοῦντα κάθοδον δ' αὐτῶν εἰς τὴν οἰκείαν.

6. Καθ' ὀλυμ̄ δὲ τὴν τῆς Ἕρυθρᾶς παραλίαν κατὰ βυθὸν φύεται δένδρα ὁμοία δάφνη καὶ ἐλαιά, ταῖς μὲν ἀμπώτισιν ὀλα ὑπερφανή γιγνόμενα, ταῖς δὲ πλημμυρίσιν ἐσθ' ὅτε ἄλα καλυπτόμενα, καὶ ταύτα τῆς ὑπερκειμένης γῆς ἀδένδρου οὐσίας, ὡστε C767 ἐπιτείνεσθαι3 τὸ παράδοξον. περὶ μὲν οὖν τῆς κατὰ Πέρσας θαλάττης, ἢν ἔφαν πλευράν ἐφαμέν εἶναι τῆς εὐδαίμονος 'Ἄραβίας, τοιαῦτα εἰρήκεν Ἕρατοσθῆνης.

7. Φησὶ δ' ὁ Νέαρχος τὸν Μιθρωπάστην ἐντυχεὶν αὐτοῖς μετὰ Μαζήνου· τὸν δὲ Μαζήνην ἐπάρχειν νῆσον τινὸς τῶν ἐν τῷ Περσικῷ κόλπῳ καλείσθαι δὲ τὴν νῆσον 'Οάρακτα·4 εἰς ταύτην δὲ τὸν Μιθρωπάστην καταφυγόντα ξενίας τυχεὶν

1 Ογυρίν, Kramer, for Τυρίνην CDFhixz, Τυρρηνήν Ε, "Ωγυρίνο Corais.
2 Ἀρσίτου, Meineke, for Ἀρηίνου.
3 ἐπιτείνεσθαι, Corais, for ἐπιγίνεσθαι.

304
distant a ten days' sail from Teredon and a one day's sail from the promontory near the mouth of the gulf at Macae.

5. Both Nearchus and Orthagoras state that the island Ogyris lies in the high sea at a distance of two thousand stadia from Carmania, and that on it is to be seen the grave of Erythras, a large mound planted with wild palm trees; and that Erythras reigned as king over that region and left the sea named after himself.\(^{1}\) Nearchus says that these things were pointed out to them by Mithropastes, the son of Aristes, which latter was satrap of Phrygia; and that the former was banished by Dareius, took up his residence in the island, joined them when they landed in the Persian Gulf, and sought through them to be restored to his homeland.

6. Along the whole of the coast of the Red Sea, down in the deep, grow trees like the laurel and the olive, which at the ebb tides are wholly visible above the water but at the full tides are sometimes wholly covered;\(^{2}\) and while this is the case, the land that lies above the sea has no trees, and therefore the peculiarity is all the greater. Such are the statements of Eratosthenes concerning the Persian Sea, which, as I was saying, forms the eastern side of Arabia Felix.

7. Nearchus says that they were met by Mithropastes, in company with Mazenes; that Mazenes was ruler of an island in the Persian Gulf; that the island was called Oaracta; that Mithropastes took refuge, and obtained hospitality, in this island upon

\(^{1}\) i.e. the "Erythraean" (Red) Sea.
\(^{2}\) Coral Reefs, apparently.

4 'Oarakt\(\)a, Corais and Meineke, for Δ\(\)ρακτ\(\)α πο\(\)ξ\(\), Δ\(\)ρακτ\(\)α other MSS., Δ\(\)ρα Stephanus.
STRABO

κατὰ τὴν ἐξ 'Ὡγύριος 1 γενομένην ἄφοδου, καὶ δὴ καὶ συνελθεῖν τῷ Μαζήνῃ 2 συσταθησόμενον τοῖς ἐν τῷ στόλῳ Μακεδόσι, τὸν δὲ Μαζήνην καὶ καθηγεμόνα τοῦ πλοῦ γενέσθαι. Λέγει δὲ καὶ ἐν ἀρχῇ τοῦ Περσικοῦ παράπτου νῆσου, ἐν ἡ μαργαρίτης πολὺς καὶ πολυτίμητος ἐστὶν, ἐν ἀλλαίς δὲ· ψήφοι τῶν διανυγών καὶ λαμπρῶν· ἐν δὲ ταῖς πρὸ τοῦ Εὐφράτου νῆσως δεύδρα φύσει λιβάνου πνέουτα, ὥν τὰς βίζας κλωμένων ὑπὸν ἰθε'ν παγούρων δὲ καὶ ἐξίνων μεγέθη, ὅπερ κοινῶν ἐν πάσῃ τῇ ἐξω θαλάττῃ τοὺς μὲν γὰρ εἶναι μείζους καυσίων, τοὺς δὲ καὶ δικοτύλους· ἐποκείλαν δὲ κῆτος ἰδεῖν πεντήκοντα πηχῶν.

IV

1. Ἀρχῇ δὲ τῆς Ἀραβίας ἀπὸ τῆς Βαβυλωνίας ἐστὶν ἡ Μαικηνή 3 πρόκειται δὲ ταύτης τῇ μὲν ἡ ἐρήμος τῶν Ἀράβων, τῇ δὲ τὰ ἔλη τὰ κατὰ Χαλδαίους, ἀ ποιεὶ παρακεχομένος ὁ Εὐφράτης, τῇ δὲ ἡ κατὰ Πέρσας θάλαττα, δυσάερος 4 οὖσα καὶ ὀμίχλωδης καὶ ἐπομβρος ἀμα καὶ καυματηρά, καλλίκαρπος 5 ἐστὶν ὦμως· ἡ δ' ἄμπελος ἐν ἑλεσι

1 'Ὡγύριος, Tzschucke and Kramer and Meineke, for ὲγύρου.
2 Μαζήνῃ, Tzschucke, for Ἀμαζήνῃ.
3 Μαικηνή appears to be an error for Μαισηνή (or Μεσηνή). Cp. Μεσηνῆς (2. 1. 31) and Μεσηνῶν (16. 1. 8).
4 δὲ, after δυσάερος, Corais deletes.
his departure from Ogyris; that, furthermore, Mithropastes had a conference with Mazenes for the purpose of being recommended by him to the Macedonians in the fleet; and that Mazenes became guide in their voyage. Nearchus goes on to say that there is an island at the beginning of the Persian Gulf where quantities of valuable pearls are to be found; and that in other islands there are pebbles of transparent and brilliant stones; and that in the islands off the mouth of the Euphrates there are trees which smell like frankincense, and that juice flows from their roots when they are broken in pieces. And he speaks of the large size of the crabs and sea-urchins, which is a common thing in the whole of the exterior sea; for, he adds, some are larger than hats \(^1\) and others as large as a vessel holding two cotylæ; \(^2\) and he says that he saw a whale stranded on the beach that was fifty cubits \(^3\) in length.

IV

1. Arabia commences on the side of Babylonia with Maecenê. In front of Maecenê, on one side, lies the desert of the Arabians; and on another side lie the marshes opposite the Chaldaeans, which are formed by diversions of water from the Euphrates; and on another side lies the Persian Sea. The country has foul air, is misty, and is subject both to rains and to scorching heat; but still its products are excellent. The vine grows in the marshes, as

\(^1\) The Greek word implies the broad-brimmed felt hats worn by the Macedonians.

\(^2\) \(i.e.\) nearly a pint.

\(^3\) About 100 feet.

\(^5\) δέ, Corais inserts.
STRABO

φύται, καλαμίναις ρυζίν έπιβαλλομένης γῆς, ὅση δέξατ' ἀν τὸ φυτόν, ὅστε φορητὴν γίνεσθαι πολλάκις, εἶτα κοντοῖς ἀπωθείσθαι πάλιν εἰς τὴν οἰκέιαν ἔδραν.

2. Ἐπάνεμι δὲ ἐπὶ τὰς Ἑρατοσθένους ἀποφάσεις, ὡς ἄξης περὶ τῆς Ἀραβίας ἐκτίθεται. φησὶ δὲ περὶ τῆς προσαρκτίου καὶ ἔρήμης, ἦτες ἐστὶ μεταξὺ τῆς τε εὐδαίμονος Ἀραβίας καὶ τῆς Κοιλοσύνης τοῦ Ἱουδαίων, μέχρι τοῦ μυχοῦ τοῦ Ἀραβίου κόλπου, διότι ἀπὸ Ἰερών πόλεως, ἦτες ἐστὶ πρὸς τῷ Νείλῳ μυχὸς τοῦ Ἀραβίου κόλπου, πρὸς μὲν τὴν Ναβαταίων Πέτραν εἰς Βαβυλώνα πεντακισχίλιοι ἐξακόσιοι, πᾶσα μὲν πρὸς ἀνατολᾶς θερινὰς, διὰ δὲ τῶν παρακαμένων Ἀραβίων έθνῶν Ναβαταίων τε καὶ Χαυλοταίων καὶ Ἀγραίων ὑπὲρ δὲ τούτων ἡ Εὐδαίμων ἔστιν, ἐπὶ μυρίους καὶ δισεκιλίους ἐκκειμένη σταδίους πρὸς νότον μέχρι τοῦ Ἀτλαντικοῦ πελάγους. ἔχουσι δὲ αὐτὴν οἱ μὲν πρῶτοι μετά τοὺς Σύρους καὶ τοὺς Ἱουδαίους ἀνθρωποὶ γεωργοὶ: μετὰ δὲ τούτων διάμμος ἐστὶ γῆ καὶ λυπρὰ, φοίνικας ἔχουσα ὅλης καὶ ἀκανθαν καὶ μυρίκην καὶ ὅρυκτα ὑδάτα, καθάπερ καὶ ἡ Γεδρωσία, σκηνίται δὲ ἔχουσιν αὐτὴν C 768 Ἀραβεῖς καὶ καμηλοβοσκοί. τὰ δ’ ἐσχατα πρὸς νότον καὶ ἀνταίροντα τῇ Αἰθιοπίᾳ βρέχεται τε θερινοὶς ὁμβροῖς καὶ δισπορεῖται παραπλησίως τῇ Ἰνδικῇ, ποταμοῦ δ’ ἔχει καταναλισκομένους εἰς πεδία καὶ λίμνας. εὔκαρπία δ’ ἐστὶν ἥ τε ἄλλη

1 Corais and Meineke insert ἐν τῷ after ἐστὶ, and emend μυχὸς to μυχῷ, but cp. ἐστὶ δ’ ἡ Ἀλωρος τὸ μυχαίτατον τοῦ Θερμαίου κόλπου (Book VII, Frag. 20), and οὕτως (i.e. the recess of the Arabian Gulf referred to) ὄνομάζεται Ποσειδίων.
much earth being thrown on hurdles of reeds as the plant may require; so that the vine is often carried away, and then is pushed back again to its proper place by means of poles.

2. But I return to Eratosthenes, who next sets forth his opinions concerning Arabia. He says concerning the northerly, or desert, part of Arabia, which lies between Arabia Felix and Coelê-Syria and Judæa, extending as far as the recess of the Arabian Gulf, that from the City of Heroes, \(^1\) which forms a recess of the Arabian Gulf near the Nile, the distance in the direction of the Petra of the Nabataeans to Babylon is five thousand six hundred stadia, the whole of the journey being in the direction of the summer sunrise \(^2\) and through the adjacent countries of the Arabian tribes, I mean the Nabataeans and the Chaulotaeans and the Agraeans. Above these lies Arabia Felix, which extends for a distance of twelve thousand stadia towards the south, to the Atlantic Sea. The first people who occupy Arabia Felix, after the Syrians and Judaeans, are farmers. After these the soil is sandy and barren, producing a few palm-trees and a thorny tree \(^3\) and the tamarisk, and affording water by digging, as is the case in Gedrosia; \(^4\) and it is occupied by tent-dwellers and camel-herds. The extreme parts towards the south, lying opposite to Aethiopia, are watered by summer rains and are sowed twice, like India; \(^5\) and the rivers there are used up in supplying plains and lakes. The country

---

\(^1\) Herōonpolis.
\(^2\) i.e. north-east (cf. Vol. I, p. 105, note 1).
\(^3\) Apparently the *Mimosa Nilotica*.
\(^4\) i.e. well-water (see 15. 2. 3).
\(^5\) See 15. 1. 20 and 17. 3. 11.
STRABO

καὶ μελιτουργεῖα δαψιλῆ ὑπονήματοι τε ἀφθονία πλὴν ἵππων καὶ ἰμιόνων καὶ ὑδών, ὃρνεά τε παντοτά πλὴν χηνῶν καὶ ἀλεκτορίδων. κατοικεῖ δὲ τὰ μέγιστα τέτταρα ἔθνη τῆς ἐσχάτης λεχθεῖσαν χώραν. Μιναιῶν μὲν ἐν τῷ πρὸς τὴν Ἑρυθρὰν μέρει, πόλις δ' αὐτῶν ἡ μεγίστη Κάρνα ἡ Κάρνα. ἔχομενοι δὲ τούτων Σαβαίοι, μητρόπολις δ' αὐτῶν Μαρίαβα τρίτοι δὲ Κατταβανεῖς, καθήκοντες πρὸς τὰ στενὰ καὶ τὴν διάβασιν τοῦ Ἀραβίου κόλπου, τὸ δὲ βασίλειον αὐτῶν Τάμνα καλεῖται. πρὸς ἐως δὲ μάλιστα Χαταραμωτῖται, πόλιν δὲ ἔχουσι Σάβαταν.

3. Μοναρχοῦνται δὲ πᾶσαι καὶ εἰςιν εὐδαίμονες, κατεσκευασμέναι καλῶς ἱεροῖς τε καὶ βασιλείωσιν; αἱ τε οἰκίαι ταῖς Λίγυπτιαῖς ἑοίκαισι κατὰ τὴν τῶν ξύλων ἐνδεισιν χώραν δ' ἐπέχουσι οἱ τέτταρες νομοὶ μεῖξο τοῦ κατ' Λίγυπτον Δέλτα. διαδέχεται δὲ τὴν βασιλείαν οὐ παῖς παρὰ πατρὸς, ἀλλ' ὡς ἀν πρῶτος γενεήθη τινι τῶν ἐπιφανῶν παῖς μετὰ τὴν κατάστασιν τοῦ βασιλέως, ἀμα γὰρ τῷ κατασταθῆναι τινα εἰς τὴν ἀρχὴν ἀναγράφονται τὰς ἐγκύους γναίκας τῶν ἐπιφανῶν άιδρῶν, καὶ ἐφιστάσαι φύλακας: ἦτις δ' άπὸ πρώτη τέκη, τὸν ταύτης 4 υἱὸν νύμος ἐστὶν ἀναληφθέντα τρέφεσθαι βασιλικῶς, ὡς διαδέχομενου.

4. Φέρει δὲ λιβανωτὸν μὲν ἡ Κατταβανία, σμύρναν δὲ ἡ Χαταραμωτῖτες; καὶ ταύτα δὲ καὶ τὰ ἀλλὰ ἀρώματα μεταβάλλονται τοῖς ἐμπόροις.

1 Μιναιῶν E, Μιναιῶν Dhi, Μεναιῶν other MSS.
2 F has ἡ Καρανά, CDh Karaná, ὁς ἡ Καρανά; Emoz omit.
3 δ', after ἦτις, Corais inserts.
4 ταύτης, the editors, for αὐτῆς.

310
is in general fertile, and abounds in particular with places for making honey; and, with the exception of horses and mules and hogs, it has an abundance of domesticated animals; and, with the exception of geese and chickens, has all kinds of birds. The extreme part of the country above-mentioned is occupied by the four largest tribes; by the Minaeans, on the side towards the Red Sea, whose largest city is Carna or Carnana; next to these, by the Sabaeans, whose metropolis is Mariaba; third, by Cattabanians, whose territory extends down to the straits and the passage across the Arabian Gulf, and whose royal seat is called Tamna; and, farthest toward the east, the Chatramotitae, whose city is Sabata.  

3. All these cities are ruled by monarchs and are prosperous, being beautifully adorned with both temples and royal palaces. And the homes are like those of the Aegyptians in respect to the manner in which the timbers are joined together. The four jurisdictions cover more territory than the Aegyptian Delta; and no son of a king succeeds to the throne of his father, but the son of some notable man who is born first after the appointment of the king; for at the same time that some one is appointed to the throne, they register the pregnant wives of their notable men and place guards over them; and by law the wife’s son who is born first is adopted and reared in a royal manner as future successor to the throne.

4. Cattabania produces frankincense, and Chatramotitis produces myrrh; and both these and the other aromatics are bartered to merchants. These

---

1 Now Marib.  
2 Also spelled Sabattha; now Sawa.  
3 The gum of the libanus tree.
ēρχονται δὲ πρὸς αὐτοὺς ἐξ Αιλάνων μὲν εἰς Μυναίαν ἐν ἔβδομήκοντα ἡμέραις· ἔστι δ’ ἡ Αιλάνα πόλις ἐν θατέρῳ μυχῷ τοῦ Ἀραβίου κόλπου, τῷ κατὰ Γάζαν τῷ Αιλανίτῃ καλουμένῳ, καθάπερ εἰρήκαμεν. Οὔππαροι 1 δ’ εἰς τὴν Χατραμωτίτιν εἶν τετταράκοντα ἡμέραις ἀφικνοῦνται. τοῦ δ’ Ἀραβίου κόλπου τὸ μὲν παρὰ τὴν Ἀραβίαν πλευρὰν ἀρχομένους ἀπὸ τοῦ Αιλανίτου μυχοῦ, καθάπερ οἱ περὶ Ἀλέξανδρον ἀνέγραψαν καὶ Ἀναξικράτη, μυρίους καὶ τετρακισχιλίων σταδίων ἐστίν’ εὑρηται δὲ ἐπὶ πλέον. τὸ δὲ κατὰ τὴν Τρωγλοῦτικήν, ὁπερ ἐστίν ἐν δεξίᾳ ἀποπλέουσιν ἀπὸ Ἡρώων πόλεως, μέχρι μὲν Πτολεμαίδος καὶ τῆς τῶν ἑλεφάντων θῆρας, ἐνακισχίλιοι πρὸς μεσημβρίαν στάδιοι καὶ μικρὸν ἐπὶ τὴν ἔως ἐνετέθην δὲ μέχρι τῶν στενῶν, ὡς τετρακισχίλιοι C 769 καὶ πεντακόσιοι πρὸς τὴν ἔως μᾶλλον. ποιεὶ δὲ ἀκρα τὰ στενά πρὸς τὴν Αἰθιοπίαν, Δειρῆ καλουμένη, καὶ πολίχνιον ὁμώνυμον αὐτῇ κατοικοῦσι δὲ Ἰχθυοφάγοι. καὶ φασιν ἔνταῦθα στῆλην εἶναι Σεσώστριος τοῦ Ἀιγυπτίου, μηνύουσαν ἱερῶς γράμματι τῶν διάβασιν αὐτοῦ. φαίνεται γὰρ τὴν Αἰθιοπίδα καὶ τὴν Τρωγλοῦτικὴν πρώτος καταστρεφάμενος οὕτως, εἶτα διαβάζοις εἰς τὴν Ἀραβίαν, καντεῦθεν τὴν Ἀσίαν ἐπελθὼν τὴν σύμπασαν διὸ δὴ πολλαχοῦ Σεσώστριος χάρακες προσαγορεύονται, καὶ ἀφιδρύματά ἐστιν Αἰγυπτίων θεῶν ἱερῶν. τὰ δὲ κατὰ Δειρῆ στενὰ συνάγεται εἰς σταδίους ἐξήκοντα· οὐ μὴν ταῦτα γε καλεῖται νυνὶ στενά, ἀλλὰ προσπλεύσασιν ἀπωτέρω, καθὸ τὸ μὲν διαρμὰ ἐστὶ τὸ μεταξὺ τῶν ἱπείρων δια-

1 Γερραῖοι EFmgo, Λαβαίοι; other MSS.
arrive there in seventy days from Aelana (Aelana is a city on the other recess of the Arabian Gulf, the recess near Gaza called Aelanites, as I have said before), but the Gerrhaeans arrive at Chatramotitis in forty days. The part of the Arabian Gulf along the side of Arabia, beginning at the Aelanites recess, is, as recorded by Alexander’s associates and by Anaxicrates, fourteen thousand stadia, though this figure is excessive; and the part opposite the Trogloodytie country (which is on the right as one sails from the City of Heroes), as far as Ptolemaïs and the country where elephants are captured, extends nine thousand stadia towards the south and slightly in the direction of the east; and thence, as far as the straits, four thousand five hundred stadia, in a direction more towards the east. The straits are formed towards Aethiopia by a promontory called Deiré, and by a town bearing the same name, which is inhabited by the Ichthyophagi. And here, it is said, there is a pillar of Sesostris the Aegyptian, which tells in hieroglyphics of his passage across the gulf; for manifestly he was the first man to subdue the countries of the Aethiopians and the Trogloodytes; and he then crossed into Arabia, and thence invaded the whole of Asia; and accordingly, for this reason, there are in many places palisades of Sesostris, as they are called, and reproductions of temples of Aegyptian gods. The straits at Deiré contract to a width of sixty stadia. However, it is not these that are called straits now, but a place farther along on the voyage, where the voyage across the gulf between

---

1 Now Kasr-el-Akaba.
2 Now Azzah.
3 16. 2. 30.
4 "Neck."
5 Fish-eaters.
Strabo

κοσίων πού σταδίων, ἡς δὲ νήσοι συνεχεῖς ἄλλη- λαίς τὸ δίαρμα ἐκπληροῦσαι στενῶς τελέως διάπλους ἀπολείπουσι, δι’ ὅν σχεδίαις τὰ φορτία κομίζουσι δεύρο κάκεισε, καὶ λέγουσι ταύτα στενά. μετὰ δὲ τὰς νήσους ὁ ἐξῆς πλοῦς ἐστὶν ἐγκολπίζουσι παρὰ τὴν σμυρνοφόρον ἐπὶ τὴν μεσημβρίαν ἁμα καὶ τὴν ἐω μέχρι πρὸς τὴν τὸ κινάμωμον φέρουσαν, ὡςον πεντακισχίλιον στα- δίων' πέρα δὲ ταύτης ὀυδένα ἀφίχθαι φασί μέχρι νῦν. πόλεις δ' ἐν μὲν τῇ παραλία μὴ πολλὰς εἶναι, κατὰ δὲ τὴν μεσόγαιαν πολλὰς οἰκουμένας καλῶς. τὰ μὲν δὴ τοῦ 'Ερατοσθένους περὶ τῆς 'Αραβίας τοιαύτα' προσθέτεον δὲ καὶ τὰ παρὰ τῶν ἄλλων.

δ. Φησὶ δ' Ἀρτεμίδωρος τὸ ἀντικείμενον ἐκ τῆς Ἀραβίας ἀκρωτήριον τῇ Δειρῆ καλεῖσθαι Ἀκίλλαν τοὺς δὲ περὶ τὴν Δειρῆν κολοβοὺς εἶναι τὰς Βαλάνους. ἀπὸ δὲ Ἡρώων πόλεως πλέουσι κατὰ τὴν Τρωγλοδυτικήν πόλιν εἶναι Φιλωτέραν ἀπὸ τῆς ἀδελφῆς τοῦ δευτέρου Πτολεμαίου προσαγορευθέον, Σατύρου κτίσμα τοῦ πεμφ- θέντος ἐπὶ τὴν διερεύνησιν τῆς τῶν ἑλεφάντων θήρας καὶ τῆς Τρωγλοδυτικής εἶτα ἄλλην πόλιν Ἀρσινόην εἶτα θερμῶν ὑδάτων ἐκβολὰς πικρῶν καὶ ἀλμυρῶν, κατὰ πέτρας τινὸς ψυχής ἐκδι- δόντων εἰς τὴν θάλατταν, καὶ πλησίον ὄρος ἐπὶ ἐν πεδίῳ μιλτῶδες εἶτα Μυὸς ὄρμον, δὲν ἦν Ἀφροδίτης όρμον καλεῖσθαι, λιμένα μέγαν, τὸν εἰσπλουν ἔχοντα σκολιὸν προκεῖσθαι δἐ νήσους τρεῖς, δύο μὲν ἐλαίας κατασκίους, μίαν δ' ἦττον

1 δν is omitted by all MSS. except E.
the two continents is about two hundred stadia, and where are six islands, which follow one another in close succession, fill up the channel, and leave between them extremely narrow passages; through these merchandise is transported from one continent to the other; and for these the name "straits" is used. After the islands, the next voyage, following the sinuosities of the bays, along the myrrh-bearing country in the direction of south and east as far as the cinnamon-bearing country, is about five thousand stadia; and to the present time, it is said, no one has arrived beyond that country; and though there are not many cities on the coast, there are many in the interior that are beautifully settled. Such, then, is Eratosthenes' account of Arabia; but I must also add the accounts of the other writers.

5. Artemidorus says that the promontory on the Arabian side opposite to Deirê is called Acila; and that the males in the neighbourhood of Deirê have their sexual glands mutilated. As one sails from the City of Heroes along the Troglodytic country, one comes to a city Philotera, which was named after the sister of the second Ptolemy, having been founded by Satyrus, who had been sent for the purpose of investigating the Troglodytic country and the hunting of elephants. Then to another city, Arsinoê. Then to springs of hot water, salty and bitter, which flow down a high rock and empty into the sea. Near by, in a plain, is a mountain that is red as ruddle. Then one comes to Myus Harbour, which is also called Aphrodite's Harbour; it is a large harbour with a winding entrance, off which lie three islands; two of these are densely shaded with olive trees, while

1 See 16. 2. 37, and 16. 3. 5, 9, 10.
κατάσκιον, μελεαγρίδων μεστήν εἰδ' ἔξης τὸν Ἀκάθαρτον κόλπον, καὶ αὐτὸν κατὰ τὴν Θηβαίδα κείμενον, καθάπερ τὸν Μυός ὄρμον, ὡςως ἔφη Ἀκάθαρτον καὶ γὰρ ὕφαλοις χοιράσει καὶ ραχίας ἐκτετράχυνται καὶ πυοῖς καταγιγζούσαις τὸ C 770 πλέον. ἐνταῦθα δὲ ἱδρύσατι Βερενίκην πόλιν ἐν βάθει τοῦ κόλπου.

6. Μετὰ δὲ τὸν κόλπον ἡ Ὀφιώδης καλουμένη νῆσος ἀπὸ τοῦ συμβεβηκότος, ἤν ἠλευθέρωσε τῶν ἐρπετῶν ὁ βασιλεύς, ἀμα καὶ διὰ τὸς φθορὰς τῶν προσορμιζομένων ἄνθρωπων τὰς ἐκ τῶν θηρίων καὶ διὰ τὰ τοπάζα. έθος δὲ ἐστὶ διαφανῆς χρυσοειδες ἀποστίλβων 2 φέγγος, ὅσον μεθ' ἡμέραν μὲν οὐ ράδιον ἰδεῖν ἐστὶ (περιανυγεί- ται 3 γάρ), νῦκτορ δ' ὀρώσιν οἱ συλλέγοντες· περικαθάναντες δὲ ἀγγείον σημείου χάριν μεθ' ἡμέραν ἀνορύττουσι· καὶ ἢν σύστημα ἄνθρωπων ἀποδεδειγμένων εἰς τὴν φυλακὴν τῆς λιθεῖας ταύτης καὶ τὴν συναγωγήν, σιταρκούμενον 4 ὑπὸ τῶν τῆς Αἰγύπτου βασιλέων.

7. Μετὰ δὲ τὴν νῆσον ταύτην πολλά ἐστὶν Ἰχθυοφάγων γένη καὶ Νομάδων' εἰθ' ὁ τῆς Σωτείρας λιμῆν, ὃν ἐκ κινδύνων μεγάλων τιμῆς σωθέντες τῶν ἡγεμόνων ἀπὸ τοῦ συμβεβηκότος οὕτως ἐκάλεσαν. μετα δὲ ταύτα ἐξάλλαξις πολλὴ τῆς παραλίας καὶ τοῦ κόλπου τὸν γὰρ παρά- πλοιν οὐκέτι συμβαίνει τραχύν εἶναι, συνάπτειν τέ πως τῇ Ἀραβία, καὶ τὸ πέλαγος ταπεινοῦν

1 ὡςως F, οὕτως Dh, οὕτω other MSS.
2 ἄπολάμπων CE mouc.
3 ὑπερανυγείται E (Kramer approving); περιανυγείται other MSS.
the third is less so and is full of guinea-fowls. Then, next, one comes to the Acathartus Gulf, which also, like Myus Harbour, lies opposite Thebaīs, and is really "acarthartus," for it is roughened by reefs and submarine rocks, and, most of the time, by tempestuous winds. And here, deep inland on the recess of the gulf, lies a city Berenicē.

6. After the gulf, one comes to the island Ophiodes, so called from the fact in the case; but it was freed from the serpents by the king, both because of their destruction of the people who landed there and on account of the topazes found there. Topaz is a transparent stone that sparkles with a golden lustre—so dimly in the day-time, however, that one cannot easily see it (for it is outshone by the rays of the sun), but those who collect it see it at night, place a vessel over it as a sign and dig it up in the day-time. There was an organisation of people who were appointed by the kings of Aegypt to keep guard over this stone and the collecting of it; and this organisation was supplied by them with provisions.

7. After this island one comes to many tribes of Ichthyophagi and Nomads. And then to the Harbour of Soteira, which was so called from the fact in the case by certain commanders who had been saved from great dangers. After this there is a great change in the coast and the gulf; for the coasting voyage is no longer rough, and in a way closely approaches Arabia; and the sea is as low, I

---

1 *Numida Meleagris.*  
2 *i.e.* "Foul."  
3 *i.e.* "Snaky."  
4 *i.e.* "Saviour" (some goddess).

---

4 *σιταρχούμενον*, Corais, for *σιταρχόμενον*.  
317
eînai, σχεδόν τι καὶ ἐπὶ δύο ὀργυιάς, πούζεων τε τὴν ἐπιφάνειαν διαφανομένου τοῦ μύου καὶ τοῦ φύκους, ὁπερ πλεούζει κατὰ τὸν πόρον ὅπου γε καὶ δένδρα φύεται καθ’ ύδατος παρὰ τοῖς ἑνταῦθα: ἔχει δὲ καὶ κυνῶν πλῆθος τῶν θαλαττῶν ὁ πόρος· εἰθ’ οἱ Ταῦροι, δύο ὀρῃ τύπων τινὰ πόρρωθεν δεικνύτα τοῖς ξύφοις ὁμοιον. εἰτ’ ἄλλο ὀρὸς ἱερὸν ἔχου τῆς Ίσιδος, Σέσωστριος ἀφίδρυμα: εἶτα νήσος ἐλαῖα κατάφυτας ἐπικλυζομένη οἷς ἢ τὴν Πτολεμαίας πρὸς τῇ θῆρᾳ τῶν ἐλεφάντων, κτίσμα Εὐμήδους τοῦ πεμφέντος ἐπὶ τὴν θῆραν ὑπὸ Φιλάδέλφου, λάθρα περίβαλλον ¹ χερ- 

8. Ἐν δὲ τῷ μεταξὺ ἐκδίδωσιν ἀπόσπασμα τοῦ Ἄσταβόρα καλουμένου ποταμοῦ, δε ὡς λίμνης τὴν ἀρχὴν ἔχουν μέρος μὲν τὸ ἐκδίδωσι, τὸ δὲ πλέον συμβάλλει τῷ Νεῖλῳ· εἶτα νήσοι εὗς Λατο- 

μίαι καλοῦμεναι καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα τὸ Σαβατικόν στῶμα λεγόμενον καὶ ἐν τῇ μεσογαίᾳ φρούριον, Τοσούχον ἀφίδρυμα: εἶτα λιμὴν καλούμενον Ἑλαία ⁴ καὶ ἡ Στράτωνος νῆσος· εἶτα λιμὴν Σαβᾶ καὶ κυνίγην ἐλεφάντων, ὀμώνυμον αὐτῷ. ἢ δ’ ἐν βάθει τούτων χώρα Τηνεσσίς λέγεται:

1. περιβαλλομένον, Corais, for περιβαλλομένον.
2. κατεσκευασμένονς CDFh.
3. Τοσούχον E, Corais, Kramer, and Meineke; τὸ Σούχον other MSS. C. Müller plausibly conj. φρούριον τι, Σούχον ἀφίδρυμα (ἐπ. Σούχος, 17. 1. 38).
4. Ἑλεά FDh, and E has αι above ε.

¹ "Tauri" means "Bulls."
might almost say, as two fathoms in depth; and the surface is covered, grass-like, with sea-weeds and rock-weeds that are visible below the surface—a thing still more in evidence at the strait, where, among the plants, even trees grow down below the water; and the strait has also a large number of sea-dogs. Then one comes to the Tauri, two mountains which from a distance present the outlines of the animals. Then to another mountain, which has a temple sacred to Isis, a reproduction built by Sesostris. Then to an island planted with olive trees and subject to inundation; and after this to Ptolemaïs, near the hunting-grounds for elephants, a city founded by Eumedes, who had been sent to the hunting-grounds by Philadelphus; Eumedes secretly enclosed a kind of peninsula with a ditch and wall, and then, by courteous treatment of those who tried to hinder the work, actually won them over as friends instead of foes.

8. In the interval there empties a branch of the Astaboras River, as it is called, which, having its source in a lake, empties a part of its waters, but for the most part joins the Nile. Then one comes to six islands called Latomiae; and then to the Sabaïtic mouth, as it is called, and to a fortress in the interior which was founded by Tosuches. And then to a harbour called Elaea and to the island of Strato. And then to a harbour called Saba and to a hunting-ground for elephants of the same name. The country deep in the interior is called Tenessis;

2 i.e. of an Aegyptian temple.
3 Ptolemy Philadelphus.
4 i.e. into the gulf.
5 Quarries.
έχουσι δ' αυτὴν οἱ παρὰ Ψαμμιτίχου φυγάδες

C 771 Ἀγινπτίων' ἐπονομάζονται δὲ Σεμβρίται,1 ὡς ἂν ἐπτήλυδες βασιλεύονται δ' ύπὸ γυναίκος, ύφ' ἡν 2 ἐστὶ καὶ ἡ Μερόη, πλησίον τῶν τόπων οὕσα τούτων ἐν τῷ Νείλῳ νήσος, ὑπὲρ ἡς ἄλλη ἐστὶ νῆσος οὐ πολὺ ἀποθέθεν ἐν τῷ ποταμῷ, κατοικίᾳ τῶν αὐτῶν τούτων φυγάδων. ἀπὸ δὲ Μερόης ἕπι τὴν ἡμέραν εὐξώνῳ ὂδὸς ἡμερῶν πεντεκαίδεκα. περὶ δὲ τὴν Μερόην καὶ ἡ συμβολὴ τοῦ τε Ἀσταβώρα καὶ τοῦ Ἀστάπου καὶ ἐτὶ τοῦ Ἀστασόβα 3 πρὸς τὸν Νείλον.

9. Παροικοῦσι δὲ τούτοις οἱ 'Ριζοφάγοι καὶ Ἕλειοι προσαγορευόμενοι διὰ τὸ ἐκ τοῦ παρακειμένου ριζοτομοῦντας ἑλοὺς κόπτειν λίθους καὶ ἀναπλάσσειν μάζας, ἠλιάσαντες δὲ σιτεῖσθαι· λευτόβατα δ' ἐστὶ τὰ χωρία· ταῖς θ' ύπὸ κυνὸς ἐπιτόλην ἡμέραις ύπὸ κωνώπων μεγάλων ἑξελαύνεται τὰ θηρία ἐκ τῶν τόπων. εἰσὶ δὲ καὶ Σπερμοφάγοι πλησίον, οὐ τῶν σπερμάτων ἐπιλπόντων ἀπὸ 4 τῶν ἀκροδρύων τρέφονται, σκενάζοντες παραπλησίως, ὡσπερ τὰς ρίζας οἱ 'Ριζοφάγοι. μετὰ δὲ τὴν Ἑλαίαν 5 αἱ Δημητρίαν 6 σκοποῦσι καὶ βωμοὶ Κόνωνος· ἐν δὲ τῇ μεσογαίᾳ καλάμων Ἰνδικῶν φύεται πλῆθος· καλεῖται δὲ ἡ χώρα Κορακίου. ἤν δὲ τὶς ἐν βάθει Ἐνδέρα, γυμνητῶν ἀνθρώπων κατοικία, τὸξον χρωμένων καλαμίνως καὶ πεπυρακτωμένοις οἴστοις· ἀπὸ

1 Σεμβρίται, Corais, for Σαβρίται F, Σεβρίται other MSS.
2 ἢς DEFhw.
3 'Αστασόβα Corais, for 'Αστασόβα margin of F, 'Ασταγάβα other MSS.
4 ἀπὸ, Meineke, for ὑπὸ.

320
and it is occupied by the Aegyptians who went there as exiles from Psammitichus. They are called Sembritae, as being foreigners. They are governed by a queen, to whom also Meroê, an island in the Nile near that region, is subject; and above this island, at no great distance, is another island in the river, a settlement of these same exiles. The journey from Meroê to this sea, for a well-girded traveller, requires fifteen days. Near Meroê is the confluence of the Astaboras and the Astapus, as also of the Astasobas with the Nile.

9. Along these rivers live the Rhizophagi and the Heleii, who are so called because they cut roots from the adjacent marsh, crush them with stones, form them into cakes, and then heat the cakes in the sun’s rays and use them for food. This region is the haunt of lions; and the beasts are driven out of this region by large gnats on the days of the rising of the dog-star. Near by are also the Spermophagi, who, when the seeds fail, live on nuts, preparing them for eating in the same manner as the Rhizophagi prepare roots. After Elaea one comes to the Lookouts of Demetrius and the Altars of Conon; and in the interior grows an abundance of Indian reeds; and the country is called the country of Coracius. Deep in the interior was a place called Endera, a settlement of naked people, who use bows made of reeds and arrows hardened by fire; and generally

1 Cf. 17. 1. 2 and Herodotus 2. 30.
2 i.e. the Red Sea, in the neighbourhood of Saba.
3 Root-eaters.
4 Marsh-men.
5 Seed-eaters.

5 Ελαϊαν E (with e above ai); Ελέαν other MSS. except ix.
6 Δημήτρου F, Δημητρος Ptolemaeus.
δένδρων δὲ τοξεύουσι τὰ θηρία τὸ πλέον, ἐστὶ δὲ ὅτε καὶ ἀπὸ γῆς πολὺ δ' ἐστὶ παρ' αὐτοὶς πλήθος τῶν ἁγρίων βοῶν ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς τούτων καὶ τῶν ἄλλων θηρίων κρεοφαγίας 1 ξῶσιν, ἔταν δὲ μηδὲν θηρεύσωσι, τὰ ξηρὰ δέρματα ἐπ' ἀνθρακίας ὑπτῶντες ἀρκοῦνται τῇ τοιαύτῃ τροφῇ. ἐδος δ' ἐστὶν αὐτοῖς ἀγώνα τοξείας προτιθέναι τοῖς ἀνήβους παισί. μετὰ δὲ τοὺς Κόνωνος βωμοὺς ὁ Μῆλινος λιμῆν ὑπέρκειται δ' αὐτοῦ φρούριον Κοράου καλούμενον καὶ κυνήγιον τοῦ Κοράου καὶ ἄλλο φρούριον 2 καὶ κυνήγια πλείω· εἶτα ὁ Ἀντιφίλου λιμῆν καὶ οἱ ὑπὲρ τούτων Κρεοφάγοι, 3 κολοβοὶ τὰς βαλάνους καὶ αἱ γυναικὸς Ἰουδαϊκός ἑκτετμῆναι.

10. Ἔτι δ' ὑπὲρ τούτων ὡς πρὸς μεσημβρίαν οἱ Κυναμολγοὶ, ὑπὸ δὲ τῶν ἐντοπίων Ἀγρίων καλούμενοι, κατάκομοι, καταπώγωνες, κύνας ἐκτρέφοντες εὑμεγέθεις, οῖς θηρεύοντο τοὺς ἐπερχομένους ἐκ τῆς πλησιοχώρου βοῶν Ἰνδίκους, εἴδ' ὑπὸ θηρίων ἐξελαινομένους εἶτε στανθεὶ νομῆς· ἡ δ' ἔφοδος αὐτῶν ἀπὸ θεριῶν τροπῶν μέχρι μέσου χειμῶνος. τῷ δ' Ἀντιφίλου λιμένι ἔξῆς ἐστὶ λιμῆν καλούμενος Κολοβῶν ἄλσος καὶ Βερενίκη πόλις ἢ κατὰ Σαβάς καὶ Σαβᾶ, πόλις εὑμεγέθης· εἶτα τὸ τοῦ Ἐυμένου ἄλσος. ὑπέρκειται δὲ πόλις Δάραβα 4 καὶ κυνήγιον ἑλεφάντων

1 κρεοφαγίας CF, κρεοφαγίας other MSS.
2 The words Κοράου . . . φρούριον are omitted by all MSS. except EF.
3 Κρεόφαγοι F, Κρεὐφαγοί other MSS.
4 Δάραβα mozz, Δίραβα other MSS.

1 Meat-eaters. 2 See 16. 4. 5. 3 Milkers of bitches.
they shoot wild animals from trees, but sometimes from the ground; and they have in their country a great multitude of wild cattle; and they live on the flesh of these and the other wild animals, but when they take nothing in the chase they bake dried skins on hot coals and are satisfied with such food as that. It is their custom to propose contests in archery for boys who are in their teens. After the Altars of Conon one comes to the Melinus Harbour, above which lie a Fortress of Corāus, as it is called, and a Hunting-ground of Corāus and another fortress and several hunting-grounds. And then to the Harbour of Antiphilus, and, above this, to the Creophagi, of whom the males have their sexual glands mutilated and the women are excised in the Jewish fashion.

10. Also above these, approximately towards the south, are the Cynamolgi, by the natives called Agrii, who have long hair and long beards and raise good-sized dogs. With these dogs they hunt Indian cattle which come in from the neighbouring territory, whether driven thither by wild beasts or by scarcity of pasturage. The time of their incursion is from the summer solstice to mid-winter. Next after the Harbour of Antiphilus one comes to the Grove of the Colobi, and to Berenicē, a Sabæan city, and to Sabae, a good-sized city; and then to the Grove of Eumenes. Above the grove lie a city Daraba and the hunting-ground for elephants called "The one

4 "Colobi" means "persons" (who have their sexual glands) "mutilated." Cp. 16. 2. 37 and 16. 3. 5, 9. Diodorus Siculus (3. 32) says: "All the Troglodytes are circumcised like the Aegyptians except those who, from the fact in the case, are called 'Colobi'; for these alone, who live this side the Strait, have all the part that is merely circumcised by the others cut off with razors in infancy."
τὸ πρὸς τῷ φρέατι καλούμενον κατοικοῦσι οὗ Ἕλεφαντοφάγοι, τὴν θήραν ποιούμενον τοιαύτην. C 772 ἀπὸ τῶν δένδρων ἱδόντες ἀγέλην διὰ τοῦ δρυμοῦ φερομένην, τῇ μὲν οὖν ἐπιτίθενται, τοὺς δ᾽ ἀποπλανηθέντας ἐκ τῶν ὁπίσθεν λάθρα προσίόντες νευροκοποῦσι τινὲς δὲ καὶ τοξεύμασιν ἀναίροισιν αὐτοὺς χολὴ βεβαμμένοις ὀφεὼν ἢ δὲ τοξεῖα διὰ τριῶν ἄνδρων συντελεῖται, τῶν μὲν κατεχόντων τὸ τόξον καὶ προβεβηκότων τοῖς ποσί, τοῦ δ᾽ ἐλκοντος τὴν νευρὰν ἄλλοι δὲ σημειωσάμενοι τὰ δένδρα, οίς εἰώθασι προσαναπαύεσθαι, προσίόντες ἐκ θατέρου μέρους τὸ στε- λεχὸς ὑποκόπτουσιν ἐπὰν οὐν προσὶδὼ τὸ θηρίῳ ἀποκλίνῃ πρὸς αὐτό, πεσόντος τοῦ δένδρου πίπτει καὶ αὐτῷ, ἀναστὶναι δὲ μὴ δυναμένου διὰ τὰ τὰ σκέλη διηνεκὲς ὅστοιν ἔχειν καὶ ἀκαμπτεῖς, καταπηδήσαντες ἀπὸ τῶν δένδρων ἀνατέμνουσιν αὐτῷ τοὺς δὲ κυνηγοὺς οἱ Νομάδες ἀκαθάρτως καλοῦσιν. 11. Ἄπερκεῖται δὲ τούτων ἔθνος οὐ μέγα Στρονθοφάγων, παρ᾽ οίς ὄρνεις εἰσὶ μέγεθος ἐλάφων ἔχουσές, πετάσθαι μὲν οὐ δυνάμενοι, θέουστες δὲ ὄξεις, καθὰ περὶ οἱ στρονθοκάμηλοι θηρεύουσι οὐ αὐτούς οἱ μὲν τόξοις, οἱ δὲ τῶν δοραῖς τῶν στροβοῦν σκεπασθέντες τὴν μὲν δεξιὰν καλύπτουσι τῷ τραχηλιμαίῳ μέρει καὶ κινοῦσιν οὕτως, ὡσπερ τὰ ζῶα κωμεῖται τοῖς τραχήλοις, τῇ δὲ ἀριστερὰ στέρμα προχέουσιν ἀπὸ πήρας παρηρτημένης, καὶ τούτω δελεάσαντες τὰ ζῶα εἰς φάραγγας συνωθοῦσιν ἐνταῦθα δ᾽ ἐφεστῶτες ἐξυλοκόποι κατακόπτουσι καὶ ἀμπέ- χονται δὲ καὶ ὑποστράνεται 1 τὰ δέρματα ταῦτα.

1 Cmoxz read ὑποστράνεται.
near the well"; they are inhabited by the Elephantophagi, who engage in the chase of elephants. When from trees they first see a herd of elephants moving through the forest they do not then attack them, but stealthily follow the herd and hamstring those that have wandered from the rear of the herd. Some, however, kill them with arrows dipped in the gall of serpents. But the shooting of the bow is performed by three persons; two of these step to the front and hold the bow, and the third draws the string. Others, noting the trees against which the elephants are wont to rest, approach them from the other side and cut the trunks of these trees low down. So when the elephant approaches and leans against it, the tree falls and the elephant falls too; and since the elephant is unable to arise, because its legs have only a continuous and unbending bone, they leap down from the trees and cut the animal to pieces. The Nomads call the hunters "Acatharti."  

11. Above these is situated a tribe of no large size, that of the Struthophagi, in whose country there are birds of the size of deer, which, though unable to fly, run swiftly, like ostriches. Some hunt them with bows and arrows, whereas others, covered with the skins of birds, conceal the right hand in the neck of the skin and move it in the same way as the birds move their necks, and with the left hand they pour forth seeds from a bag suspended to the side, and with these seeds they bait the creatures and run them together into gullies, where men with cudgels, standing over them, slaughter them. And their skins are used both for clothing and for bed-covers.

1 Elephant-eaters. 2 i.e. "Unclean." 3 Bird-eaters.
πολεμοῦσί δὲ τούτοις οἱ Σιμοὶ ¹ καλούμενοι Αι-θίοπες, κέρασιν ὄρυγων ὀπλοὺς χρώμενοι.

12. Πλησιόχωροι δὲ τούτοις εἰσὶ μελανώτεροί τε τῶν ἄλλων καὶ βραχύτεροι καὶ βραχυβιώ- τατοί Ἀκριδοφάγοι. ² τὰ γάρ τετταράκοντα ἐτη σπανίως ὑπερτιθέασιν, ἀποθηρομένες αὐτῶν τῆς σαιρκός. ξώσι δὲ ἀπὸ ἀκρίδων, ἃς οἱ έαρινοὶ λίβες καὶ ξέφυροι, πνέοντες μεγάλοι, συνελαύνονσιν εἰς τούς τόπους τούτους. εὖ ταῖς χαράδραις δὲ ἐμβαλόντες ὅλην καπνώδη καὶ ύφάσματες μι-κρῶν ³ . . . ὑπερπετάμεναι ⁴ γὰρ ⁵ τὸν καπνὸν σκοτούνται καὶ πιπτοῦσι. ⁶ συγκόψοντες δ' αὐτὰς μεθ' ἀλμυρίδος μάζας ποιοῦνται καὶ χρῶνται. τοῦ-τοιν δ' ἔρημος ὑπέρκειται μεγάλη, νομᾶς δαψίλεις ἔχουσα, ἐκλειφθείσα δ' ὑπὸ πλῆθους σκορπίων καὶ φαλαγγίων τῶν τετραγάνων καλουμένων, ἐπιπολάσαντός ποτε καὶ ἀπεργασαμένον τοῖς ἀνθρώποις φυγῆν παντελῆ.

13. Μετὰ δὲ Εὐμένους λιμένα μέχρι Δειρῆς ⁷ καὶ τῶν κατὰ τὰς ἔξ νήσους στενῶν Ἰχθυοφάγοι C ⁷⁷³ καὶ Κρεοφάγοι ⁸ κατοικοῦσι καὶ Κολοβοὶ μέχρι τῆς μεσογαίας. εἰσὶ δὲ καὶ θῆραι πλείους ἐλε-φάντων καὶ πόλεις ἁσμοί καὶ νησία πρὸ τῆς παραλίας. νομάδες δ' οἱ πλείους, ὀλίγοι δ' οἱ

¹ Σιμοὶ, the editors, for Σιλλοὶ; E has μοί written above, first hand.
² 'Ακριδοφάγοι is omitted by the MSS. but is added by first hand in margin of F.
³ Here the MSS. have a lacuna of about ten letters.
⁴ ὑπερπετάμεναι Dhi, ὑπερπετάμεναι E, ὑπερπετασθέντων z (first hand), ὑπερπετασθείσων mo and z (second hand).
⁵ γάρ, omitted by μοι.
⁶ μοι have εἰτα σκοτουμένων καὶ πιπτουσῶν.

326
GEOGRAPHY, 16. 4. 11–13

The Aethiopians called "Simi" carry on war with these people; they use as weapons the horns of gazelles.

12. Neighbouring this people are the Acridophagi, who are blacker than the rest and shorter in stature and the shortest-lived; for they rarely live beyond forty years, since their flesh is infested with parasites. They live on locusts, which are driven into this region in the spring-time by strong-blowing south-west and western winds. They cast smoking timber in the ravines, lighting it slightly (and thus easily catch the locusts), for when they fly above the smoke they are blinded and fall. The people pound them with salt, make them into cakes, and use them for food. Above these people lies a large uninhabited region, which has pastures in abundance. It was abandoned by reason of the multitude of scorpions and tarantulas, the tetragnathi, as they are called; these once prevailed and caused a complete desertion by the inhabitants.

13. After the Harbour of Eumenes, as far as Deirê and the straits opposite the six islands, the country is inhabited by the Ichthyophagi and the Creophagi and the Colobi, who extend as far as the interior. In this region are several hunting-grounds for elephants, and insignificant cities, and islands lying off the coast. The greater part of the people

---

1 Locust-eaters. 2 Literally "wild creatures." 3 This is obviously the meaning of certain Greek words lost from the MSS. (see critical note). 4 i.e. four-jawed. 5 16. 4. 4. 6 i.e. "Mutilated" people (see 16. 4. 5).
The "styrax" (or "storax") shrub, or tree, produces a sweet-smelling gum or resin used in frankincense.

i.e. fish-ponds and the like.

328
are nomads; and those who till the soil are few in number. And in some parts of their country styrax grows in no small quantities. The Ichthyophagi collect the fish at the ebb-tides, throw them upon the rocks, and bake them in the sun; and then, when they have thoroughly baked them, they pile up the bones, tread the flesh with their feet and make it into cakes; and again they bake these cakes and use them for food. But in stormy weather, when they are unable to collect the fish, they pound the bones which they have piled up and mould them into cakes and use them for food; and they suck the bones when fresh. But some, who have shell-fish, fatten them by throwing them down into gullies and pools of sea-water, and then, throwing in minnows as food for them, use them for food when there is a scarcity of fish. They also have all kinds of places for hatching and feeding fish, from which they parcel them out. Some of the people who inhabit the part of the coast that is without water go inland every five days, families and all, with a shouting of pæans, to the water-reservoirs, throw themselves upon the ground face downwards, drink like cattle until their stomachs are filled out as tight as drums, and then return to the sea again. They live in caves, or in pens roofed over with beams and cross-beams, consisting of the bones of whales and small fish, as also with olive branches.

14. The Chelonophagi live under cover of turtle-shells, which are so large that they are used as boats; but some of these people, since the sea-weed is thrown ashore in great quantities and forms high and hill-like heaps, dig beneath these and dwell

3 Cf. 15. 2. 2. 4 Turtle-eaters.
ὑπορύπτοντες ταύτας ὑποικοῦσι. οἱ δὲ νεκροὶ ῥίπτουσι τροφὴν τοῖς ἰχθύσιν, ἀναλαμβανομένους ὑπὸ τῶν πλημμυρίδων. τῶν δὲ νήσων τινὲς τρεῖς ἐφεξῆς κεῖται, ἡ μὲν Χελωνών, ἡ δὲ Φωκῶν, ἡ δ’ Ἱεράκων λεγομένην πᾶσα δ’ ἡ παραλία φοινικάς τε ἔχει καὶ ἐλαιώνας καὶ δαφνώνας, οὐχ ἡ ἐντὸς τῶν στενῶν μόνον, ἀλλὰ καὶ τῆς ἐκτὸς πολλῆς. ἐστὶ δὲ τις καὶ Φιλίππου νῆσος, καθ’ ἑν ὑπέρκειται τὸ Πυθαγέλου καλούμενον τῶν ἐλεφάντων κυνήγιον εἰτ’ Ἀροινόη πόλις καὶ λιμὴν, καὶ μετὰ ταύτα ἡ Δειρῆ καὶ τούτων ὑπέρκειται θῆρα τῶν ἐλεφάντων. ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς Δειρῆς ἡ ἐφεξῆς ἐστὶν ἀρωματοφόρος, πρώτῃ μὲν ἡ τὴν σμύρναν φέρουσα (καὶ αὐτὴ μὲν Ἰχθυοφάγων καὶ Κρεοφάγων), φύει δὲ καὶ περσέαν καὶ συκάμινον Ἀιγύπτιον ὑπέρκειται δὲ ἡ Δίξαθηρα τῶν ἐλεφάντων πολλαχοῦ δ’ εἰσὶ συστάδες τῶν ὀμβρίων ύδάτων, δὲν ἀναξηρανθείσων οἱ ἐλέφαντες ταῖς προβοσκίσι καὶ τοῖς ὅδοισιν C 774 φρεωρυχοῦσι καὶ ἀνευρίσκουσιν ὕδωρ. εὐς δὲ τῇ παραλίᾳ ταύτῃ μέχρι τοῦ Πυθολάου ἄκρωτηρίου δύο λίμναι εἰσίν εὐμεγέθεις. οἱ μὲν ἄλμυροῦ ύδατος, ἡν καλοῦσι θάλατταν, ἡ δὲ γλυκεός, ἡ τρέφει καὶ ἐπιποὺς ποταμίους καὶ κροκοδέλους, περὶ τὰ χεῖλη δὲ πάπυρον ὀρὸνται δὲ καὶ άβεις περὶ τὸν τόπον. ἤδη δὲ καὶ οἱ πλησίον τῆς ἄκρας τῆς Πυθολάου τὰ σώματα ὀλόκληροι

1 φοινικώνας E.  
2 περσέαν the editors, for περσαίαν.  
3 τά Δ.  
4 Πυθολάου ζ.  
5 ἄκρωτηρια Dhixz.  
6 Πυθολάου Δξ.  

330
under them. They throw out their dead as food for
the fish, the bodies being caught up by the flood-
tides. Some of the islands, three of them, follow
in succession: Tortoise Island, Seal Island, and
Hawk Island, as it is called; and the whole of the
coast has palm-trees, olive groves, and laurel groves,
not only the part inside the straits, but also most of
the part outside. And there is also an island called
Philip’s Island, opposite which, above the coast, lies
the hunting-ground for elephants called the Hunting-
ground of Pythangelus. Then one comes to Arsinoë,
a city and harbour; and, after these, to Deirê;
and above these lies a hunting-ground for elephants.
The next country after Deirê produces aromatics,
the first that produces myrrh (this country belongs
to the Icthyophagi and Creophagi), and it also
produces both persea ¹ and the Aegyptian sycaminus.²
Above this country lies a hunting-ground for
elephants, called the Hunting-ground of Lichas.
In many places there are pools of rain-water; and
when these dry up, the elephants, with their trunks
and tusks, dig wells and find water. On this coast,
extending as far as the promontory of Pytholäus,
there are two lakes of fair size, one of which has salt
water and is called a sea, whereas the other has
fresh water, supports both hippopotamus and
crocodiles, and has papyrus round its edges; and
the ibis is also to be seen in the neighbourhood of
this place. Beginning with those who live near the
promontory of Pytholäus, the people are wholly
free from mutilation ³ of the body. After these, one

¹ A tree with such luscious fruit that Cambyses transplanted
it to Persia (see Diodorus Siculus 1. 34).
² Mulberry tree.
³ See 16. 3. 5, 9.
εἰσιν ἡ λιβανωτοφόρος· ἐνταῦθα ἀκρα ἐστὶ καὶ ἱερὸν αἰγειρώνα ἔχον. ἐν δὲ τῇ μεσογαίᾳ ποταμία τις Ἰσιδος λεγομένη καὶ ἀλλῃ τις Νείλος, ἀμφω καὶ σμύρναν καὶ λίβανον παραπεφυκότα ἔχουσαι. ἐστὶ δὲ καὶ δεξαμενῇ τις τοῖς ἐκ τῶν ὄρων ὑδασὶ πληρομενῇ καὶ μετὰ ταύτα Λέοντος σκοπῆ ¹ καὶ Πυθαγγέλου λιμήν· ἡ δ’ ἔξης ἔχει καὶ ψευδοκασσιάν.² συνεχῶς δ’ εἰσὶ ποταμαῖς τε πλείους ἔχουσαι λίβανον παραπεφυκότα καὶ ποταμοὶ μέχρι τῆς Κιννάμωμοφόρου· ὁ δ’ ὀρίζουν ταύτῃ ποταμῶς φέρει καὶ φλοῦν πάμπολυν· εἰτ’ ἄλλους ποταμῶς καὶ Δαφνοῦς λιμήν καὶ ποταμία Ἀπόλλωνος καλουμένη, ἔχουσα πρὸς τῷ λιβάνῳ καὶ σμύρναν καὶ κιννάμωμον· τούτῳ δὲ πλεονάζει ³ μᾶλλον περὶ τούς ἐν βάθει τόπους· εἴθ’ ὁ Ἑλέφας τὸ ὄρος, ἐκκείμενον εἰς θάλατταν, καὶ διώρυξ καὶ ἐφεξῆς Ψυγμοῦ ⁴ λιμήν μέγας καὶ ὑδρεύμα, τὸ Κυνοκεφάλων καλούμενον, καὶ τελευταίῳ ἀκρωτήριον τῆς παραλίας ταύτῃ, τὸ Νότου κέρας. κάμψατι δὲ τοῦτο ὡς ἐπὶ μεσημβρίαν οὐκέτι, φησίν, ἔχομεν λιμένων ἀναγραφῶς οὐδὲ τόπων διὰ τὸ μηκέτι εἶναι γνώριμον, ἐν δὲ τῇ ἔξης παραλίᾳ.

¹ Λέοντος σκοπῆ, Corais, for λεοντοσκόπη CDPh, λεοντοσκόπη E, Λέοντος κάτη 8, Λέοντος κάτη Casaubon.
² ψευδοκασσιάν F.
³ πλεονάζει F (first hand in margin); πλέον ἀκμάζει other MSS.
⁴ γυμνοῦ CDEFhir; but ψυγμοῦ first hand in Fr.
comes to the country that bears frankincense; and here is a promontory and a temple that has a grove of poplars. In the interior lie the river-land of Isis, as it is called, and another river-land called Neilus, both of which produce both myrrh and frankincense along their banks. Here, too, there is a kind of reservoir which is filled by waters from the mountains; and after this one comes to the Lookout of Leon and the Harbour of Pythangelus; and the next country has, among other things, pseudo-cassia. And one comes to several river-lands in succession that produce frankincense along the rivers, and to rivers that extend as far as the cinnamon-bearing country; and the river which bounds this country produces also the flowering rush in very great quantities. Then to another river and to the Daphnus Harbour and to the River-land of Apollo, as it is called, which produces, in addition to frankincense, both myrrh and cinnamon; but the cinnamon is more abundant in the neighbourhood of the places that are deep in the interior. Then to Elephas, the mountain, which juts out into the sea, and to a trench, and, next thereafter, to the large Harbour of Psygmus, and to a watering-place called the Watering-place of the Cynocephali, and to the last promontory of this coast, Notu-ceras. After rounding this promontory approximately towards the south, we no longer, he says, have any record of harbours or places, because the promontory is not known from here on, and the same is true of the coast next after it.

1 Elephant.  
2 A well, apparently.  
3 i.e. the "Dog-headed" people.  
4 i.e. Horn of the South.
15. Εἰσί δὲ καὶ στήλαι καὶ βωμοί Πυθολάου καὶ Λίχα καὶ Πυθαγγέλου καὶ Λέοντος καὶ Χαριμόρτου κατὰ τὴν γυνώμον παραλιάν τὴν ἀπὸ Δειρῆς μέχρι Νότου κέρας, τὸ δὲ διάστημα οὐ γυνώμον. πληθύνει δ’ ἐλέφασιν ἡ χώρα καὶ λέουσι τοὺς καλουμένους μύρμηξιν ἀπεστραμμένα δ’ ἔχουσι τὰ αἰδοία, καὶ χρυσοίδεις τὴν χρόαν, ψιλότεροι δὲ τῶν κατὰ τὴν Ἀραβιάν· φέρει δὲ καὶ παρδάλεις ἀλκίσμους καὶ ρινοκέρωτας. οὗτοι δὲ μικρὸν ἀπολείπονται τῶν ἐλεφάντων οἱ ρινοκέρωτες, οὐχὶ 2 ὁσπερ Ἀρτεμίδωρος φήσιν, ἐπὶ σειρὰν τῷ μήκει, καὶ περ ἐωρακείναι φήςας ἐν Ἀλεξανδρείᾳ, ἀλλὰ σχεδὸν τὰ ὅσον . . . 3 τῷ ύψει, ἀπὸ γε τοῦ υφ’ ἡμῶν ὀραθέντος· οὔτε πῦξι τὸ χρώμα ἐμφερέσ, ἀλλ’ ἐλέφαντι μᾶλλον μέγεθος δ’ ἐστὶ ταύρου. μορφὴ δ’ ἐγγυτάτω συγγραμμή, καὶ μάλιστα κατὰ τὴν προτομήν, πλὴν τῆς ρινός, ὅτι ἐστὶ κέρας σιμῶν στεφεύτηρον ὀστέον παιντός· χρῆται δ’ ὀπλώ, καθάπερ καὶ C 775 τοῖς οδούσιν ὁ σύγγραμμή· ἔχει δὲ καὶ τύλους δύο, ὥς ἄν στείρας δρακόντων ἀπὸ τῆς ράχεως μέχρι τῆς γαστρὸς περικείμενας, τὴν μὲν πρὸς τῷ λόφῳ, τὴν δὲ πρὸς τὴν ὀσφύ. ἐκ μὲν δὴ τοῦ υφ’ ἡμῶν ὀραθέντος ταῦτα φαμεν ἡμεῖς, ἐκεῖνος δὲ προσδιασαφεῖ, διότι καὶ ἐλεφαντομάχον ἰδίως ἐστὶ τὸ ἥπων περὶ τῆς νομῆς, ὑποδύου τῇ προστομῇ καὶ ἀνακείρουν τὴν γαστέρα, ἐὰν μὴ προληφθῇ τῇ προβοσκίδι καὶ τοῖς ὀδούσιν.

1 δὲ, Corais inserts. 2 οὐχ, Corais inserts. 3 Obviously some number of cubits (πηχυς) or spans (σπιθαμή) has fallen out of the MSS.

1 See the description of “gold-mining ants” in 15. 1. 44.

334
15. One comes also to pillars and altars of Pytholäus and Lichas and Pythagelus and Leon and Charimortus along the known coast, extending from Deirê as far as Notu-ceras, but the distance is unknown. The country abounds in elephants, and also in lions called ants,¹ which have their genital organs reversed, and are golden in colour, but are less hairy than those in Arabia. It also produces fierce leopards and the rhinoceros. The latter, the rhinoceros, is but little short of the elephant in size, not, as Artemidorus says, "in length to the tail"² (although he says that he saw the animal at Alexandria), but falls short, I might almost say, only about . . . in height,³ judging at least from the one I saw; nor does their colour resemble that of box-wood, but rather that of the elephant; and it is of the size of a bull; and its shape is most nearly like that of the wild boar, particularly in its foreparts, except its nose, which has a snub horn harder than any bone; and it uses its horn as a weapon, just as the wild boar uses its tusks; and it also has two hard welts extending round from its chine to its belly, like the coils of serpents, one of which is on its withers and the other on its loins. Now I am giving this description from the one I saw; but Artemidorus goes on to explain that the creature is especially inclined to fight with the elephant for places of pasture, thrusting its forehead under the elephant and ripping up its stomach, unless it is prevented from so doing by the proboscis and tusks of the elephant.

¹ i.e. from head to tail.
² The measure of the difference in height is missing from the manuscripts. Artemidorus must have given it in terms of either cubit or span (see critical note).
16. Γίνονται δ' ἐν τούτοις τοῖς τόποις καὶ αἱ καμηλοπαρδάλεις, οὐδέν ὁμοιον ἔχουσαι παρδάλεις· τὸ γὰρ ποικίλον τῆς χρώας νεβρίσι μᾶλλον ἐοικε ραβδωτοῖς σπίλοις κατεστιγμέναι· τελέως δὲ τὰ ὁπίσθια ταπεινότερα τῶν ἐμπροσθίων ἔστιν, ὡστε δοκεῖν συγκαθῆθαι τῷ οὐραίῳ μέρει, τὸ ύψος βοῶς ἔχοντι, τὰ δὲ ἐμπρόσθια σκέλη τῶν καμη-
λεῶν οὐ λείπεται· τράχηλος δ' εἰς ύψος ἐξηρμένος ὤρθος, τὴν κορυφὴν δὲ πολὺ ὑπερπετεστέραν ἔχει τής καμηλόου· διὰ δὲ τὴν ἀσυμμετρίαν ταύτην οὐδὲ τάχος οὐμα τοσοῦτον εἶναι περὶ τὸ ξών, ὅσον εἰρήκειν Ἀρτεμίδωρος, ἀνυπέρβλητον φήσας· ἀλλ' οὐδὲ θηρίων ἔστιν, ἀλλὰ βάσκημα μᾶλλον· οὐδεμίαν γὰρ ἀγριότητα ἐμφαίνει. γίνονται δὲ, φησὶ, καὶ σφίγγες καὶ κυνοκέφαλοι καὶ κῆβοι λέοντος μὲν πρόσωπον ἔχοντες, τὸ δὲ λυπὸν σώμα πάνθηρος, μέγεθος δὲ δορκάδος· καὶ ταύροι δ' εἰσίν ἄγριοι καὶ σαρκοφάγοι, μεγέθει πολὺ τοὺς παρ' ἡμῖν ὑπερβεβλημένους καὶ τάχει, πυρροὶ τὴν χρώαν. κροκούττας δ' ἔστι μέγα λύκου καὶ κυνός, ὡς φησίν οὕτως. ἀ δ' ὁ Σκῆψιος λέγει Μητρόδωρος ἐν τῷ περὶ συνήθειας βιβλίῳ μύθοις ἐσκε καὶ οὐ φροντιστέον αὐτῶν. καὶ δρακόντων δ' εἰρήκει μεγεθή τριάκοντα πηχών ὁ Ἀρτεμίδωρος ἑλέφαντας καὶ ταύρους χειρομένους, μετριάςας ταύτη γε· οἱ γὰρ Ἰνδικοὶ μυθωδέστεροι καὶ οἱ Διβυκοί, οἳς γε καὶ πόα ἐπιπεφυκέναι λέγεται.

17. Νομαδικὸς μὲν οὖν ὁ βίος τῶν Τρωγυλο-

1 i.e. camel-leopards.
2 The Papio sphinx, a large baboon.
3 i.e. "Dog-heads" (the Papio hamadryas, a sacred baboon).
4 The Papio cebus (also referred to in 17. 1. 40).
16. In this region, also, are found camelopards, though they are in no respect like leopards; for the dappled marking of their skin is more like that of a fawnskin, which latter is flecked with spots, and their hinder parts are so much lower than their front parts that they appear to be seated on their tail-parts, which have the height of an ox, although their forelegs are no shorter than those of camels; and their necks rise high and straight up, their heads reaching much higher up than those of camels. On account of this lack of symmetry the speed of the animal cannot, I think, be so great as stated by Artemidorus, who says that its speed is not to be surpassed. Furthermore, it is not a wild beast, but rather a domesticated animal, for it shows no signs of wildness. And in this country are also found, he says, sphinxes and cynocephali and cebi, which last have the face of a lion, and a body otherwise like that of a panther and with the size of a gazelle. The country also has bulls that are wild, carnivorous, and far surpass those in our part of the world in size and speed; and their colour is red. The crocuttas is a mixed progeny of wolf and dog, as Artemidorus says. But what Metrodorus of Scepsis says in his book on Habits is like a myth and should be disregarded. Artemidorus also speaks of serpents thirty cubits in length which overpower elephants and bulls; and his measurement is moderate, at least for serpents in this part of the world, for the Indian serpents are rather fabulous, as also those in Libya, which are said to grow grass on their backs.

17. Now the Troglodytes live a nomadic life; and

5 Apparently a species of hyena.
6 See 2. 1. 9 and 15. 1. 28. 7 See 17. 3. 5.
δυτῶν, τυραννοῦνται δὲ καθ’ ἐκαστα, κοιναὶ δὲ καὶ γυναίκες καὶ τέκνα πλὴν τοῖς τυράννοις, τὸ δὲ τὴν τυράννου φθείραντι πρόβατον ἢ ζημία ἐστὶ. στιβίζονται1 ὅ̊ ἐπιμελῶς αἱ γυναίκες, περίκεινται δὲ τοῖς τραχήλοις κογχία ἀντὶ βασκανίων. πολεμοῦσι δὲ περὶ τῆς νομῆς, κατ’ ἀρχὰς μὲν διωθούμενοι ταῖς χερσίν, ἐτὰ λίθως, ὅταν δὲ τραύμα γένηται, καὶ τοξεύματι καὶ μαχαίρι· διαλύοντι δὲ γυναίκες, εἰς μέσους προίονται καὶ δεήσεις προσενέγκασαι· τροφὴ δ’ ἐκ τε σαρκῶν καὶ τῶν ὀστέων κοπτομένων ἀναμίξη καὶ εἰς τὰς δορὰς ἐνειλουμένων,2 εἰτ’ ὀπτωμένων καὶ ἄλλως πολλαχῶς σκεναζομένων ὑπὸ τῶν C 776 μαγείρων, οὗς καλοῦσιν ἀκαθάρτους· ὅστε μὴ κρεοφαγεῖν μόνον, ἀλλὰ καὶ ὀστοφαγεῖν καὶ δερματοφαγεῖν· χρώνται δὲ καὶ τῷ αἵματι καὶ τῷ γάλακτι καταμίξαντες. ποτὸν δὲ τοῖς μὲν πολλοῖς ἀπόβρεγμα παλιοῦρον, τοῖς δὲ τυράννοις μελίκρατον, ἀπ’ ἀνθοὺς τινὸς ἐκπτειχομένου τοῦ μέλιτος. ἔστι δ’ αὐτοῖς χειμών μὲν, ἡνίκα οἱ ἔτησίαι πυέοσυ (κατομβροῦν τίγρ), θέρος δ’ ὁ λυπῶς χρόνος. γυμνῆται δὲ καὶ δερματόφοροι καὶ σκυταληθόροι διατελοῦσιν· εἰσὶ δ’ οὐ κολοβοὶ μόνον, ἀλλὰ καὶ περιτειμημένοι τινὲς, καθάπερ Αἰγύπτιοι. οἱ δὲ Μεγαβάροι Αἰθίοπες τοῖς ῥοπά- λοις καὶ τύλους προστεθάσαι σιδηροῦς, χρώνται δὲ καὶ λόγχαις καὶ ἀσπίσιν ὁμοβυρσίναις, οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ Αἰθίοπες τόξοις καὶ λόγχαις. θάπτουσι

1 στιμιζονται Ε.
2 ἐνειλουμένων, Corais, for ἀνιλουμένων CF, ἀνειλουμένων other MSS.

338
their several tribes are ruled by tyrants; and both wives and children are held in common except those of the tyrants; and the fine for anyone who corrupts the wife of a tyrant consists of a sheep. The women paint their eyelids carefully with stibi;¹ and they wear shells for amulets round their necks. The Troglodytes go to war about pasturage, at first pushing their way through with their hands and then with stones, and also, when a wound is inflicted, with arrows and daggers; but the fighters are reconciled by the women, who advance into the midst of the combatants and ply them with entreaties. Their food consists of flesh and bones which are first chopped up together and wrapped in skins and then baked, or prepared in numerous other ways by the cooks (whom they call “unclean”), so that they not only eat the flesh, but also the bones and the skin; and they also use the blood mixed with milk. As for beverages, most of the people drink a brew of buckthorn,² but the tyrants drink a mixture of honey and water, the honey being pressed out of some kind of flower. They have winter when the Etesian winds blow (for they have rains); but the rest of the time is summer. They always go lightly clad, wear skins, and carry clubs; and they not only mutilate their bodies,³ but some of them are also circumcised, like the Aegyptians. The Aethiopian Megabari have iron knobs on their clubs, and also use spears and shields made of rawhide, but the rest of the Aethiopians use the bow and arrow and lances. Before burying their

¹ Lat. stibium, i.e. the sesquisulphide of antimony, a dark pigment.
² Rhamnus paliurus.
³ See 16. 4. 5 and Diodorus Siculus 3. 32.
Strabo

δὲ τινὲς τῶν Τρωγλοδυτῶν, ράβδοις παλιουρίναις δήσαντες τὸν αὐχένα τῶν νεκρῶν πρὸς τὰ σκέλη ἐπείτα εὐθὺς καταλεύουσιν ἵλαροί, γελώντες ἅμα, ἔως ἀν τοῦ σώματος τὴν ὁψιν ἀποκρύψωσιν· εἰτ' ἐπιθέντες κέρας αὐγειον ἀπίασιν. ὄδοιποροὺς δὲ νύκτωρ εἰ τῶν ἀρρένων θρεμμάτων κώδωνας ἐξάγαντες, ὡστ' ἔξιστασθαί τὰ θηρία τῷ ψόφῳ καὶ λαμπάσι δὲ καὶ τόξοις ἐπὶ τὰ θηρία χρώνται, καὶ διαγρυπνοῦσι δὲ τῶν ποιμνίων χάριν, ὃδ' τινὶ χρώμενοι πρὸς τῷ πυρί.

18. Ταῦτ' εἶπ' ἐπὶ τῶν Τρωγλοδυτῶν καὶ τῶν προσχώρων Αἰθιόπων ἐπάνεισιν ἐπὶ τοὺς Ἀράβας· καὶ πρώτοις ἐπείσι τοὺς τῶν Ἀράβων κόλπων ἀφορίζοντας καὶ ἀντικείμενους τοὺς Τρωγλοδυταίς, ἀρξάμενος ἀπὸ τοῦ Ποσειδίου. φησὶ δὲ ἐνδοτέρω κείσθαι τούτῳ τοῦ Αἰλανίτου μυχοῦ συνεχῇ δὲ τοῦ Ποσειδίου φοινικῶν εἶναι εὐνόδου, τιμᾶσθαι τε κομιδῆ διὰ τὸ πᾶσαν τὴν κύκλῳ καυματηρᾶν τε καὶ ἀνυδρον καὶ ἀσκιον ὑπάρχειν, ἐνταῦθα δὲ καὶ τὴν εὐκαρπίαν τῶν φοινικῶν εἶναι θαυμαστήν προεστήκασι δὲ τοῦ ἅλσους ἀνήρ καὶ γυνή, διὰ γένους ἀποδεδειγμένου, δερματοφόροι, τροφήν ἀπὸ τῶν φοινικῶν ἔχοντες. κοιτάζονται δ' ἐπὶ δένδρων καλυβοποιησάμενοι διὰ τὸ πλῆθος τῶν θηρίων. εἰθ' ἔξις ἐστὶ νῆσος Φωκῶν, ἀπὸ τοῦ πλῆθους τῶν θηρίων τούτων ὄνομασμένη. πλησίον δ' αὐτῆς ἀκρωτηρίου, διατείνει πρὸς τὴν Πέτραν τὴν τῶν Ναβαταίων καλουμένων

1 καταλεύουσιν, Tzschucke, for καταλέγοντες.
2 δὲ Eoz, τε other MSS.

1 So Diodorus Siculus (3. 33).
dead, some of the Troglodytes bind the neck of the corpses to the legs with twigs of the buckthorn, and then immediately, with merriment and laughter,\(^1\) throw stones upon them until the body is hidden from sight; and then they place a ram’s horn on the barrow and go away. They travel by night, first fastening bells to the male cattle, so as to drive away the wild beasts with the noise; and they also use torches and bows to repel the wild beasts; and, for the sake of their flocks, they also keep watch during the night, singing a kind of song near the fire.

18. After saying all this about the Troglodytes and the neighbouring Aethiopians, Artemidorus returns to the Arabians; and first, beginning at Poseidium, he describes the Arabians who border on the Arabian Gulf and live opposite the Troglodytes. He says that Poseidium lies farther in than the Aelanites Gulf; and that contiguous to Poseidium there is a grove of palm trees, which is well supplied with water and is highly valued because all the country around is hot and waterless and shadeless; and that here the fertility of the palms is wonderful; and that a man and a woman have charge of the grove, being appointed to that charge through hereditary right. They wear skins, and live on dates from the palm trees; but on account of the number of wild beasts they build huts in trees and sleep there. Then, next, one comes to the Island of Phocae,\(^2\) which was so named from the number of seals there. Near the island is a promontory, which extends to the Rock of the Nabataean Arabians, as they are called, and

\(^1\) Seals.

1 Αἰλανίτης Ε', Ἐλανίτης other MSS.
2 ἦ, before χώρα, moq omit.
3 καὶ, after εὐνύδρον, Dh omit.
4 The MSS. read ἱμιόνων ἀγρίων καὶ καμήλων. Kramer, citing Diodorus Siculus 3. 42, transposes ἀγρίων as above.
to the Palaestine country, whither Minaeans and Gerrhaeans and all the neighbouring peoples convey their loads of aromatics. Then one comes to another coast, which was formerly called the coast of the Maranitae, some of whom were farmers and others tent-dwellers, but is now called the coast of the Garindaeans, who destroyed the Maranitae by treachery; for the Garindaeans attacked them while they were celebrating some quadrennial festival, and not only destroyed all the people at the festival but also overran and exterminated the rest of the tribe. Then to the Aelanites Gulf, and to Nabataea, a country with a large population and well supplied with pasturage. They also dwell on islands situated off the coast near by; and these Nabataeans formerly lived a peaceful life, but later, by means of rafts, went to plundering the vessels of people sailing from Aegypt. But they paid the penalty when a fleet went over and sacked their country. One comes next to a plain which is well supplied with trees and water and is full of all kinds of domestic animals—mules among others; and it has a multitude of wild camels, deer, and gazelles, as also numerous lions, leopards, and wolves.\footnote{Jackals, perhaps.} Off this plain lies an island called Dia. Then one comes to a gulf about five hundred stadia in extent, which is enclosed all round by mountains and a mouth that is difficult to enter; and round it live men who hunt the land animals. Then to three uninhabited islands, full of olive trees, not the kind in our country, but the indigenous kind, called Aethiopic, the sap of which has medicinal power. Next in order one comes to a stony beach,
αἰγιαλὸς λιθώδης, καὶ μετὰ τούτων τραχεῖα καὶ
dυσπαράπλευστος ὅσον χιλίων σταδίων παραλία
σπάνει λιμένων καὶ ἀγκυροβολίων· ὅρος γὰρ
παρατείνει τραχύ καὶ ύψηλον· εἰθ’ ὑπώρειαι
σπιλαδώδεις 1 μέχρι τῆς θαλάττης, τοῖς ἐτησίαις
μάλιστα καὶ ταῖς τότε ἐπομβρίαις ἀβοῆθητον
παρέχουσαι τὸν κίνδυνον. ἔξης δ’ ἐστὶ κόλπος
νήσους ἔχων σποράδας, καὶ συνεχῶς 2 θῖναι ψάμ-
μου μελαίνης τρεῖς ἁγαν ύψηλοι, καὶ μετὰ τούτους
Χαρμόδας 3 λιμήν ὅσον σταδίων τὸν κύκλον ἐκατόν,
στενὸν καὶ ἐπικίνδυνον ἔχων τῶν εἰσπλουν παντὶ
σκάφει. ἰσθ’ δὲ καὶ ποταμὸς εἰς αὐτὸν· ἐν μέσῳ
δὲ νῆσων εὐδενδρὸς καὶ γεωργῆσιμος. εἰτ’ ἐστὶ
παραλία τραχεῖα, καὶ μετὰ ταύτην κόλποι τινὲς
καὶ χώρα Νομάδων ἀπὸ καμήλων ἐχόντων τὸν
βίον· καὶ γὰρ πολεμοῦσιν ἀπ’ αὐτῶν καὶ ὀδεύουσι
καὶ τρέφονται τῷ τε γάλακτι χρώμενοι καὶ ταῖς
σαρξί. ἰσθ’ δὲ ποταμὸς δ’ αὐτῶν ψῆγμα χρυσοῦ
καταφέρων, οὐκ ἵσαι δ’ αὐτὸ κατεργάζεται·
cαλοῦνται δὲ Δέσαι, οἱ μὲν νομάδες, οἱ δὲ καὶ
gεωργοί. οὐ λέγω δὲ τῶν ἐθνῶν τὰ ὁνόματα τὰ
πολλά 4 διὰ τὴν ἀδοξίαν καὶ ἀμα ἀτοπίαι τῆς
ἐκφορᾶς αὐτῶν. ἐχομένοι δ’ εἰσὶν ἡμερώτεροι
tούτων ἄνδρες, εὐκρατοτέραν οἴκουντες γῆν· καὶ
γάρ εὐνύδρος 5 ἐστι καὶ εὐομβρός· χρυσὸς τε
C 778 ὅρυκτος γίνεται παρ’ αὐτοῖς οὐ ψῆγματος, ἀλλὰ
βωλαρίων χρυσοῦ καθάρσεως οὐ πολλῆς δεομέ-

1 σπηλαιώδεις moxe, Tzschucke, Corais.
2 συνεχῶς CEx.
3 E reads Χαρμόλας, F Χαρμοθᾶς.
4 πολλά, Meineke, for παλαία. Letronne conj. ἀλλα, Kramer πλεῖω.

344
and after that to a stretch of coast about one thousand stadia in length which is rugged and difficult for vessels to pass, for lack of harbours and anchoring-places, since a rugged and lofty mountain stretches along it. Then one comes to foot-hills, which are rocky and extend to the sea; and these, especially at the time of the Etesian winds and the rains, present to sailors a danger that is beyond all help. Next is a gulf with scattered islands; and continuous with the gulf are three exceedingly high banks of black sand; and after these lies Charmothas Harbour, about one hundred stadia in circuit, with an entrance that is narrow and dangerous for all kinds of boats. A river flows into it; and there is an island in the middle of it which is well supplied with trees and fit for tillage. Then one comes to a rugged stretch of coast; and after that to certain gulfs and to a country of nomads who get their livelihood from camels; for they carry on war from the backs of camels, travel upon them, and subsist upon their milk and flesh. A river flows through their country that brings down gold-dust, but the inhabitants do not know how to work it. They are called Debae; and some of them are nomads, whereas others are also farmers. I am not giving most of the names of the tribes because of their insignificance and at the same time because of the oddity of the pronunciations. Next to the Debae are men more civilised than they; and the country these live in has a more temperate climate; for it is well watered, and well supplied with rains. Gold obtained by digging is found in their country—not gold-dust, but gold nuggets, which do not require much purification; the smallest nuggets

5 Dhi read εὐδερῶς instead of εὐπος.
νων, \(^1\) μέγεθος \(^2\) ἑχόντων ἐλάχιστον μὲν πυρῆνος, μέσον δὲ μεσπίλου, μέγιστον δὲ καρύου· τρήσαντες δὲ ταύτα ἐναλλὰξ λίθοις διαφανέσιν ὄρμους ποιοῦνται διερόντες λίνον, \(^2\) περιτίθενται δὲ περὶ τοὺς τραχύλους καὶ καρποὺς· πωλοῦσι δὲ καὶ πρὸς τοὺς ἀστυγείτονας εὕωνον τὸν χρυσόν, τριπλάσιον ἀντιδιδόντες \(^3\) τοῦ χαλκοῦ, διπλάσιον δὲ τοῦ ἀργύρου διὰ τε τὴν ἀπειρίαν τῆς ἐργασίας καὶ τὴν σπάνιν τῶν ἀντιλαμβανομένων, ὥν ἡ χρεία πρὸς τοὺς βίους ἀναγκαιοτέρα.

19. Συνάπτει δ' ἡ τῶν Σαβαίων εὐδαίμονεστάτη, μεγίστου ἔθνους, παρ' οἷς καὶ σμύρνα καὶ λίβανος καὶ κιννάμωμον· ἐν δὲ τῇ παραλίᾳ καὶ βάλσαμον καὶ ἀλλὰ τις ποὰ σφόδρα εὐώδης, ταχὺ δ' ἐξήτηλον τὴν ὀδμὴν ἐχούσα· εἰσὶ δὲ καὶ φοίνικες εὐώδεις καὶ κάλαμος, ὁφεις δὲ σπιθαμαῖοι, φοινικὸ τῆς χρόαν, προσαλλόμενοι καὶ μέχρι λαγόνος, τὸ δὴγμα ἑχοῦτες ἀνήκεστον. διὰ δὲ τὴν ἀφθονίαν τῶν καρπῶν ἄργοι καὶ ράθυμοι τοῖς βίοις εἰσὶν οἱ ἀνθρωποί. κοιτάζονται δὲ ἐπὶ τῶν ριζῶν τῶν δένδρων ἔκτεμνοντες οἱ πολλοὶ καὶ δημοτικοί. \(^4\) διαδεχόμενοι δ' οἱ σύνεγγυς ἀεὶ τὰ φορτία, τοῖς μετ' αὐτούς παραδιδόσας μέχρι Συρίας καὶ Μεσοποταμίας· καρούμενοι δ' ὑπὸ τῶν εὐωδίων, αἰροῦσι

1 δεομένων ὑπ., δεομένων other MSS.
2 ἀνυφ Ε.
3 ἀντιδιδόντες Ex, ἀντιδιδόντες other MSS.
4 The words οἱ . . . δημοτικοί are omitted by moz.

346
have the size of a fruit-stone, the medium that of a medlar, and the largest that of a walnut. They make collars with these nuggets, perforating them and stringing them alternately with transparent stones by means of thread; and they wear them round their necks and wrists. They also sell the gold at a cheap price to their neighbours, giving it in exchange for three times the quantity of brass and double the quantity of silver, because of their lack of experience in working gold and because of the scarcity of the things received in exchange, which are more important for the necessities of life.

19. Bordering upon these people is the very fertile country of the Sabaeans, a very large tribe, in whose country myrrh and frankincense and cinnamon are produced; and on the coast is found balsam, as also another kind of herb of very fragrant smell, which quickly loses its fragrance. There are also sweet-smelling palms, and reeds; and serpents a span in length, which are dark-red in colour, can leap even as far as a hare, and inflict an incurable bite. On account of the abundance of fruits the people are lazy and easy-going in their modes of life. Most of the populace sleep on the roots of trees which they have cut out of the ground. Those who live close to one another receive in continuous succession the loads of aromatics and deliver them to their next neighbours, as far as Syria and Mesopotamia; and when they are made drowsy by the sweet odours they overcome the drowsiness by inhaling

1 Surely a strange sort of bed—if the Greek text is correct. In 16. 4. 18, Strabo says that the Arabians, “on account of the number of wild beasts, build huts in trees and sleep there.”
τὸν κάρον ἀσφάλτου θυμιάματι καὶ τράγου πῶγ-

ωνος. ἡ δὲ πόλις τῶν Σαβαίων, ἡ Μαριάβα,1 κεῖται μὲν ἐπὶ ὅρους εὐδένδρου, ἐβασιλέα δ' ἔχει κύριον τῶν κρίσεων καὶ τῶν ἄλλων· ἐκ δὲ τῶν ἐβασιλεῖων2 οὐ θέμις ἐξείναι,3 ἡ καταλεύουσιν4 αὐτὸν παραχρῆμα οἱ ὄχλοι κατὰ τι λόγιον· ἐν χλιδῇ δ' ἐστὶ γυναικεία καὶ αὐτὸς καὶ οἱ περὶ αὐτὸν· τὰ δὲ πλήθη τὰ μὲν γεωργεί, τὰ δ' ἐμπο-

ρεύεται τὰ ἀρώματα τὰ τε ἐπιχώρια καὶ τὰ ἀπὸ τῆς Λιθιστίας, πλέοντες ἐπ' αὐτά διὰ τῶν στενῶν δερματίνων πολοίων· τοσαῦτα δ' ἔστι τὸ πλῆθος, ὡστ' ἀντὶ φρυγάνων καὶ τῆς καυσίμου ἤλιος χρῆσθαι κινναμόμορφο καὶ κασσία5 καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις. γίνεται δ' ἐν τοῖς Σαβαίοις καὶ τὸ λάριμυν, εὐωδεστατον θυμίαμα. ἐκ δὲ τῆς ἐμπορίας οὕτω τε καὶ Γερραίου πλουσιώτατοι· πάντων εἰσίν, ἔχουσι τε παμπληθὴ κατασκευήν χρυσωμάτων τε καὶ ἀργυρωμάτων, κλινῶν τε καὶ τριπόδων καὶ κρατήρων σὺν ἐκπώμασι καὶ τῇ τῶν οἰκῶν πολυτελεία· καὶ γὰρ θυρώματα καὶ τοῖχοι καὶ ὅροφαι δι' ἐλέφαντος καὶ χρυσοῦ καὶ ἀργύρου λιθοκολλήτου τυγχάνει διαπεποικιλμένα. ταῦτα μὲν περὶ τούτων εἰρήκε, τάλλα δὲ τὰ μὲν παρα-

πλησίως τῷ Ἐρατοσθένει λέγει· τὰ δὲ καὶ παρὰ τῶν ἄλλων ἱστορικῶν παρατίθησιν.

C 779 20. Ἐρυθράν γὰρ λέγειν τινὰς τὴν θάλατταν ἀπὸ τῆς χροιᾶς τῆς ἐμφανομένης κατ' ἀνάκλασιν, εἰτὲ ἀπὸ τοῦ ἡλίου κατὰ κορυφὴν οὕτως εἰτέ ἀπὸ

1 Μαριάβα, Tschucke, for Μερίαβα CFMowxz, Μερίαβα Ε, Μέρια Δή.
2 βασιλείων, the editors, instead of ἄλλων βασιλείων.
3 ἐξείναι, Kramer, for ἐξείναι.
the incense of asphalt and goats' beard. The city of the Sabaeans, Mariaba, is situated upon a well-wooded mountain; and it has a king who is authority in lawsuits and everything else; but it is not lawful for him to leave the palace, or, if he does, the rabble, in accordance with some oracle, stone him to death on the spot. Both he himself and those about him live in effeminate luxury; but the masses engage partly in farming and partly in the traffic in aromatics, both the local kinds and those from Aethiopia; to get the latter they sail across the straits in leathern boats. They have these aromatics in such abundance that they use cinnamon and cassia and the others instead of sticks and firewood. In the country of the Sabaeans is also found larimnum, a most fragrant incense. From their trafficking both the Sabaeans and the Gerrhaeans have become richest of all; and they have a vast equipment of both gold and silver articles, such as couches and tripods and bowls, together with drinking-vessels and very costly houses; for doors and walls and ceilings are variegated with ivory and gold and silver set with precious stones. This is Artemidorus' account of these peoples, but the rest of his statements are partly similar to those of Eratosthenes and partly quoted from the other historians.

20. For example, he says that some writers call the sea "Erythra"¹ from the colour it presents as the result of reflection, whether from the rays of the sun when it is in the zenith, or from the mountains,

¹ *i.e.* the Erythraean (Red) sea.

⁴ καταλέθουσιν, Leopardi, for καταλύουσιν.
⁵ κασίq ḫη.
tων ὀρῶν ἐρυθραίνομένων ἐκ τῆς ἀποκαύσεως· ἀμφοτέρως γὰρ εἰκάζειν. Κτησίαν δὲ τὸν Κνίδιον πηγὴν ἱστορεῖ ἐκδιδοῦσαν εἰς τὴν θάλασσαν ἐρευνῆς καὶ μιλτῶδες ύδωρ. Ὁ Ἀγαθαρχίδης δὲ τὸν ἐκείνου πολίτην παρὰ τίνος Βόξου, Πέρσου τὸ γένος, ἱστορήσας, διότι Πέρσους τις Ἐρύθρας, ἵπποφορβίον τινὸς ὑπὸ λεαίνης οὐστρῳ κατασχο-μένης έξελαθεντος μέχρι θαλάττης κάκειθεν εἰς νῆσον τινα διάραντος, σχεδίαν πηξάμενος πρῶτος περαιωθείη πρὸς τὴν νῆσον. ιδὼν δὲ καλῶς οἰκή-σιμον, τὴν μὲν ἄγελθην εἰς τὴν Περσίδα ἀπαγάγοι πάλιν, ἄποικοις δ' ἐκεῖ στείλαι τε καὶ τὰς ἄλλας νῆσους καὶ τὴν παραλίαν, ἐπώνυμον δὲ ποιήσειεν ἑαυτοῦ τὸ πέλαγος. τοὺς δὲ Περσέως ύιόν ἀπο-φαίνεσθαι τὸν Ἐρύθραν, ἡγήσασθαί τε τῶν τόπων. λέγεται δ' ὑπὸ τινων τὰ ἅπτο τῶν στενῶν τοῦ Ἀραβίου κόλπου μέχρι τῆς κυναμωμοφόρου τῆς ἐσχάτης πεντακσιχίλιων σταδίων, οὐκ εὐκρινῶς, εἰτ' ἐπὶ νότον εἰτ' ἐπὶ τὰς ἀνατολάς. λέγεται δὲ καὶ διότι ο σμάραγδος καὶ ο βήρυλλος ἐν τοῖς τοῦ χρυσίου μετάλλοις ἐνγενέται. εἰς δὲ καὶ ἄλας εὐώδεις εἰς Ἀραβίαν, ὡς φησὶ Ποσειδῶνος. 21. Πρῶτοι δ' ὑπὲρ τῆς Συρίας Ναβαταιοὶ καὶ Σαβαῖοι τὴν εὐδαιμονα Ἀραβίαν νέμονται καὶ πολλάκις κατέτρεξον αὐτῆς, πρὸν ἡ Ῥωμαίων γενέσθαι· νῦν δὲ κάκεινοι Ῥωμαίοις εἰσὶν ὑπόκουι καὶ Σύροι. μητρόπολις δὲ τῶν Ναβαταιῶν ἐστίν

1 Instead of ἀποκαύσεως, x reads ἐκκαύσεως, Eustathius (Ad. Dionys. 31) καύσεως, Corais ἐπικαύσεως.  
2 εἰκάζει moz; so Corais.  
3 Βόξου Dr., Ἐβόσου C and marg. F.  
4 Πέρσου, Casaubon inserts.  
5 κατασχομένης moz, κατασχομένου other MSS.
which have been reddened by the scorching heat; for, he continues, conjecture runs both ways about the cause; but Ctesias the Cnidian reports a spring, consisting of red and ochre-coloured water, as emptying into the sea; and Agatharcides, a fellow-citizen of Ctesias, reports from a certain Boxus, of Persian descent, that when a herd of horses had been driven out of the country by a passion-frenzied lioness as far as the sea and from there the herd had crossed over to a certain island, a certain Persian, Erythras by name, built a raft and was the first man to cross to the island; and that when he saw that it was beautifully adapted to habitation, he drove the herd back to Persis, sent forth colonists to that island and to the others and to the coast, and caused the sea to be named after himself; but other writers, he says, declare that Erythras was the son of Perseus, and that he ruled over this region. Some writers say that the distance from the straits of the Arabian Gulf to the extremity of the cinnamon-bearing country is five thousand stadia, without distinguishing clearly whether they mean towards the south or towards the east. It is said also that the emerald and the beryl are found in the gold mines. And there are also fragrant salts in the country of the Arabians, as Poseidonius says.

21. The first people above Syria who dwell in Arabia Felix are the Nabataeans and the Sabaeans. They often overran Syria before they became subject to the Romans; but at present both they and the Syrians are subject to the Romans. The metropolis of the Nabataeans is Petra, as it is

1 Rock.
Η Πέτρα καλομένη· κείται γαρ ἐπὶ χωρίου τάλλα ὀμαλοῦ καὶ ἐπιπέδου, κύκλω δὲ πέτρα φρουρομένου, τά μὲν ἐκτὸς ἀποκρήμνου καὶ ἀποτόμου, τά δ' ἐντὸς πηγᾶς ἁφθόνους ἔχοντος εἰς τε ύδρείαν καὶ κηπεῖαν. ἐξὼ δὲ τοῦ περιβόλου χώρα ἔρημος ἡ πλεῖστη, καὶ μάλιστα ἡ πρὸς Ἰουδαία· ταύτῃ δὲ καὶ ἐγγυτάτῳ ἐστὶ τριῶν ἢ τεττάρων ὅδους ἡμερῶν εἰς Ἱερικοῦντα,1 εἰς δὲ τὸν φοινικώνα πέντε. Βασιλεύεται μὲν οὖν ὅποι τινος ἢ ἔν τοὺς Πετραίοις 2 Ἀθηνόδωρος, ἀνὴρ φιλόσοφος καὶ ἡμῶν ἑταῖρος, διηγεῖτο θαυμάζων· εὑρείν γὰρ ἐπιθημοῦτας ἑφ' πολλοὺς μὲν Ῥωμαίων, πολλοὺς δὲ καὶ τῶν ἀλλῶν ξένων· τοὺς μὲν οὖν ξένους ὄραν κρινομένους πολλάκις καὶ πρὸς ἀλλήλους καὶ πρὸς τοὺς ἐπιχωρίους, τῶν δ' ἐπιχωρίων οὔδενας ἀλλήλους ἐγκαλοῦντας, ἀλλὰ τὴν πᾶσαν εἰρήνην ἄγοντας πρὸς ἕαυτοὺς.

C 780 22. Πολλὰ δὲ καὶ ἡ τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἐπὶ τοὺς Ἀραβας στρατεία νεωστὶ γεννηθείσα ἐφ' ἡμῶν, ὅν ἡγεμόνι ᾣν Αἴλιος Γάλλος, διδάσκει τῶν τῆς χώρας ἱδιωμάτων. τούτοις δ' ἐπεμψεν ὁ Σεβαστὸς Καῖσαρ διαπειρασόμενοι τῶν ἔθνων καὶ τῶν τόπων τούτων τε καὶ τῶν Αἰθιοπικῶν, ὥραν 3 τὴν τε Τρωγλοδυτικὴν τὴν προσεχὴ τῇ Αἰγύπτῳ γειτονεύουσαν τούτοις, καὶ τὸν Ἀράβιον κὸλπον

1 'Ιερικοῦντα E (with χ above κ), 'Ερικοῦντα CDFhw, 'Ιερι-κοῦντα τὸς.
2 πετραίοις marg. i, πετρλοις EFz, πατρλοις other MSS.
3 ὥραν F, ὥραν other MSS.
called; for it lies on a site which is otherwise smooth and level, but it is fortified all round by a rock, the outside parts of the site being precipitous and sheer, and the inside parts having springs in abundance, both for domestic purposes and for watering gardens. Outside the circuit of the rock most of the territory is desert, in particular that towards Judaea. Here, too, is the shortest road to Hiericus, a journey of three or four days, as also to the grove of palm trees, a journey of five days. Petra is always ruled by some king from the royal family; and the king has as Administrator one of his companions, who is called "brother." It is exceedingly well-governed; at any rate, Athenodorus, a philosopher and companion of mine, who had been in the city of the Petraeans, used to describe their government with admiration, for he said that he found both many Romans and many other foreigners sojourning there, and that he saw that the foreigners often engaged in lawsuits, both with one another and with the natives, but that none of the natives prosecuted one another, and that they in every way kept peace with one another.

22. Many of the special characteristics of Arabia have been disclosed by the recent expedition of the Romans against the Arabians, which was made in my own time under Aelius Gallus as commander. He was sent by Augustus Caesar to explore the tribes and the places, not only in Arabia, but also in Aethiopia, since Caesar saw that the Troglodyte country which adjoins Aegypt neighbours upon Arabia, and also that the Arabian Gulf, which

1 Jericho.  
2 See 16. 4. 18.
στενὸν ὄντα τελέως τῶν διείργοντα ἀπὸ τῶν Τρωγλοδυτῶν τοὺς Ἄραβας προσοικεῖονθαι δὴ
dιενόθη τούτοις ἡ καταστρέφεσθαι. ἦν δὲ τί
καὶ τὸ πολυχρημάτων ἀκούειν ἐκ παντὸς χρόνου,
πρὸς ἀργυροῦ καὶ χρυσοῦ τὰ ἀρώματα διατιθε-
μένους καὶ τὴν πολυτελεστάτην λιθίαν, ἄναλίσ-
κοντας τῶν λαμβανομένων τοῖς ἕξω μηδέν' ἡ γὰρ
φίλος ἠλπίζε πλουεῖν χρήσεσθαι ἡ ἐξήρων
κρατήσειν πλουσίων. ἐπὶ θερ' αὐτὸν καὶ ἡ
παρὰ τῶν Ναβαταῖων ἐλπίς, φίλων ὄντων καὶ
συμπράξεων ἀπανθ' ὑπισχυομένων.

23. Ἐπὶ τούτων μὲν οὖν ἐστειλε τὴν στρατείαν
ὁ Γάλλος ἐξηπάτησε δ' αὐτὸν ὁ τῶν Ναβαταίων
ἐπίτροπος Συλλαίος, ὑποσχόμενος μὲν ἡγήσεσθαι
τὴν ὁδὸν καὶ χορηγήσειν ἀπαντα καὶ συμπάξειν,
ἀπαντα δ' ἐξ ἐπιβουλῆς πράξας, καὶ οὔτε παρά-
πλον ἄσφαλῆ μηνύων, οὐθ' ὁδὸν, ἀλλὰ ἀνοδίαις
καὶ κυκλοπορίαις καὶ πάντων ἀπόροις χρώιοις, ἡ
ῥαξίας ἀλιμένοις παραβάλλων ἡ χοιράδων
ὑψάλων μεσταίς ἡ τεναχώδεις πλείστον δὲ αἱ
πλημμυρίδες ἐλύπουν, ἐν τοιούτως καὶ ταῦτα
χωρίους, καὶ αἱ ἀμπώτεις. πρῶτον μὲν δὴ τοῦθ'
ἀμάρτημα συνέβη τὸ μακρὰ κατασκευάσασθαι
πλοία, μηδενὸς ὄντος μηδ' ἐσομένου κατὰ θάλα-
ταν πολέμου. οὐδὲ γὰρ κατὰ γῆν σφόνδρα πολε-
μισται εἰςιν, ἀλλὰ κάπηλοι μᾶλλον ὁ τοῦ Ἀραβεῖος
καὶ ἓμπορικοὶ, μῆτι γε κατὰ θάλατταν. ὁ δ' οὖν
ἐλαττὸν ὅγδηκοντα ἐναυπηγήσατο δίκρωτα καὶ

1 Instead of δὲ τι, CDFh read δ' ἐτι.
2 λιθελαίν Eoxx.
3 χρήσεσθαι E, χρήσασθαι other MSS.
4 ἡγήσεσθαι, Corais, for ἡγήσασθαι.
separates the Arabians from the Troglodytes, is extremely narrow. Accordingly he conceived the purpose of winning the Arabians over to himself or of subjugating them. Another consideration was the report, which had prevailed from all time, that they were very wealthy, and that they sold aromatics and the most valuable stones for gold and silver, but never expended with outsiders any part of what they received in exchange; for he expected either to deal with wealthy friends or to master wealthy enemies. He was encouraged also by the expectation of assistance from the Nabataeans, since they were friendly and promised to co-operate with him in every way.

23. Upon these considerations, therefore, Gallus set out on the expedition; but he was deceived by the Nabataean Administrator, Syllaeus, who, although he had promised to be guide on the march and to supply all needs and to co-operate with him, acted treacherously in all things, and pointed out neither a safe voyage along the coast nor a safe journey by land, misguiding him through places that had no roads and by circuitous routes and through regions destitute of everything, or along rocky shores that had no harbours or through waters that were shallow or full of submarine rocks; and particularly in places of that kind the flood-tides, as also the ebb-tides, caused very great distress. Now this was the first mistake of Gallus, to build long boats, since there was no naval war at hand, or even to be expected; for the Arabians are not very good warriors even on land, rather being hucksters and merchants, to say nothing of fighting at sea. But Gallus built not less than eighty boats, biremes and
τριήρεις καὶ φασίλους κατὰ Κλεοπατρίδα τὴν πρὸς τῇ παλαιᾷ ἔφατεν τῇ ἀπὸ τοῦ Νεῖλον. γνοὺς δὲ διεφευγομένου ἐναυπηγήσατο σκευαγωγὰ ἐκατὸν καὶ τριάκοντα, οἷς ἐπελευσθὲν ἐχὼν περὶ μυρίους πεζῶς τῶν έκ τῆς Αἰγύπτου Ρωμαίων καὶ τῶν συμμάχων, ὃν ἦσαν Ὦνουκιοὺς μὲν πεντακόσιοι, Ναβαταῖοι δὲ χίλιοι μετὰ τοῦ Συλλαίου. πολλὰ δὲ παθῶν καὶ ταλαιπωρθηθέντες πεντεκαίδεκαταῖος ἦκεν εἰς Λευκῆν κόμην τῆς Ναβαταίου γῆς, ἐμπόριοι μέγα, πολλὰ τῶν πλοίων ἀποβαλῶν, ὃν ἔνια καὶ αὐταίδρα ὑπὸ δυσπλοίας, πολεμίου δ' οὖνδενός· τούτο δ' ἀπειράσατο ἤ τοῦ Συλλαίου C 781 κακίᾳ τοῦ μεξῆ ἡφθαντος ἀνόδευτα εἶναι στρατοπέδους εἰς τὴν Λευκῆν κόμην, εἰς ἢν καὶ εἰς ἢς οἱ καμηλέμποροι τοσοῦτο πλῆθει ἀνδρῶν καὶ καμήλων ὀδεύουσιν ἀσφαλῶς καὶ εὐπόρως εἰς Πέτραν καὶ ἐκ Πέτρας, ἄστε μὴ διαφέρειν μηδέν στρατοπέδου.

24. Συνέβαινε δὲ τούτῳ τοῦ μὲν βασιλέως τοῦ Ὄβοδα μὴ πολὺ φρουτίζοντος τῶν κοινῶν, καὶ μάλιστα τῶν κατὰ πόλεμον (κοινῶν δὲ τούτῳ πάσι τοῖς Ἄραβῶν βασιλεύσιν), ἀπαντᾷ δὲ ἐπὶ τῇ τοῦ ἐπιτρόπου ποιομένου ἔξουσίας τοῦ Συλλαίου τούτου δ' ἀπαντᾷ δόλῳ στρατηγοῦντος καὶ ξητοῦντος, ως οἴμαι, κατοπτεύει μὲν τὴν ἄφιναν καὶ συνεξελεῖν τινὰς αὐτῶν πόλεις καὶ ἐθνὶ μετὰ τῶν Ρωμαίων, αὐτὸν δὲ καταστήναι κύριον ἀπάντων, ἀφαιρεθέντων ἐκεῖνων ὑπὸ λιμοῦ καὶ κόπου καὶ νόσων καὶ ἄλλων, ὅσων δόλῳ παρεσκεύασεν ἐκείνος. εἰς γοῦν τὴν Λευκῆν κόμην

1 καὶ, before ἐκ, Casaubon inserts.
2 ἔξουσία omitted by MSS. except moz.
GEOGRAPHY, 16. 4. 23-24

triremes and light boats, at Cleopatris,¹ which is near the old canal which extends² from the Nile. But when he realised that he had been thoroughly deceived, he built one hundred and thirty vessels of burden, on which he set sail with about ten thousand infantry, consisting of Romans in Aegypt, as also of Roman allies, among whom were five hundred Jews and one thousand Nabataeans under Syllaeus. After many experiences and hardships he arrived in fourteen days at Leucê Comê³ in the land of the Nabataeans, a large emporium, although he had lost many of his boats, some of these being lost, crews and all, on account of difficult sailing, but not on account of any enemy. This was caused by the treachery of Syllaeus, who said that there was no way for an army to go to Leucê Comê by land; and yet camel-traders travel back and forth from Petra to this place in safety and ease, and in such numbers of men and camels that they differ in no respect from an army.

24. This came to pass because Obodas, the king, did not care much about public affairs, and particularly military affairs (this is a trait common to all the Arabian kings), and because he put everything in the power of Syllaeus; and because Syllaeus treacherously out-generalled Gallus in every way, and sought, as I think, to spy out the country and, along with the Romans, to destroy some of its cities and tribes, and then to establish himself lord of all, after the Romans were wiped out by hunger and fatigue and diseases and any other evils which he had treacherously contrived for them. However, Gallus put in at Leucê Comê, his army now being

¹ Also called Arsinoê (Suez); see 17. 1. 25.  
² i.e. to the gulf.  
³ i.e. "White Village."
κατήρεν, ἥδη στομακάκκη τε καὶ σκελοτύρβη 1 πειραξομένης τῆς στρατιᾶς, ἐπιχωρίους πάθεσιν, τὸν μὲν περὶ τὸ στόμα, τὸν δὲ περὶ τὰ σκέλη παράλυσιν τινα δηλούντων ἐκ τε τῶν ὑδρείων καὶ βοτανῶν. ἡγαγκάσθη γοῦν τὸ τε θέρος καὶ τὸν χειμῶνα διατελέσαι αὐτόθι, τοὺς ἀσθενοῦντας ἀνακτώμενος. ἐκ μὲν οὖν τῆς Δευκῆς κόμης εἰς Πέτραν, ἐντεύθεν δ' εἰς 'Ρινοκόλουρα 2 τῆς πρὸς Αἰγύπτω τοῦ Φοινίκης τὰ φορτία κομίζεται, καντεύθεν εἰς τοὺς ἄλλους. νῦν δὲ τὸ πλέον εἰς τὴν 'Αλεξάνδρειαν τῷ Νείλῳ κατάγεται δ' 3 εκ τῆς Ἀραβίας καὶ τῆς 'Ινδικῆς εἰς Μυὸς ὅρμου εἰθ' ύπέρθεσις 4 εἰς Κοπτῶν τῆς Θηβαϊδος καμῆλος ἐν διώρυγι τοῦ Νείλου κειμένην 5 εἰτ' 6 εἰς 'Αλεξάνδρειαν, πάλιν εκ τῆς Δευκῆς κόμης ὁ Γάλλος ἀναζεύξας τὴν στρατιὰν διὰ τοιούτων ἦς χωρίων, ὥστε καὶ ὕδωρ καμῆλος κομίζειν μοχθερία τῶν ἡγεμόνων τῆς ὀδοῦ, διόπερ πολλαῖς ἠμέραις ἤκεν εἰς τὴν 'Αρέτα γῆν, συγγενοὺς τῷ Ὄβόδα: ἐδέξατο μὲν οὖν αὐτὸν Ἀρέτας φιλικῶς καὶ δόρα προσήνεγκεν, ἢ δὲ τοῦ Συλλαίου προδοσία κάκευνη ἐποίησε τὴν χώραν δυσπόρευτον τριάκοντα γοῦν ἠμέραις διήλθεν αὐτήν, ζειάς καὶ φοίνικας ὀλίγους παρέχουσαν καὶ βούτυρον ἀντ' ἐλαίου, διὰ τὰς ἀνοδίας. ἢ δ' ἔξης, ἢν ἐπῆει, Νομάδων ἤν καὶ ἔρημος 7 τὰ πολλὰ ὦς ἄληθῶς,

1 σκελοτύρβη, Casaubon, for σκελοτύρβη.
2 'Ρινοκόλουρα, the reading of all MSS. here (cp. readings in 16. 1. 12 and 16. 2. 31).
3 Νείλω κατάγεται δ', Groskurd, for Νείλῳ κατάγεται τα δ'.
4 ὑπέρθεσις, Tzschucke, for ὑπερθέσεις.
5 κειμένην E, κειμένη other MSS.
sorely tried both with scurvy and with lameness in the leg, which are native ailments, the former disclosing a kind of paralysis round the mouth and the latter round the legs, both being the result of the native water and herbs. At all events, he was forced to spend both the summer and the winter there, waiting for the sick to recover. Now the loads of aromatics are conveyed from Leucê Comê to Petra, and thence to Rhinocolura, which is in Phoenicia near Aegypt, and thence to the other peoples; but at the present time they are for the most part transported by the Nile to Alexandria; and they are landed from Arabia and India at Myus Harbour; and then they are conveyed by camels over to Coptus in Thebaïs, which is situated on a canal of the Nile, and then to Alexandria. Again Gallus moved his army from Leucê Comê and marched through regions of such a kind that water had to be carried by camels, because of the baseness of the guides; and therefore it took many days to arrive at the land of Aretas, a kinsman of Obodas. Now Aretas received him in a friendly way and offered him gifts, but the treason of Syllaeus made difficult the journey through that country too; at any rate, it took thirty days to traverse the country, which afforded only zeia, a few palm trees, and butter instead of oil, because they passed through parts that had no roads. The next country which he traversed belonged to nomads and most of it was

1 Or zeia, a kind of coarse grain.

6 έισι, Kramer inserts, from conj. of Lebronne.
7 έρνως ους, έρνμα other MSS.
ἐκαλείτο δὲ Ἀραρηνὴ βασιλεὺς ὁ Ἰν Σάβως. ¹ καὶ ταύτην ἀνοδίας διήλθε κατατρίψας ἡμέρας πεντήκοντα μέχρι πόλεως Νεγράνων ² καὶ χώρας εἰρηνικῆς τε καὶ ἀγαθῆς. ὥ μὲν οὖν βασιλεὺς ἐφύγεν, ἤ δὲ πόλις ἐξ ἐφόδου κατελήφθη· ἐκεῖθεν ἡμέραις ἐξ ἦκεν ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν. συναψάντων δ' αὐτοῦ τῶν βαρβάρων εἰς μάχῃ, περὶ μυρίων αὐτῶν ἔπεσον, τῶν δὲ Ῥωμαίων δύο· ἔχρωντο γὰρ ἀπείρως τοῖς ὅπλοις, ἀπόλεμοι τελέως ὄντες, τοξοῦς τε καὶ λόγχαις καὶ ³ ἔφεσι καὶ σφενδόναι, οἱ πλείστοι δ' αὐτῶν ἀμφιστόμοι πελέκεσιν· εὐθὺς δὲ καὶ τὴν πόλιν εἰλικρινὲς ἀσκᾶ, ἀπολειφθεῖσαν ⁴ ὑπὸ τοῦ βασιλέως. ἐντεύθεν εἰς 'Αθρούλα πόλιν ἦκε, καὶ ⁵ κρατήσας αὐτῆς ἀκοινῆτο, φρουρὰν ἐμβαλὼν καὶ παρασκεύασάς εφόδια ⁶ σῖτον καὶ φονίκων εἰς πόλιν Μαρσίαβα ⁷ προῆλθεν ἐθνοὺς τοῦ 'Ραμμαντῶν, ⁸ οἱ ήσαν ὑπὸ Ἡλασάρω. ἐξ μὲν οὖν ἡμέρας προσβαλὼν ἑπολιόρκει, ἱεροῦριας δ' οὐσίας ἀπέστη· δύο μὲν οὖν ἡμέρων ὁδὸν ἀπέσχε τῆς ἀρωματοφόρου, καθάπερ τῶν αἰχμαλώτων ἀκούσαν ἦν· ἐξ δὲ μοῦ ὁχόν ἐν ταῖς ὁδοῦς κατέτριψε, φαύλως ἀγόμενος· ἐγνω δ' ἀναστρέφουν, ὤψε ⁹ τὴν ἐπιβουλὴν καταμαθῶν καὶ καθ' ἐτέρασ ὦδοὺς ἐπανελθὼν· ἐνναταῖος μὲν

¹ Instead of Σάβως, Dh read Σάβας, Σάβος morwxx.
² Instead of Νεγράνων, F has Ἀγράνων, CDhix Ἀγράνων, ἀγρανόν.
³ καί, Corais inserts.
⁴ ἀπολειφθεῖσαν, Corais, from conj. of Casaubon, for συλλη-φθεῖσαν.
⁵ καί, Corais inserts.
⁶ εφόδια mox, omitted by other MSS. except x, which has τροφάς.

360
truly desert; and it was called Ararenê; and its king was Sabos; and in passing through this country, through parts that had no roads, he spent fifty days, arriving at the city of the Negrani and at a country which was both peaceable and fertile. Now the king had fled and the city was seized at the first onset; and from there he arrived at the river in six days. Here the barbarians joined battle with the Romans, and about ten thousand of them fell, but only two Romans; for they used their weapons in an inexperienced manner, being utterly unfit for war, using bows and spears and swords and slings, though most of them used a double-edged axe; and immediately afterwards he took the city called Asca, which had been forsaken by its king; and thence he went to a city called Athrula; and, having mastered it without a struggle, he placed a garrison in it, arranged for supplies of grain and dates for his march, advanced to a city called Marsiaba, which belonged to the tribe of the Rhammanitae, who were subject to Ilasarus. Now he assaulted and besieged this city for six days, but for want of water desisted. He was indeed only a two days' journey from the country that produced aromatics, as informed by his captives, but he had used up six months' time on his marches because of bad guidance, and he realised the fact when he turned back, when at last he had learned the plot against him and had gone back by other roads;

1 Negrana.

7 Μαρσιαβά CDh, Μαρσόβασα mxxz. Kramer conj. Μαρίαβα.
8 'Ραμανιτῶν F, 'Ραμανιτῶν Cixx.
9 ὅψε, Xylander, for ὅψεi.
γὰρ εἰς Νέγρανα ἦκεν, ὅτου ἡ μάχη συμβεβήκει, ἐνδεκαταῖος δὲ ἐκεῖθεν εἰς Ἑπτὰ πρεάτα καλούμενα ἀπὸ τοῦ συμβεβηκότος· ἐντεύθεν ἦδη δι' εἰρημικῆς εἰς Χάαλλα κόμην καὶ πάλιν ἄλλην Μαλόθαι πρὸς ποταμῷ κειμένην ἀφικνεῖται· εἰτὰ δι' ἐρήμης ὅλιγα ὑδρεία ἔχουσις ὀδοὺς μέχρι Ἐγρᾶς κόμης. ἔστι δὲ τῆς Ὀβόδας κεῖται δ' ἐπὶ θαλάττης. τὴν πᾶσαν ὄδον ἕξικοσταῖος ἐξήνυσε κατὰ τὴν ἐπάνωδον, ἀναλώσας ἐξ μῆνας ἐν τῇ ἐξ ἀρχῆς ὀδῷ. ἐντεύθεν δ' ἐπεραιώσε τὴν στρατιάν ἐνδεκαταῖος εἰς Μυὸς ὤμον, εἰθ' ὑπερθεῖς εἰς Κόπτου μετὰ τῶν ὄνυθῆναι δύναμεν κατῆρεν εἰς 'Αλεξάνδρειαν· τούς δὲ ἄλλους ἀπέβαλεν, οὐχ ύπὸ πολέμων, ἄλλα νόσου καὶ κόπων καὶ λιμοῦ καὶ μοχθηρίας τῶν ὀδῶν· ἐπεὶ κατὰ πόλεμον ἐπτά γε μόνοις διαφθαρῆναι συνέβη. δὲ ἂς αἰτίας οὕτ' ἐπὶ πολὺ πρὸς τὴν γνώσιν τῶν τόπων ὄνυθεν ἡ στρατεία αὐτὴ· μικρὰ δ' ὡμοί συνήργησεν. ὁ δ' αἰτίος τούτων ὁ Συλλαῖος ἔτισε δίκας ἐν Ὀώμη, προσποιούμενος μὲν φιλίαν, ἐλεγχθεῖς δὲ πρὸς ταύτῃ τῇ πονηρίᾳ καὶ ἄλλα κακοουργῶν καὶ ἀποτμηθεῖς τὴν κεφαλῆν.

25. Τὴν μὲν οὖν ἄρωματοφόρον διαιροῦσιν εἰς τέτταρας μερίδας, ὡσπερ εἰρήκαμεν τῶν ἄρωμά—

1 Νέγρανα Γ, Ανάγραν ω, Ανάγρανα other MSS.
2 εἰρημικῆς, Corais, for εἰρήνης.
3 ἢν have Ἐγρᾶς, mox Nεγρᾶs (ep. Steph. Byz. s.v. Ἀδριανά). 
4 'Οβόδα CDhx.
5 ἕξικοσταῖος, Casaubon, for ἕξικοστὴν mox, ἕξικοστῶν other MSS.
6 ὑπερθεῖς, Corais, for ὑπερθεσις.
7 ὄνυθῆναι E, ὄνυθῆναι other MSS., σωθῆναι Meineke, from conj. of Kramer.
362
for on the ninth day he arrived at Negrana, where the battle had taken place, and thence on the eleventh day at Hepta Phreata, as the place is called, from the fact that it has seven wells; and thence, at last, marching through a peaceable country, he arrived at a village called Chaalla, and again at another village called Malotha, which is situated near a river; and then through a desert country, which had only a few watering-places, as far as a village called Egra. The village is in the territory of Obodas; and it is situated on the sea. On his return he accomplished the whole journey within sixty days, although he had used up six months in his first journey. Thence he carried his army across the Myus Harbour within eleven days, and marched by land over to Coptus, and, with all who had been fortunate enough to survive, landed at Alexandria. The rest he had lost, not in wars, but from sickness and fatigue and hunger and bad roads; for only seven men perished in war. For these reasons, also, this expedition did not profit us to a great extent in our knowledge of those regions, but still it made a slight contribution. But the man who was responsible for this failure, I mean Syllaeus, paid the penalty at Rome, since, although he pretended friendship, he was convicted, in addition to his rascality in this matter, of other offences too, and was beheaded.

25. Now writers divide the country that produces aromatics into four parts, as I have said before;¹

¹ 16. 4. 2.

---

8 γε μόνους E, omitted by moz, γειομένον F, γειομένον other MSS.
9 ταύτη, Casaubon, for αὐτῆ.
After φασί, Meyer (Bot. Erleut. zur Strabo's Geog. p. 130), would add the words κυνάμωμον δὲ ἐκ θάμων.

2 κασσίας, Jones, following the MSS., instead of κασίας, the spelling adopted here and elsewhere by Kramer and Meineke.

3 λιμνῶν, Corais emends to θάμων; so Groskurd, Kramer and Meineke, who cite Theophrastus Hist. Plant. 9. 5, Pliny Hist. Nat. 12. 43, Celsus 5. 23. 1, 2, but not Arrian (Exped. 7. 20. 4), who (cited by C. Müller) says: ἦκουεν ἐκ μὲν τῶν λιμνῶν τὴν κασίαν γίνεσθαι αὐτοῖς, ἀπὸ δὲ τῶν δένδρων.
and, among the aromatics, they say that frankincense and myrrh are produced from trees\(^1\) and that cassia is produced also from marshes.\(^2\) Some say that most of the latter comes from India and that the best frankincense is produced near Persis. But, according to another division, Arabia Felix is split up into five kingdoms, one of which comprises the warriors, who fight for all; another, the farmers, who supply food to all the rest; another, those who engage in the mechanical arts; another, the myrrh-bearing country, and another the frankincense-bearing country, although the same countries produce cassia, cinnamon, and nard. Occupations are not changed from one class to another, but each and all keep to those of their fathers. The greater part of their wine is made from the palm. Brothers are held in higher honour than children. The descendants of the royal family not only reign as kings, but also hold other offices, in accordance with seniority of birth; and property is held in common by all kinsmen, though the eldest is lord of all. One woman is also wife for all; and he who first enters the house before any other has intercourse with her, having first placed his staff before the door, for by custom each man must carry a staff; but she spends the night with the eldest. And therefore all children are brothers. They also have intercourse with their mothers; and the penalty for an adulterer is death;

\(^1\) Possibly the Greek for “and cinnamon is produced from bushes” has fallen out of the text here (see critical note).

\(^2\) i.e. as well as from bushes (but see critical note).

\(\text{τὴν σμύρναν τε καὶ τὸν λιβανωτὸν, ἐκ δὲ τῶν θάμνων τὸ κιννάμω-}
\muον τέμυνεσθαι.\)

\(^4\) κασίαν all MSS. except F, which has κασίαν.
Strabo

26. Some other MSS. except F. hesitate to emend to ὅγκῳ, the emendation of Tyrwhitt generally accepted by later editors.

1 ἐξεις μοι.
2 εἰτ' ἄλλην omitted by MSS. except F.
3 ἐπαγαγοῦντα, Corais, for ἐπαγαγότα.
4 ὅγκῳ, Jones hesitates to emend to οἴκῳ, the emendation of Tyrwhitt generally accepted by later editors.
5 συνέχεις ἢ, συνεχῆ other MSS., συνεχῆ ποιεῖ μοι.
but only the person from another family is an adulterer.\(^1\) A daughter of one of the kings who was admired for her beauty had fifteen brothers, who were all in love with her, and therefore visited her unceasingly, one after another. At last, being tired out by their visits, she used the following device: she had staves made like theirs, and, when one of them left her, she always put a staff like his in front of the door, and a little later another, and then another—it being her aim that the one who was likely to visit her next might not have a staff similar to the one in front of the door; and so once, when all the brothers were together at the market-place, one of them, going to her door and seeing the staff in front of it, surmised that someone was with her; and, from the fact that he had left all his brothers in the market-place, he suspected that her visitor was an adulterer; but after running to his father and bringing him to the house, he was proved to have falsely accused his sister.

26. The Nabataeans are a sensible people, and are so much inclined to acquire possessions that they publicly fine anyone who has diminished his possessions and also confer honours on anyone who has increased them. Since they have but few slaves, they are served by their kinsfolk for the most part, or by one another, or by themselves; so that the custom extends even to their kings. They prepare common meals together in groups of thirteen persons; and they have two girl-singers for each banquet. The king holds many drinking-bouts in magnificent style, but no one drinks more than eleven cupfuls,

\(^1\) The Greek indicates merely the male adulterer.
27. Τού δὲ ποιητοῦ λέγοντος,

Αἰθιοπάς θ' ἰκόμην καὶ Σιδονίους καὶ Ἑремβοῦς,

1 ποτε, Corais, for τό.
each time using a different golden cup. The king is so democratic that, in addition to serving himself, he sometimes even serves the rest himself in his turn. He often renders an account of his kingship in the popular assembly; and sometimes his mode of life is examined. Their homes, through the use of stone, are costly; but, on account of peace, the cities are not walled. Most of the country is well supplied with fruits except the olive; they use sesame-oil instead. The sheep are white-fleeced and the oxen are large, but the country produces no horses. Camels afford the service they require instead of horses. They go out without tunics, with girdles about their loins, and with slippers on their feet—even the kings, though in their case the colour is purple. Some things are imported wholly from other countries, but others not altogether so, especially in the case of those that are native products, as, for example, gold and silver and most of the aromatics, whereas brass and iron, as also purple garb, styrax, crocus, costaria, embossed works, paintings, and moulded works are not produced in their country. They have the same regard for the dead as for dung, as Heracleitus says: "Dead bodies more fit to be cast out than dung"; and therefore they bury even their kings beside dung-heaps. They worship the sun, building an altar on the top of the house, and pouring libations on it daily and burning frankincense.

27. When the poet says, "I came to Aethiopians and Sidonians and Erembians," historians are

1 Od. 4. 84.

2 ἐπιχωριάζει Ἔ, ἐπιχωριάζειν other MSS. Kramer conj. ὅτι before the verb, Corais τά.
3 χρυσός καὶ ἄργυρος Ἔ, χρύσον καὶ ἄργυρον.
διαπορούσι, καὶ περὶ τῶν Σιδονίων μέν, εἴτε τινάς χρη λέγειν τῶν ἐν τῷ Περσικῷ κόλπῳ κατοικοῦντων, ὧν ἀποικοὶ οἱ παρ' ἥμιν Σιδονίοι, καθάπερ καὶ Τυρίων τινὰς ἐκεῖ νησίωτας ἱστοροῦσι καὶ Ἀραβίους, ὥν ἀποίκους τοὺς παρ' ἥμιν φασίν, εἴτε αὐτοὺς τοὺς Σιδονίους. ἄλλα μᾶλλον περὶ τῶν 'Ἐρεμβῶν ἡ ζήτησις, εἴτε τοὺς Τρωγλοδύτας ὑπονοητέον λέγεσθαι, καθάπερ οἱ τὴν ἐντυμολογίαν βιαζόμενου ἀπὸ τοῦ εἰς τὴν ἔραν ἐμβαίνειν, ὅπερ ἐστὶν εἰς τὴν γῆν, εἴτε τοὺς Ἀραβᾶς. ὁ μὲν οὖν Ζήμων ὁ ἥμετερος μεταγράφει οὕτως:
καὶ Σιδονίους Ἀραβάς τε.
πιθανότερον δὲ Ποσειδώνιος γράφει τῷ παρὰ μικρὸν ἄλλαξαι
καὶ Σιδονίους καὶ Ἀραμβούς,1
ὡς τοῦ ποιητοῦ τοὺς νῦν Ἀραβᾶς οὕτω καλέσαντος, καθάπερ καὶ ὑπὸ τῶν ἄλλων ὠνομάζοντο κατ' αὐτόν. φησὶ δὲ ταῦτα τρία ἑθνη, συνεχὴ ἄλληλοις ἱδρυμένα, ὁμογενεῖαν τινα ἐμφαίνειν πρὸς ἄλληλα, καὶ διὰ τοῦτο 2 παρακειμένοις ὄνομασί κεκλήσθαι, τοὺς μὲν Ἀρμενίους, τοὺς δὲ Ἀραμαίους,3 τοὺς δὲ Ἀραμβούς,4 ὡσπερ δὲ ἀπὸ ἑθνοῦς 5 ἐνὸς ὑπολαμβάνειν ἐστίν εἰς τρία διηρήσθαι κατὰ τὰς τῶν κλιμάτων διαφορὰς ἀεὶ καὶ μᾶλλον ἐξαλλαττομένων, οὕτω καὶ τοῖς ὄνομασι

1 Ἀραμβούς, Corais, for Ἐρεμβούς.
2 τοῦτο, Groskurd, for τό.
3 Ἀραμαίους marg. F, Kramer; Ἀρμίους F, Ἀράβους i, Ἀραβάους other MSS.
4 Ἀραμβούς marg. F, Ἐρεμβούς elsewhere in MSS.
5 For ἀπὸ ἑθνοῦς, Corais reads πιθανῶς.

370
entirely at loss to know, in the first place, in regard to the Sidonians, whether one should call them a certain people who dwelt on the Persian Gulf, from whom the Sidonians in our part of the world were colonists, just as they speak of Tyrians there, islanders, as also of Arabians, from whom they say those in our part of the world were colonists, or whether one should call them the Sidonians themselves; but, secondly, the inquiry about the Erembians is more doubtful, whether one should suspect that the Troglodytes are meant, as do those who force the etymology of "Erembi" from *eran embainein,* that is, *go into the earth,* or the Arabians. Now our Zeno alters the text thus: "and to Sidonians and Arabians"; but Poseidonius more plausibly writes, with only a slight alteration of the text, "and Sidonians and Arambians," on the ground that the poet so called the present Arabians, just as they were named by all others in his time. Poseidonius says that the Arabians consist of three tribes, that they are situated in succession, one after another, and that this indicates that they are homogeneous with one another, and that for this reason they were called by similar names—one tribe "Armenians," another "Aramaeans," and another "Arambians." And just as one may suppose that the Arabians were divided into three tribes, according to the differences in the latitudes, which ever vary more and more, so also one may suppose that they used several names

1 *i.e.* those on the Mediterranean.
3 *i.e.* of our Stoic School.

6 *ēvōs,* inserted by editors from conj. of Tyrwhitt.
χρήσασθαι πλείοσιν ἀνθ' ἐνόσ. οὐδ' οἱ 'Ερεμνοὺς γράφοντες πιθανοὶ· τῶν γὰρ Αἰθιόπων μᾶλλον ἰδιον. λέγει δὲ καὶ τοὺς Ἀρίμους ὁ ποιητής, οὕς φησὶ Ποσειδώνιος δέχεσθαι δεῖν μὴ τόπον τινὰ τῆς Συρίας ἢ τῆς Κιλικίας ἢ ἄλλης των γῆς, C 785 ἀλλὰ τὴν Συρίαν αὐτήν Ἰ Αραμαιοῦ 1 γὰρ οἱ ἐν αὐτῇ, τάχα δ' οἱ Ἑλληνες Ἀριμαιόνους 2 ἐκάλουν ἢ Ἀρίμους. αἱ δὲ τῶν ὕπομάτων μεταπτώσεις, καὶ μᾶλιστα τῶν βαρβαρικῶν, πολλαί· καθάπερ τὸν Δαριήκην Δαρεῖον ἐκάλεσαν, τὴν δὲ Φάρξηριν 3 Παρύσατιν, 4 Ἀταργάτιν 5 δὲ τὴν Ἀθάραν, 6 Δερκετὼ δ' αὐτὴν Κηθσίας καλεῖ. τῆς δὲ τῶν Ἀράβων εὐδαιμονίας καὶ Ἀλέξανδρον ἃν τις ποιήσαι μάρτυρα τὸν διανοηθέντα, ὡς φασί, καὶ βασιλεὺς αὐτῆς ποιήσαπε μετὰ τὴν ἔξ Ἰνδῶν ἐπάνων. πᾶσαι μὲν οὖν αἱ ἐπιχειρήσεις αὐτοῦ κατελύθησαν, τελευτήσατο παραχρήμα τὸν βίον μία δ' οὖν καὶ αὐτῇ τῶν ἐπιχειρήσεων ἢν, εἰ μὲν ἐκόντες παραδέχομαι αὐτὸν εἰ δὲ μὴ, ὡς πολεμήσοντος· καὶ δὴ ὁρῶν μήτε πρότερον μήθ᾽ ύστερον πέμψαντας ὡς αὐτὸν πρέσβεις, παρεσκευάζετο πρὸς τὸν πόλεμον, ὡσπερ εἰρήκαμεν ἐν τοῖς ἐμπροσθεν.

1 Ἰ Αραμαιοῦ, Corais, for Ἰ Αριμαιοῦ.
2 Ἰ Αριμαιόνου, Corais, for Ἰ Αραμαιοῦ.
3 Φάρξηριν F.
4 Παρυσάτην D first hand.
5 Ἰ Αταργάτην D first hand.
6 Ἰ Αθάραν Dhi., Ἰ Αθάρα other MSS.
instead of one. Neither are those who write "Eremni"\(^1\) plausible; for that name is more peculiarly applicable to the Aethiopians. The poet also mentions "Arimi,"\(^2\) by which, according to Poseidonius, we should interpret the poet as meaning, not some place in Syria or in Cilicia or in some other land, but Syria itself; for the people in Syria are Aramaeans, though perhaps the Greeks called them Arimaeans or Arimi. The changes in names, and particularly in those of the barbarians, are numerous: for example, they called Dareius "Darieces," Parysatis "Pharziris," and Athara "Atargatis," though Ctesias calls her "Derceto." As for the blest lot of Arabia,\(^3\) one might make even Alexander a witness thereof, since he intended, as they say, even to make it his royal abode after his return from India. Now all his enterprises were broken up because of his sudden death; but, at any rate, this too was one of his enterprises, to see whether they would receive him voluntarily, and if they did not, to go to war with them; and accordingly, when he saw that they had not sent ambassadors to him, either before or after,\(^4\) he set about making preparations for war, as I have stated heretofore in this work.\(^5\)

\(^1\) Black (people).  \(^2\) *Iliad* 2. 783.  
\(^3\) It was called "Arabia the Blest," "Arabia Felix."  
\(^4\) *i.e.* his expedition to India.  \(^5\) 16. 1. 11.

[End of Vol. VII.]
A PARTIAL DICTIONARY OF PROPER NAMES

A

Abisarus, country of, 49
Acesines River, the, 47, 49
Adiabenê, 193, 225
Adrapsa (Gadrapsa ?), 147
Aelana, 313
Aelius Gallus, the Roman commander, 353, 355
Aeschylus, on the mother of Memnon, 159
Aethiopians, the, complexion and hair of, 39
Agrippa, 265
Alexander Balas, conquered by Ptolemy Philometor, 247
Alexander the Great, 3, 5, 7, 13, 41, 43, 47, 55, 59, 61, 107, 113, 133, 139, 143, 145, 163, 165, 167, 169, 189, 199 (his death), 205, 209, 211, 267, 269, 289, 313, 373
Alexandria, 359
Anaitis, temple of, 177
Andromeda, myth of, 275
Androstenes the sailor, 303
Anea, temple of, 197
Antigonia, 243
Antigonus, 243
Antilbanus, Mt., 213, 259
Antiocheia near Daphnê, 241, 243
Antiochus Hierax, 259
Antiochus the Great, 223
Antiochus the philosopher, 277
Antipater the Tyrian, 271
Antony, 237, 299
Apameia, 241, 249, 251
Apollodorus, author of the Parthica, 5
Apolloniatis (Sitacenê), 173, 193
Apollonius, the Tyrian philosopher, 271
Arabia, 161, 237, 299, 307, 353
Arabia Felix, 237, 309, 365, 373
Arabian Scenitae, the, 233, 235, 301

Aristobulus (Dictionary in vol. v), 23, 27, 29, 35, 39, 105, 107, 109, 165, 167, 209, 211, 303
Aristobulus, son of Alexander, 289
Aristotle, on child-bearing in Aegypt and on rivers in India and Aegypt, 37; on the Silas River, 67
Aristus of Salamis, the historian, 167
Armenians, the, 225
Arsaces, house of, 237
Arses, last successor of Dareius, 189
Artacene, 197
Artemidorus (see Dictionary in vol. ii), on the Ganges River, 125; 281, 315, 335, 337, 341, 349
Artemita, 219
Arii, the, 143
Assacanus, country of, 47
Assyria, 193, 225
Astaceni, the, 47
Astyages the Mede, conquered by Cyrus, 169
Atargatis, Syrian goddess, 235
Atena Currhestis, 247
Aturia, 193, 195, 197

B

Babylon, 163, 169, 195, 197, 201, 219
Babylonia, 193, 203, 215, 217
Babylonians, the, 225
Bactriana, 43, 145, 147
Bagolîs the eunuch, 189
Bambyce, 235
Bandothenê, 45
Belus, tomb of, 199; temple of, 223
Berenice, daughter of Salomê, 299
Berytus (Beyrout), 263, 267

1 A complete index of the whole work will appear in the next volume.
### A PARTIAL DICTIONARY OF PROPER NAMES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Proper Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bessus</td>
<td>Pursuit of, by Alexander, 145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boethus, the Sidonian philosopher</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Borsippa</td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boxus the Persian</td>
<td>351</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brachmanes (Brahmans)</td>
<td>the, 99, 123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buephalla</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Byblus</td>
<td>Royal residence of Cinyras, 263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bessus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caesar Augustus</td>
<td>5, 237, 299, 353</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calandus</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calanus, the Indian sophist</td>
<td>109, 119, 121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cambyses, son of Cyrus</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cappadocia</td>
<td>Sacrifices in, 177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caprus Kiver</td>
<td>the, 197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardaces</td>
<td>the, 181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carmania</td>
<td>151, 153, 221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carmel, Mt.</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carna (Carnana)</td>
<td>311</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carrhae</td>
<td>231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Casius, Mt.</td>
<td>211, 213, 273, 275, 279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cathaea</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cattabania</td>
<td>311</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caucasus, the</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cayster Plain</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cecillus Bassus</td>
<td>253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chaarene</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chaldaens, the</td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chaldaean, the</td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chalmonitis (near Mt. Zagrus)</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charronotitis</td>
<td>311</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chazene, 193</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choaspes River</td>
<td>the, 45, 159, 161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cidunus the Chaldaean</td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cinyras</td>
<td>Tyrant of Byblus, 263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cleitus (see Dictionary in vol. ii)</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cleopatra (Selenë)</td>
<td>241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cleopatris (Suez)</td>
<td>357</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coelé-Syria</td>
<td>211, 239, 261, 265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commagenë</td>
<td>231, 239, 241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coniaci, the, inhabitants of Taprobane (Ceylon)</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cophes River</td>
<td>the, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coprates River</td>
<td>the, 163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cossaea</td>
<td>221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Craterus, general of Alexander</td>
<td>133, 135, 147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crassus, slain at Sinnaca</td>
<td>231; 237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ctesias (see Dictionary in vol. i), on India, 17; 351, 373</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ctesiphon</td>
<td>219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyrus the Great</td>
<td>(see Dictionary in vol. v), expeditions of, 7, 9, 135, 145; 157, 165, 169, 189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyrus River, the</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### D

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Proper Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Damascus</td>
<td>265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dareius</td>
<td>43, 167, 169, 185, 189, 197, 305, 373</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delmachus (see Dictionary in vol. i), on India</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deîrë, Strait of</td>
<td>313, 315</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demetrias</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Democritus, on the Silas River</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diodotus, brother of the Sidonian philosopher Boethus</td>
<td>271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diogenes, on abating from meat</td>
<td>113, 219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dionysus, invader of India</td>
<td>7, 9, 11, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dolabella, the general</td>
<td>249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dolomene</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drangae, the</td>
<td>141, 143, 145</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### E

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Proper Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ecbatana</td>
<td>169, 219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edessa (Bambycë)</td>
<td>235</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elephas, Mt.</td>
<td>333</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elymaei</td>
<td>173, 193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emoda Mountains</td>
<td>49, 125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eratosthenes (see Dictionary in vol. i), 211, 215, 229, 231, 297, 301, 303, 309</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Euratidas, Indian King</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eumenedes, founder of Ptolemaïs</td>
<td>319; harbour of, 327</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Euphrates River, the</td>
<td>161, 205, 213, 229, 235</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Euripides, on India</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evergetae, the</td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### G

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Proper Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gabae</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gadaris</td>
<td>297</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gadrapsa (see Drapsa)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galilee</td>
<td>281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gandaritis</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ganges River, the</td>
<td>19, 47, 61, 121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garmanes (Sramans)</td>
<td>the, 99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gaugamela</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gaza</td>
<td>277, 279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gedrosia</td>
<td>133, 153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gedrosil, the</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gennesaritis Lake</td>
<td>261</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
A PARTIAL DICTIONARY OF PROPER NAMES

Gerrha (Adj.): 303
Gerrhaeans, the, 319
Gindaros, 247
Gordyaeans, the, 193, 231
Gordyene, 233
Gordys, son of Triptolemus, 233
Gorgus, the mining expert, 53
Greeks, ruled by Persians, 187

II
Heraclea, 247
Heracleitus, 369
Heracles, invader of India, 7, 11, 13; worshipped at Pyre, 269
Herod, 281
Herodotus, on the Nile, 23
Hierapolis (Bambyce), 235
Hiericus (Jericho), 281, 291, 353
Homer, 9, 43, 95, 187, 267, 287, 369, 373
Hyarotis River, the, 47
Hydaspes River, the, 47, 49, 55
Hypanis River, the, 47, 55
Hyrcan, son of Alexander, 289

I
Ichthyophagi, the, 131, 313, 317
Idanthyrsus the Scythian, overran Asia, 9
India, description of, 3–129; caste system in, 67–83
Indians, the complexion and hair of, 39; simple life of, 87
Indus River, the, 15, 17, 19, 55, 59
Iopé (Jaffa), 275
Isis, temple of, 319
Ituraeans, the, 263

J
Jerusalem, 275, 281, 283
Jordan River, the, 261
Judaea, 239, 267, 281, 289

L
Laodiceia, 241, 249
Libanus, Mt., 213, 259
Lycurges the lawgiver, 287
Lycus River, the, 195, 261, 263
Lydians, the, 187

M
Macedonians, the, 187, 197, 201
Macras Plain, the, 261
Magi, the, 119, 157, 167, 177, 183, 189, 289
Mallai, the, 57
Mandanis, the sophist, 111, 113
Mariaba (Marib), 311, 349
Masiotes, the, 47
Matis, Mt., 251
Masoga, 47
Massyasses Plain, the, 263
Megalithes (see Dictionary in vol. i), on India, 7, 9, 21, 63, 65, 67, 81, 91, 93, 95, 97, 99, 101, 119
Medes, the, 187, 195, 225
Medus River, the, 165
Megillus, on India, 29
Meleager, native of Gadaris, 277
Menippus the satirist, native of Gadaris, 277
Meroë, 321
Mesopotamia, 227, 233, 299
Metrodorus of Scepsis, 337
Minos the Cretan King, 287
Moasada, 297
Mothus, the Sidonian, 271
Moses, the Egyptian priest and founder of Jerusalem, 283, 285, 289, 291
Muscanus, country of, 33, 57, 59
Mygdonia, the, 231
Myus Harbour, 315, 363

N
Nabataeans, the, 351, 367
Nabocodrosor, leader of army to Pillars of Heracles, 7, 9
Naburianus the Chaldaean, 203
Nearchus (see Dictionary in vol. i), 7, 19, 23, 27, 33, 41, 115, 117, 129, 133, 149, 151, 155, 161, 173, 303, 305, 307
Negrawa, 361, 363
Nicolaï Damascenus, on the Indian ambassadors to Caesar Augustus, 125, 127
Ninus, 193
Ninus, founder of Ninus, 195
Nisibis, 231
Nysaei, the, 47

377
A PARTIAL DICTIONARY OF PROPER NAMES

O
Omanus, temple of, 177
Onescritus (see Dictionary in vol. i), on India, 17, 21, 29, 31, 33, 39, 49, 53, 91, 111, 113, 115, 135, 153, 163, 167
Ophiodes, the island, 317
Opis, 205
Oreitae, the, 129, 139
Orontes River, the, 155, 163, 245, 251
Poseidonius (see Dictionary in vol. i), on the springs of naphtha in Babylonia, 217; native of Apameia, 255; on the fallen dragon in the Macras Plain, 261; on the dogma about atoms, 271; on the sorcerers about the Dead Sea, 295; on Arabian salts, 351
Pramnae, the, Indian sophists, 123
Prasi, the, 63
Prometheus, story of, 13
Psammitichus, 321
Ptolemys (Ace), 271, 319
Ptolemy Philadelphus, 319
Ptolemy Philometor, conqueror of Alexander Balas, 247
Pythagoras, doctrines of, 113
Pytholali, promontory of, 331; pillars and altars of, 335

S
Sabaeans, the, 347, 349, 351
Sabata (Sawal), 311
Sabus, country of, 57
Salome, Herod's sister, 299
Samaria, 281
Samosata, 241
Sandracae, 197
Sandrocottus, the King, 63, 95, 143
Sarpod, the general, 273
Scenae, near Babylon, 235
Seleucia (Cleopatra), 241
Seleucia in Pieria, 241
Seleucia on the Tigris, 201, 219, 243
Seleucis, 241
Seleucus Callinicus, 243, 259
Seleucus the Chaldaean, 203
Seleucus Nicator, Syrian King, 5, 143, 201, 241, 243, 251
Senemarhis, the queen, 7, 135, 195
Seres, the, 61, 63
Sesostris the Egyptian, 7, 313, 319
Sibae, the, 57
Sidon, 257, 267, 269
Silas River, the, 67
Simonides, on the Hyperboreans, 97; on the burial-places of Memon, 159
Sinnaca, 231
Sirbonis, Lake, 279, 281, 293
Sitacene (Apolloniatis), 173, 221
Socrates, abstaining from meat, 113
Sopethes, country of, 51
Sophocles, on Mt. Nysa, 9
A PARTIAL DICTIONARY OF PROPER NAMES

Strato, Tower of, 275
Sudinus the Chaldaean, 203
Scez (see Cleopatris),
Surna, Parthian general, slayer of
Crassus, 231
Susa, 157, 159, 163, 169
Susis, 157, 169, 171, 215
Sydracae, the, 57
Syllaenus the Nabataean, 355, 357
Syria, 239, 285
Syrians, the White, 193
Syrians, the, 193, 195, 351

T

Tamna, 311
Taprobané (Ceylon), 21
Taurus, the, 193, 229
Taxila, 47
Taxiles, King of Taxila, 47, 113
Tearco, the Aethiopian, 7
Theodectes, on the complexion and
hair of the Aethiopians, 39
Theodorus the rhetorician, native of
Gadaris, 277
Tigranes, 225, 231, 241, 249
Tigranocerta, 231
Tigris River, the, 161, 205, 213, 229
Timagenes, on the raining of brass
from the sky, 97
Tithonus, father of Memnon and
founder of Susa, 157
Titius, praefect of Syria, 237
Triptolemus, 233, 243
Troglodytes, the, 313, 337, 341, 355,
371
Tryphon Diodotus, King of Syria,
251, 253, 263
Typhon, the myth of, 245
Tyre, 259, 267, 303

U

Uxii, the, 163, 173

X

Xerxes, 199

Z

Zagrus River, the, 203, 221
Zeugina, the, 193, 231
Zeno, the Stoic philosopher, 271, 371
THE LOEB CLASSICAL LIBRARY

VOLUMES ALREADY PUBLISHED

**Latin Authors**


AULUS GELLIUS. J. C. Rolfe. 3 Vols.

AUSONIUS. H. G. Evelyn White. 2 Vols.

BOETHIUS: TRACTS AND DE CONSOLATIONE PHILOSOPHIAE. Rev. II. F. Stewart and E. K. Rand. (2nd Imp.)

CAESAR: CIVIL WARS. A. G. Peskett. (3rd Imp.)

CAESAR: GALLIC WAR. H. J. Edwards. (5th Imp.)

CATULLUS. F. W. Cornish; TIBULLUS. J. B. Postgate; AND PERVIGILIAM VENERIS. J. W. Mackail. (8th Imp.)

CICERO: DE FINIBUS. H. Rackham. (2nd Imp.)

CICERO: DE OFFICIIS. Walter Miller. (3rd Imp.)

CICERO: DE SENECTUTE, DE AMICITIA, DE DIVINATIONE. W. A. Falconer. (2nd Imp.)

CICERO: DE REPUBLICA AND DE LEGIBUS. Clinton W. Keyes.

CICERO: LETTERS TO ATTICUS. E. O. Winstedt. 3 Vols. (Vol. I. 4th Imp., Vol. II. 3rd Imp. and III. 2nd Imp.)

CICERO: LETTERS TO HIS FRIENDS. W. Glynn Williams. 3 Vols.

CICERO: PHILIPPICS. W. C. A. Ker.
CICERO: PRO ARCHIA, POST REDITUM, DE DOMO, ETC. N. H. Watts.

CICERO, PRO QUINCTIO, PRO ROSCIO AMERINO, PRO ROSCIO COMOEDO, CONTRA RULLUM. J. H. Freese.

CICERO: TUSCULAN DISPUTATIONS. J. E. King.

CICERO: PRO CAECINA, PRO LEGE MANILIA, PRO CLUENTIO, PRO RABIRIO. H. Grose Hodge.

2 Vols. Vol. I.

CLAUDIAN. M. Platnauer. 2 Vols.

FLORUS: E. S. Forster, and CORNELIUS NEPOS: J. C. Rolfe.

FRONTEUS: STRATAGEMS AND AQUEDUCTS. C. E. Bennett.

FRONTO: CORRESPONDENCE. C. R. Haines. 2 Vols.

HORACE: ODES AND EPODES. C. E. Bennett. (9th Imp. revised.)

HORACE: SATIRES, EPISTLES, ARS POETICA. H. R. Fairclough. (2nd Imp. revised.)

JUVENAL AND PERSIUS. G. G. Ramsay. (4th Imp.)


LUCAN. J. D. Duff.

LUCRETIUS. W. H. D. Rouse. (2nd Edn.)


OVID: HEROIDES AND AMORES. Grant Showerman. (2nd Imp.)

OVID: METAMORPHOSES. F. J. Miller. 2 Vols. (Vol. I. 5th Imp., Vol. II. 4th Imp.)


PETRONIUS. M. Ilesentine; SENeca: APOCOLOCYNTOSIS. W. H. D. Rouse. (5th Imp.)

PLINY: LETTERS. Melmoth's Translation revised by W. M. L. Hutchinson. 2 Vols. (3rd Imp.)

PROPERTIUS. H. E. Butler. (4th Imp.)

QUINTILIAN. H. E. Butler. 4 Vols.


ST. AUGUSTINE, SELECT LETTERS. J. H. Baxter.

SALLUST. J. C. Rolfe.

SCRIPTORES HISTORIAE AUGUSTAE. D. Magie. 3 Vols. Vols. I. and II. (Vol. I. 2nd Imp. revised.)

SENECA: EPISTULAE MORALES R. M. Gummere. 3 Vols. (Vols. I. and II. 2nd Imp. revised.)


SENECA: TRAGEDIES. F. J. Miller. 2 Vols. (2nd Imp. revised.)

STATIUS. J. H. Mozley. 2 Vols.

Suetonius. J. C. Rolfe. 2 Vols. (4th Imp. revised.)

TACITUS: DIALOGUS. Sir Wm. Peterson and AGRI-COLA AND GERMANIA. Maurice Hutton. (3rd Imp.)


TERENCE. John Sargeaunt. 2 Vols. (5th Imp.)

VELLEIUS PATERCUlUS AND RES GESTAE. F. W. Shipley.

VIRGIL. H. R. Fairclough. 2 Vols. (Vol. I. 10th Imp., Vol. II. 8th Imp.)
Greek Authors

ACHILLES TATIUS. S. Gaselee.
AENEAS TACTICUS: ASCLEPIODOTUS AND ONASANDER. The Illinois Greek Club.
AESCINES. C. D. Adams.
APOLLODORUS. Sir James G. Frazer. 2 Vols.
APOLLONIUS RHODIUS. R. C. Seaton (4th Imp.)
THE APOSTOLIC FATHERS. Kirsopp Lake. 2 Vols. (Vol. I. 5th Imp., Vol. II. 3rd Imp.)
APPIAN'S ROMAN HISTORY. Horace White. 4 Vols. (Vols. I. and IV. 2nd Imp.)
ARISTOPHANES. Benjamin Bickley Rogers. 3 Vols. (2nd Imp.) Verse trans.
ARISTOTLE: THE NICOMACHEAN ETICS. H. Rackham.
ARISTOTLE: POETICS AND LONGINUS. W. Hamilton Fyfe; DEMETRIUS ON STYLE. W. Rhys Roberts.
CALLIMACIUS AND LYCOPHRON. A. W. Mair; ARATUS. G. R. Mair.
CLEMENT OF ALEXANDRIA. Rev. G. W. Butterworth.
DAPHNIS AND CHLOE. Thornley's Translation revised by J. M. Edmonds; AND PARTHENIUS. S. Gaselee. (2nd Imp.)
DIO CASSIUS: ROMAN HISTORY. E. Cary. 9 Vols.
DIOGENES LAERTIUS. R. D. Hicks. 2 Vols.
EPICTETUS. W. A. Oldfather. 2 Vols.


GALEN: ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES. A. J. Brock. (2nd Imp.)


THE GREEK BUCOLIC POETS (THEOCRITUS, BION, MOSCHUS). J. M. Edmonds. (5th Imp. revised.)

HERODOTUS. A. D. Godley. 4 Vols. (Vols. I.-III. 2nd Imp.)

HESIOD AND THE HOMERIC HYMNS. H. G. Evelyn White. (4th Imp.)


ISAEUS. E. W. Forster.

ISOCRATES. George Norlin. 3 Vols. Vols. I. and II.


JULIAN. Wilmer Cave Wright. 3 Vols.


LYRA GRAECA. J. M. Edmonds. 3 Vols. (Vol. I. 2nd Ed. revised and enlarged.)

MARCUS AURELIUS. C. R. Haines. (3rd Imp. revised.)

MENANDER. F. G. Allinson. (2nd Imp. revised.)

OPPIAN, COLLUTHUS, TRYPHIODORUS. A. W. Mair.


PHILOSTRATUS AND EUNAPIUS: LIVES OF THE SOPHISTS. Wilmer Cave Wright.
PINDAR. Sir J. E. Sandys. (5th Imp. revised)


PLATO: CRATYLUS, PARMENIDES, GREATER HIPPIAS, LESSER HIPPIAS. H. N. Fowler.

PLATO: EUHYTHPHRO, APOLOGY, CRITO, PHAEDO, PHAEDRUS. H. N. Fowler. (6th Imp.)


PLATO: THEAETETUS AND SOPHIST. H. N. Fowler. (2nd Imp.)

PLATO, TIMAEUS, CRITIAS, CLITOPHON, MENENIUS, EPISTULAE. Rev. R. G. Bury.


PLUTARCH: THE PARALLEL LIVES. B. Perrin. 11 Vols. (Vols. I., II. and VII. 2nd Imp.)

POLYBIUS. W. R. Paton. 6 Vols.


ST. BASIL: LETTERS. R. J. Defferrari. 4 Vols. Vols. I. and II.


STRABO: GEOGRAPHY. Horace L. Jones. 8 Vols. Vols. I.–VII.

THEOPHRASTUS: CHARACTERS. J. M. Edmonds; HERODES, etc. A. D. Knox.

THEOPHRASTUS: ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS. Sir Arthur Hort, Bart. 2 Vols.

THUCYDIDES. C. F. Smith. 4 Vols. (Vols. I. and II. 2nd Imp. revised.)

XENOPHON: CYROPAEDIA. Walter Miller. 2 Vols. (Vol. I. 2nd Imp.)
XENOPHON: HELLENICA, ANABASIS, APOLOGY, AND SYMPOSIUM. C. L. Brownson and O. J. Todd. 3 Vols. (Vol. I. 2nd Imp.)

XENOPHON: MEMORABILIA AND OECONOMICUS. E. C. Marchant.

XENOPHON: SCRIPTA MINORA. E. C. Marchant.

---

IN PREPARATION

**Greek Authors**

ARISTOTLE, METAPHYSICS. H. Tredennick.

ARISTOTLE, ON THE MOTION AND PROGRESSION OF ANIMALS. E. S. Forster.

ARISTOTLE, ORGANON. W. M. L. Hutchinson.

ARISTOTLE, POLITICS AND ATHENIAN CONSTITUTION. H. Rackham.

DEMOSTHENES, OLYNTHIACS, PHILIPPICS, LEPITINES AND MINOR SPEECHES. J. H. Vince.

DEMOSTHENES, MEIDIAS, ANDROTION, ARISTOCRATES, TIMOCRATES. J. H. Vince.

DEMOSTHENES, PRIVATE ORATIONS. G. M. Calhoun.

DIO CHRYSOSTOM. J. W. Cohoon.

GREEK IAMBIC AND ELEGIAIC POETS AND THE ANACREONTEA. J. M. Edmonds.

LYSIAS. W. R. M. Lamb.

PAPYRI. A. S. Hunt.

PHILOSTRATUS, IMAGINES. Arthur Fairbanks.

SEXTUS EMPIRICUS. Rev. R. G. Bury.
Latin Authors

AMMIANUS MARCELLINUS. J. C. Rolfe.
BEDE, ECCLESIASTICAL HISTORY. J. E. King.
CICERO, IN CATILINAM, PRO FLACCO, PRO MURENA, PRO SULLA. B. L. Ullman.
CICERO, DE NATURA DEORUM. H. Rackham.
CICERO, DE ORATORE, ORATOR, BRUTUS. Charles Stuttaford.
CICERO, IN PISONEM, PRO SCAURO, PRO FONTEIO, PRO MILONE, etc. N. H. Watts.
CICERO, PRO SEXTIO, IN VATINIUM, PRO CAELIO, PRO PROVINCIS CONSULARIBUS, PRO BALBO. J. H. Freese.
ENNIUS, LUCILIUS and other specimens of Old Latin. E. H. Warmington.
MINUCIUS FELIX. W. C. A. Ker.
OVID, FASTI. Sir J. G. Frazer.
PLINY, NATURAL HISTORY. W. H. S. Jones.
ST. JEROME’S LETTERS. F. A. Wright.
SIDONIUS, LETTERS. E. V. Arnold and W. B. Anderson.
TACITUS, ANNALS. John Jackson.
VALERIUS FLACcus. A. F. Scholfield.
VITRUVIUS, DE ARCHITECTURA. F. Granger.

DESCRIPTIVE PROSPECTUS ON APPLICATION

London - - WILLIAM HEINEMANN
New York - - G. PUTNAM’S SONS
The geography of Strabo